

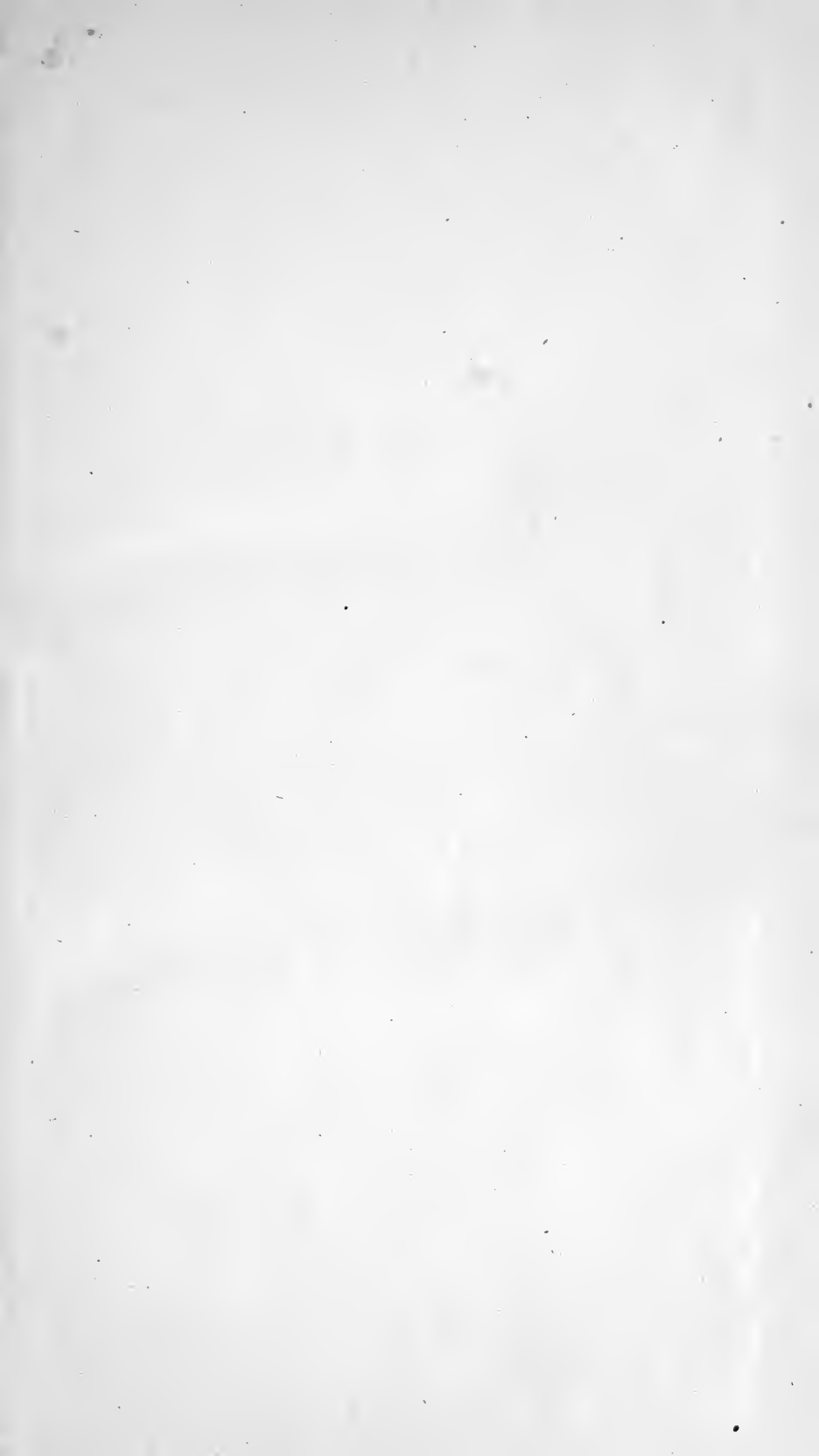




Class JC39

Book 154

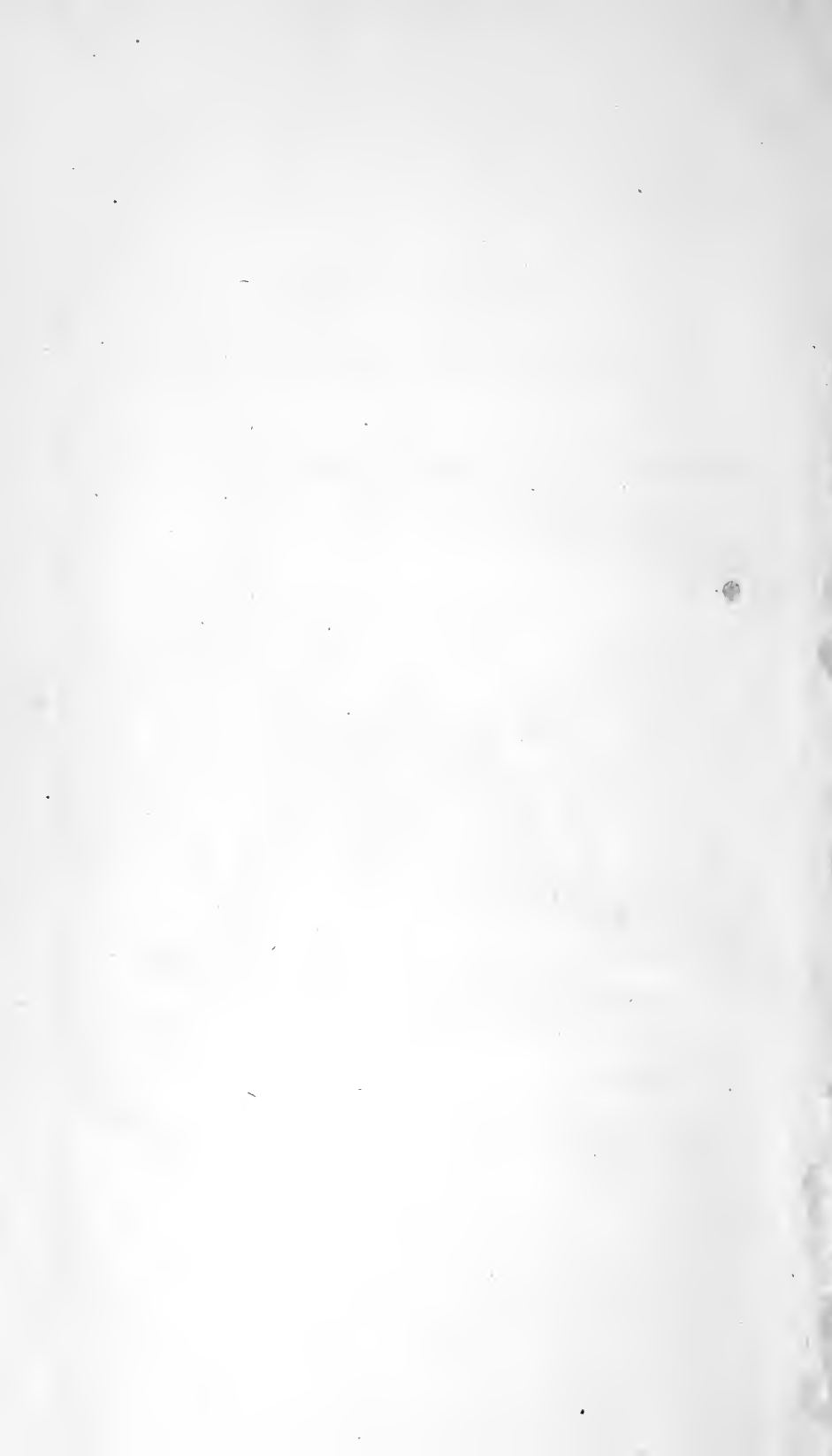
1259











PINNOCK'S SCHOOL SERIES.

---

# HISTORY OF FRANCE

AND

## NORMANDY,

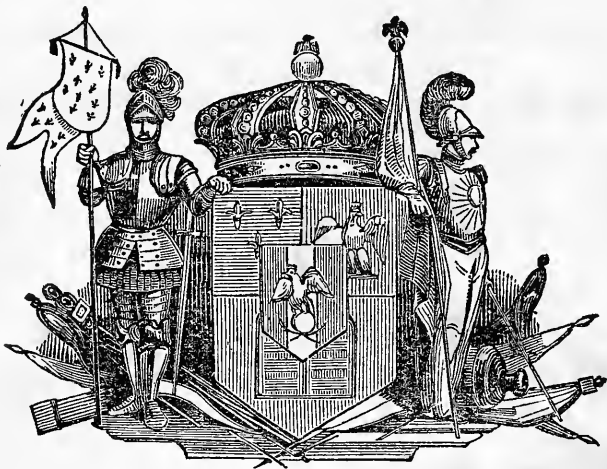
FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE REVOLUTION OF 1848.

WITH

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION

BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D.

AUTHOR OF MANUAL OF ANCIENT AND MODERN HISTORY, ETC., EDITOR  
OF PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITIONS OF GOLDSMITH'S  
GREECE, ROME, AND ENGLAND.



ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS.

FIRST AMERICAN, FROM THE THIRD ENGLISH EDITION.

---

PHILADELPHIA:

CHARLES DESILVER,

NO. 714 CHESTNUT STREET,

1859.

IC 63  
724  
1859

---

Entered, according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1858, by  
CHARLES DESILVER,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern  
District of Pennsylvania.

---

## P R E F A C E,

BY THE AMERICAN EDITOR.



THE history of France is full of interest, and it forms a most important study for the young, particularly for the youth of our own country. Situated in the centre of Europe, France has exerted great influence in promoting the advance of civilization, ever since its people were converted to the Christian religion. In the history of its several dynasties we are able to trace the progress of every form of government from barbarism to feudalism, and from feudalism to simple despotism. And in the events of the last half century we observe the gradual, interrupted, but certain progress from despotism to the noblest and wisest of all forms of government—a free republic.

France not only presents to the American a most profitable study in its history, but it advances a strong claim to the sympathy of our own happy country. To her we are in a great measure indebted for the successful assertion of our own claim to national independence. To her we are indebted for the La Fayette, the Rochambeaus, the Armands, the De

Grasses, and the D'Estaings of the Revolution ; and to her great Napoleon we owe the easy acquisition of a most important portion of our national territory.

The young American should therefore study the history of France, and draw from it lessons of political science.

In this history, written by the accomplished Dr. Taylor, the events are narrated clearly and forcibly ; and justice is done to the great characters who have figured on that grand theatre of human affairs. The questions for examination of pupils, and mottoes at the heads of chapters, are the same as in the English edition. The American editor has made some few additions to the text, including the last chapter, which brings the history down to the present time. He has also inserted the numerous historical embellishments, consisting of portraits, costumes, historical pictures of battles and sieges, and views of important places. In editing the work, he has endeavoured to conform to the active spirit of improvement in books for the education of youth, which is so marked a feature of the present age.

Philadelphia, June 1, 1848.

# CONTENTS.

CHAP.		PAGE
I.	The Gauls.....	7
II.	The Franks, from Clovis to Charlemagne.....	14
III.	The reign of Charlemagne .....	28
IV.	The Carolingian race.....	35
V.	Do. continued .....	43
VI.	Do. concluded.....	49
VII.	From the accession of Hugh Capet to the First Crusade .....	56
VIII.	The History of Normandy.....	63
IX.	The History of France from the First Crusade to the accession of Philip Augustus.....	72
X.	The reign of Philip Augustus .....	85
XI.	The reigns of Louis VIII. and IX.....	101
XII.	Do. of Philip the Hardy, and Philip the Fair .....	112
XIII.	Do. of Louis the Quarrelsome, Philip the Long, and Charles the Fair .....	122
XIV.	The reign of Philip of Valois .....	127
XV.	Do. continued—John.....	137
XVI.	John—the Regency .....	149
XVII.	Charles V., surnamed the Wise .....	154
XVIII.	Charles VI.....	161
XIX.	Charles VI.—Henry V. of England .....	171
XX.	Charles VII., surnamed the Victorious.....	180
XXI.	Louis XI.....	190
XXII.	Charles VIII. surnamed the Affable and Courteous. ....	200
XXIII.	Louis XII., surnamed the Father of his People....	208
XXIV.	Francis I. ....	214
XXV.	Do. continued.....	225
XXVI.	Henry II.—Francis II.....	232
XXVII.	Charles IX.....	240

CHAP.	PAGE
XXVIII. Henry III. ....	252
XXIX. Henry IV. ....	266
XXX. Louis XIII. ....	276
XXXI. Louis XIV.—the Wars of the Fronde.....	290
XXXII. Louis XIV. to the treaty of Ryswick .....	300
XXXIII. Do. to the War of the Spanish succession	312
XXXIV. Louis XV. ....	321
XXXV. Do. continued.....	330
XXXVI. Louis XVI. ....	337
XXXVII. Do. continued.....	348
XXXVIII. The Republic.....	356
XXXIX. The Empire .....	374
XL. Do. continued.....	383
XLI. Do. Do. ....	394
XLII. The Hundred Days*.....	400
XLIII. The Restoration and Revolution of 1830.....	409
XLIV. Louis Philippe I.—Revolution of 1848 .....	419
GENEALOGY OF THE KINGS OF FRANCE .....	433
CHRONOLOGICAL INDEX.....	441



# THE HISTORY OF FRANCE AND NORMANDY.

---

## CHAPTER I.



An Ancient Gaul.

## THE GAULS.

From Ister's icy stream a barbarous crowd  
In horrent furs, a herd promiscuous stood,  
Swift as their savage game, far wide they roam;  
In tribes and nations ignorant of home.

EPIGONIAD.

1. THE difficulties that impede our inquiries into the origin of nations are so many, and so various, that we must, in most cases, be contented with probability, since the most laborious

researches fail to supply us with certain information. But as the Gauls were a conspicuous portion of that great Celtic family by which all the western continent of Europe and the British Isles were peopled, some brief sketch of their several migrations, as far as they have been ascertained, cannot fail to be interesting. The offspring of Japhet, we are told in Scripture, colonized "the isles of the Gentiles," as Europe is designated in the Old Testament; of these the Cimmerians, or Cimbrians, who were descended from Gomer,\* settled in the north and east of Europe, and gradually spread them-



A Romanized Gaul.

---

\* The numerous descendants of Gomer are usually called the Celtic tribes; but the names given to the Cushite warriors are as numerous as their conquests; to them belong the Scythians, the Tartars the Goths, the Scots, and almost all the tribes of wandering warriors who have at different periods effected the greatest revolutions in the Eastern and Western world.

selves westwards. 2. The descendants of Cush, known by the names of Scythians and Tartars, have, from the earliest ages, been the greatest wanderers and the most warlike of nations. A horde of these barbarians attacked the Cimmerian colonies, expelled the inhabitants, and gave their own name to the country they had subdued. The Cimmerians, driven from their former settlements, fled through the extensive forests of Germany, and took up their residence in Gaul, of which they appear to have been the first inhabitants.

3. The date of this migration is probably about the ninth or tenth century before the Christian era; for Homer mentions the Cimmerians as the inhabitants of the countries bordering on the Don and Danube, but when Herodotus wrote, we find that they had been displaced by the Scythians. 4. The offspring of Cush, who delighted in a wandering life, spread themselves over the German forests, every where driving the Cimbri before them, until at length the Rhine formed the boundary between the two nations. In the time of Julius Cæsar the distinctions between the two nations were strongly marked, and that great warrior and historian more than once declares that the Germans must have been a nation differing in origin from the Gauls. 5. The southern part of Gaul was frequently visited by the Phœnician, Carthaginian and Grecian merchants, for the purpose of commerce, but the most important event connected with this part of the country was the foundation of Marseilles by the Phœ-  
A. D.  
539.  
 cæans, who introduced a spirit of commercial enterprise, and taught the inhabitants the arts of social life. 6. Although the Gauls did not make such extensive conquests as the descendants of Cush, they sent out several hordes at various times which spread ruin and devastation over the finest parts of Europe. About the time of the first Cimbrian migration, a body of these wanderers crossed the Alps and seized the Italian province, which, by a slight corruption of their name, was thence called Umbria. At a subsequent pe-  
B. C.  
538.  
 riod a new horde seized the north of Italy, and gave it the name of Cisalpine Gaul. The rich productions of Italy, and especially its wines, continued to attract fresh warriors across the Alps, and Rome itself nearly fell a  
A. D.  
390.  
 prey to these barbarians. Another equally numerous horde penetrated into Greece and laid siege to Delphi; they were driven from this with great slaughter, but their numbers being increased by fresh recruits, they became formidable

enemies to the successors of Alexander, they engaged in destructive civil wars. After a variety of adventures some of them settled in the north of Thrace, but the greater part, passing over the Hellespont, seized on a province of Asia Minor, which was thence called Gallatia or Gallo-Græcia.

7. The Gauls were always jealous of the people of Marseilles, whom they looked on as intruders, and the wars between the native Celts and the Grecian colonists afforded the first pretence to the Romans for invading their country. They did not resign their liberties without a desperate resistance, and Cæsar resided ten years in their country before he had completed their subjugation.

8. The Gauls possessed all the characteristics of the Celtic race: they had a fair complexion, light hair, blue eyes, and loud voices; their temper was lively and enthusiastic, but they were deficient in steadiness and perseverance. Their first attack in battle was almost irresistible, but if that was repelled, they did not sustain the fight with equal courage. They were ardent in their likings and dislikings, but so fickle as to pass from the extreme of affection to that of hatred on the most trivial grounds. It is scarcely necessary to remark, that a similar character is usually given to the modern French.

9. The rivers of ancient Gaul frequently overflowed the country, and the marshes thus formed divided it into three great districts, Aquitain in the south, the territory of the Celts in the middle, and that of the Belgæ on the north. The inhabitants were divided into several tribes, each governed by their respective sovereign, and these were again subdivided into septs or clans, the head or chief of which possessed an almost absolute authority in his own domains. 10. These different communities were held together by a federal union similar to that of the Amphictyonic council in Greece, but there was no regular time appointed for holding the grand council; it was only summoned on occasions of great emergency, and consequently frequently met too late to avert the evil against which it was summoned to provide. The government of the Celts appears to have been every where a complete aristocracy, differing from that established in the feudal times by the absence of any gradations between absolute power and absolute slavery.

11. But the most remarkable feature in all the Celtic nations is their order of ecclesiastical nobility called Druids. This class of men enjoyed the highest honours, and the

greatest privileges; they had the supreme control over all religious ceremonies, and appeal could be made to their tribunal in civil cases; their persons were sacred, and they were exempted from all taxes and military service: in a word, they enjoyed so many immunities and distinctions, that princes were ambitious of being admitted into their societies. 12. They are divided into three classes, the Druids, properly so called, to whom the care of religion was entrusted; the Bards, who were the historical poets of the nation; and the Euvates, who were a kind of religious poets, that pretended to inspiration and delivered oracles. There were also female Druids, who were held in high respect, and frequently called



Druids.

to assist at the council of the nation. The British Druids were the most celebrated, and the candidates for the priesthood were frequently sent from Gaul into Britain to complete their education. 13. The sun and fire were worshipped as the most forcible emblems of the Supreme Divinity; but they also adored the moon, and a host of inferior deities. The Druids exceeded all other heathens in the extravagant cruelty of their sacrifices; they not only offered up human victims singly, but on some occasions they formed a huge colossal figure of a man, from osier twigs, and having filled it with human beings, surrounded it with hay, and reduced

it, with all the miserable creatures it contained, to ashes. The great object of their reverence was the *deru*, or oak, from which their name is derived; and the misletoe, a parasitical plant, sometimes found growing on the oak, was especially venerated; it was annually cut with great ceremony, and carefully preserved by the Arch-Druid, or chief of the priests.

14. The learning of the Druids was confined, in a great degree, to a smattering of astronomy and anatomy: the former they cultivated in consequence of their belief in the influence of the stars, the latter they learned from the dissection of their human victims; but they seem never to have derived any practical advantage from either study. Like the priests of Egypt and Persia, they are said to have had two systems of religious belief, one for the vulgar, and one for the initiated; to the latter they taught the unity of the Godhead, the doctrine of the immortality of the soul, and the worthlessness of many practices required from the vulgar. The doctrine of the *Metempsychosis* which Pythagoras published to the Greeks appears to have prevailed amongst the Druids from the remotest antiquity.

15. The Druids were detested by the Romans because they stimulated the inhabitants to the most vigorous efforts for their independence; when, therefore, Gaul became a Roman province, the Druids were discouraged and their numbers diminished. Early in the second century, Christianity was introduced into the country, and spread over it with surprising rapidity. Many superstitious observances derived from the Druids prevailed, however, for several centuries afterwards. 16. It is worthy of remark, that the Celts were the most easily converted, and the most devotedly attached to the church of all the nations of antiquity. The Gothic nations, after their conversion, for the most part fell into the Arian heresy, but the Gauls were always zealously attached to the Catholic doctrines.

17. After the subjugation of Gaul by the Romans, the vanquished adopted the language and customs of the conquerors; the ferocity of the Gauls was abated, the arts of civilized life introduced, and the former national character almost effaced. But, with their freedom the Gauls lost the military spirit by which their ancestors had been distinguished; luxury destroyed their courage, and they fell an easy prey to the descendants of those barbarians, by whom their ancestors had been expelled from the east of Europe.

*Questions.*

1. From whom were the Cimbri descended ?
2. What nations sprung from Cush ?
3. When did the Cimmerians migrate from the Danube ?
4. How were the territories of the Celtic and Scythian tribes divided ?
5. What mercantile nations colonized the south of Gaul ?
6. Did the Gauls invade any of the European states ?
7. How did they regard the Phœcean settlement of Marseilles ?
8. What were the national characteristics of the Gauls ?
9. How was the country divided ?
10. Was there any bond of connection between the several tribes ?
11. Who were the ministers of their religion ?
12. What were the gradations of rank among the Druids ?
13. Can you mention any particulars of their religion ?
14. In what branches of learning were they distinguished ?
15. Why were the Druids disliked by the Romans ?
16. How did the Gothic and Celtic Christians differ ?
17. What was the effect of the subjugation of Gaul ?



Ancient Celts or Cymri, called by Herodotus Cimmerians.



Merovæus.

## CHAPTER II.

THE FRANKS—FROM THE REIGN OF CLOVIS TO THE  
ACCESSION OF CHARLEMAGNE.

How easy 'tis when destiny proves kind,  
With full-spread sails to run before the wind.

DRYDEN.

1. THE Romans continued undisturbed masters of Gaul during two entire centuries; but about the year 260, various barbarous tribes began to make incursions into it; the emperors, sunk in debauchery, neglected the care of the provinces, and this beautiful country became the prey of its ferocious invaders. In the year 414, the Burgundians and Visigoths, two Germanic tribes, obtained from the emperor Honorius settlements in the southern provinces of Gaul, while the northern parts were seized on by the Franks, a fierce tribe, who had assumed their name from their firm determination to



remain free. These people invaded Belgic Gaul, and, after a struggle which continued more than a century, succeeded in making themselves masters of a considerable tract, of which they made Treves the capital.



Inauguration of a King of the Franks.

2. Before the accession of Clovis, several kings ruled over the Franks, of whom the most celebrated was Pharamond; he, as well as king Arthur, is a favourite hero of romance; his dynasty is usually called the Merovingian, from Mérovéus their supposed ancestor. 3. On the accession of Clovis, who was inaugurated in the usual manner of kings of the Franks by raising him on the shield, Gaul was divided into five states; that of the Burgundians and Visigoths in the south, that of the Franks in the north-east, the independent republic of Armorica, which occupied the place of the present province of Brittany, and a small part of Belgic Gaul, which still remained subject to the Romans. 4. The first enterprise of Clovis was an attack on the Roman province where Syagrius, the provincial governor, was aiming at royal power; Clovis, at the early age of nineteen, completely defeated Syagrius near Soissons, drove out the Romans, and thus laid the foundation of the future greatness of the French monarchy. It was after this battle, and the sacking of the city of the Soissons, that an

A. D.  
486.

incident occurred, showing the little authority possessed by the kings of the Franks over their subjects. Saint Remi, the Bishop of Rheims, demanded of Clovis a sacred vase, which he had seen among the spoils of the city. Willing to propitiate the priests, and if possible gain them to his interests, Clovis was about to take up the vase and present it to the bishop, when a soldier, springing forward, struck it a violent blow with his battle-axe, which broke it into many pieces, declaring that he would not let the king take any thing belonging to his part of the booty. Clovis for a time restrained his anger; but about a year afterwards, seizing the opportunity of a review of his troops, he struck the battle-axe from the hands of the soldier, and while he stooped to pick it up he killed him with a blow of his own axe, saying, Remember the vase of Soissons.



The Vase of Soissons.

5. The Gauls detested the Roman yoke, and were strongly attached to Christianity. Clovis won their affections by treating them with mildness, respecting their religion, and favouring their bishops. His marriage with Clotilda, niece of Gondebald, king of Burgundy, made his new subjects enter-





Triumphal Entry of Clovis into Tours.

tain hopes that he would abjure idolatry for the Christian faith; to which he was gradually reconciled by the exhortations of that pious princess; but he hesitated to make an immediate change on account of the attachment of the Franks to their ancient faith. 6. At length, having defeated the Alemanni at Tolbiac, and attributing that victory to the God of Clotilda, whom he had invoked in the

A. D.  
496.



Clovis at the Battle of Tolbiac.

crisis of the engagement, he caused himself to be baptized by St. Remi, bishop of Rheims, and the greater part of his subjects followed his example. After this event, having the support of the bishops, Clovis greatly enlarged his dominions. He extended his conquests to the Loire; and the battle of Voillé, near Tours, gained against the Visigoths, enabled the victorious Franks to carry their banners from Toulouse to Bourdeaux, across the whole of Aquitania. On his return from the conquest Clovis entered in triumph the city of Tours. 7. The crimes of Gondebald afforded Clovis a pretext for attacking the Burgundians; he was joined in this war by Theodoric the Great, king of Italy; but after having completed the conquest, Clovis found that he had more cause to dread his ally than his enemy, he therefore made peace with Gondebald and restored him to his dominions.

A. D.  
508.

8. Clovis next resolved to seize on the territories of Alaric, king of the Visigoths; he covered his designs under the mask of religion, continually exclaiming against the horrid impiety of suffering Arians to reign in Gaul, for the Visigoths had adopted that heresy. Though Alaric was no persecutor, the Catholic clergy in his dominions favoured the enterprise of Clovis, and afforded one of the earliest instances of ecclesiastical interference in the affairs of nations.

A. D.  
507.

At the battle of Vouille, near Poitiers, Clovis crowned the wishes of his party by a decisive victory, in which the Visigoths were totally overthrown and their sovereign Alaric slain. 9. Theodoric, alarmed at the progress of the Gauls, sent an army across the Alps, which checked the victorious career of Clovis, and inflicted on him a severe defeat near Arles. In consequence of this, Provence and part of Aquitaine became subject to the Gothic monarchs of Italy.



Clovis.

10. Clovis dishonoured the latter part of his reign by atrocious acts of treachery and cruelty to his own relations, whom he stripped of their possessions. At the same time he built churches and monasteries; doubtless from a persuasion that the Divine laws, like those of the barbarians, admitted a pecuniary compensation for every crime.

A. D.  
511.

11. On the death of Clovis his dominions were shared among his four sons, Thierry, Clodomir, Childebert, and Clotaire; and the monarchy was unhappily dismembered into four kingdoms; Austrasia or Metz, Orleans, Paris, and Soissons. This division of necessity produced the most bloody civil wars; the brothers became bitter enemies, and perpetrated the most savage enormities. Clotaire and Childebert wrested their dominions from the sons of Clodomir, two of whom Clotaire stabbed with his own hand. They afterwards united in an invasion of Burgundy, in which they were completely successful.

A. D.  
534.



Clotaire I.

12. After a series of ruinous wars, Clotaire I. became the sole monarch of France; but deriving no advantage from experience of the calamities that had been caused by the former dismemberment of the kingdom, he too divided the monarchy between his four sons, and thus bequeathed another half-century of civil war to his unfortunate country.

13. The evils of this calamitous period were greatly aggravated by the sanguinary ambition of two women, who rather deserved the epithet of furies than the title of queens. These were Brunehaut and Fredegonde. The former, a princess of Spain, had married Sigebert, king of Austrasia.

the latter, at first mistress of Chilperic, king of Soissons, had prevailed on him to espouse her after divorcing his wife. Their mutual hatred and uncontrolled influence over their husbands, gave birth to numerous crimes equally fatal to the people and the royal family. Sigebert was murdered by Fredegonde's emissaries while he was besieging Chilperic in Tournay. She afterwards sacrificed the children of her husband by his former marriage to secure for her own son the



Brunehaut.

right of succession. Brunehaut, on her part breathing vengeance, armed the princes, and fanned the flames of civil war; but at last, falling into the hands of Clotaire, the son of Fredegonde, she was condemned to the most horrid torments, as guilty of the murders of ten kings or children of kings.

There was an old German custom, according to which, the chief of a troop of warriors was expected to grant them, from time to time, some mark of his favour, generally an ornamented battle-axe, or a fine war-horse. When the Franks were established in Gaul, and the chief had become the king, instead of arms and horses, he preferred to distribute among them a part of his domains. Originally, these *bénéfices* were only temporary, being reunited to the royal domain after the death of the chief to whom they had been granted, or even



during his life, in case of forfeiture or of treason. Thus the king's favours seldom lessened his means; but, when he consented to alienate for ever portions more or less considerable of his domain, he soon found it impossible to repair his prodigalities. When the leudes could obtain no more from the king, they began to desert him; an independent aristocracy was formed, which daily increased in power as the royal authority became less. It was the Austrasian leudes who first obtained this right by the treaty of Andelot: the Neustrian and Burgundian leudes were not slow in demanding and obtaining it also.

14. Clotaire II., son of Chilperic and Fredegonde, again united France under a single monarch, after massacring a multitude of princes. He restored tranquillity, and gained the confidence of his subjects, but by increasing the power of the nobility, and confiding the administration of government to the *mayors of the palace*, he opened a way for the revolution which expelled his family from the throne.

A. D.  
613.

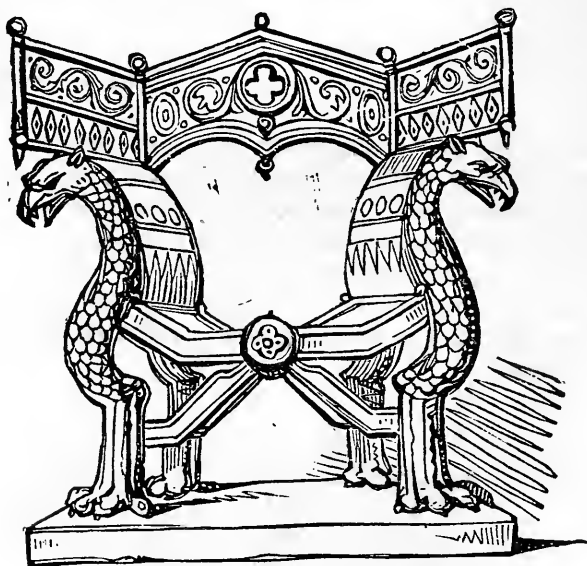


Fredegonde.

15. Clotaire II. left the kingdom between his two sons, but Dagobert, by the murder of his brother, obtained possession of the entire. He is the most celebrated of the Merovingian princes, and though he was guilty

A. D.  
631.

of many atrocious crimes, he is deservedly praised for his impartial administration of justice, which was publicly sold by his predecessors. On the other hand, he loaded the people with severe impositions, both to supply his debaucheries, and according to the custom of the period, to expiate his crimes by profuse donations to the church.



Throne of Dagobert, in the Museum at Paris.

16. After the death of Dagobert the monarchy fell  
 A. D. into the possession of a series of monarchs who fol-  
 638. lowed each other in rapid succession, and whose  
 reigns present an almost perfect blank. They are commonly  
 called *Les Rois Fainéans*, or the sluggard kings, and appear  
 to have well merited the disgraceful appellation. 17. The  
 entire power of the state was possessed by the mayors of the  
 palace, who left to the monarch little more than the shadow  
 of royalty; of these the most illustrious was Pepin d'Heris-  
 tal, who ruled the province of Austrasia for twenty-seven  
 years with equal prudence and courage. During the greater  
 part of this period Pepin was virtually the sovereign of France,  
 and kept the rightful monarch a prisoner in the palace, per-  
 mitting him only to show himself annually to the people at  
 the assemblies in the Champ de Mars.

18. Pepin was succeeded by his illegitimate son, Charles Martel, one of the greatest generals that France has ever produced. 19. The Saracens, who had previously subdued the greater part of Spain, crossed the Pyrennees with an overwhelming force, and directing their course to Aquitain, defeated the governor, and subdued the

A. D.  
714.



Charles Martel at the Battle of Tours.

greater part of the province. Charles Martel hastened to meet them, a battle was fought near Tours, and the Saracens were defeated with incredible slaughter. By this victory France was saved from becoming a Mohammedan country, and a check was given to the progress of a power which threatened the subjugation of Europe. 20. Thenceforward Martel employed himself in consolidating the strength of France, and introducing order into a kingdom which had been so long distracted. After having conferred these great blessings on his country he died, bequeathing the inheritance of his office to his sons Pepin and Charo-

A. D.  
732.

A. D.  
741.

21. After having obtained some successes in Germany

**Carloman** became disgusted with the world, and retired into a monastery; thus the whole authority of the state devolved

on **Pepin**, who resolved to add the title to the power of sovereign. 22. At a time when the Papal power

**A. D. 750.** was assailed by the Greeks and Lombards, and when the support of an active partizan was likely to be well rewarded, Pepin laid before the Pope the following case of conscience, "Who ought to bear the title of king, a prince incapable of governing, or a minister already invested with the royal authority, which he administered with honour?" The

Pope decided as Pepin wished, the clergy of France embraced his cause with zeal, the nobility respected his abilities, and the nation in general willingly agreed to remove a race of obscure inactive kings, who were scarcely known, even by name. 23. Childeric, the nominal monarch, was degraded,

and, together with his son, shut up in a monastery; Pepin was, without resistance, raised to the throne, and solemnly anointed at Soissons by St. Boniface, Bishop of Mentz, who had been long one of his most vigorous supporters. Pepin repaid the Pope by leading an army into Italy against the

opponents of the Holy See: this expedition was very successful, Pepin conquered the Lombards and the Greeks in every engagement, and wrested from them several provinces, all of which he gave to the Pope. 24. The beginning of

Pepin's reign was glorious and fortunate. He subjected the Saxons and Slavonians to tribute, and the Duke of Bavaria to take an oath of fidelity. He reduced the Aquitanians to the French crown. He died in the nineteenth

**A. D. 763.** year of his reign, equally respected at home and abroad. By consent of his nobility, he divided his dominions

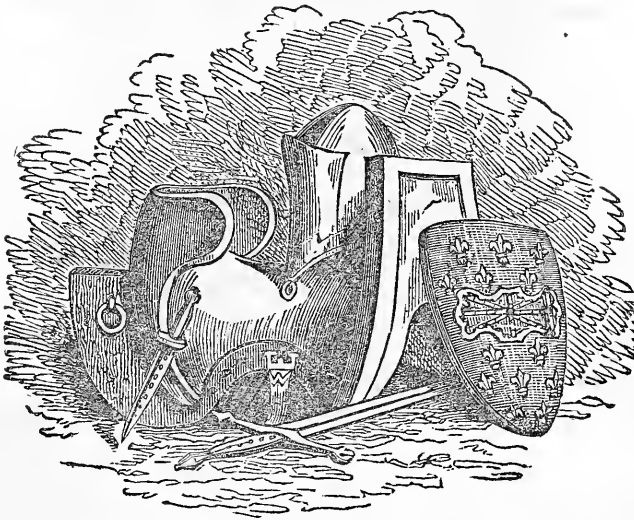
between his two sons, **Charles** and **Carloman**, the reign of the former of whom forms a great epoch in history.

---

### Questions.

1. What barbarous tribes established themselves in Gaul?
2. What was the first line of French princes?
3. How was Gaul divided at the accession of Clovis?
4. What was his first enterprise?
5. How did Clovis conciliate the Gauls?
6. When did he turn Christian?
7. Why did he make peace with Gondebald?
8. On what pretence did he attack the Visigoths?

9. By whom was Clovis defeated ?
10. What crimes stained the close of his reign ?
11. How were his dominions divided ?
12. Who next became sole monarch of France ?
13. What females distracted the country by their crimes ?
14. To what officers was the administration confided ?
15. What was the character of Dagobert ?
16. By what name are his successors distinguished ?
17. Who was the most remarkable mayor of the palace ?
18. By whom was Pepin succeeded ?
19. From what enemy did Charles Martel rescue Christendom ?
20. What other benefits did he confer on France ?
21. How did Pepin obtain the sole power ?
22. What case of conscience did he submit to the Pope ?
23. By whom was Pepin consecrated king ?
24. Was he a good sovereign ?



Ancient Helmet, Shield, and Saddle.



Charlemagne, from a Mosaic, made by order of Pope Leo III.

### CHAPTER III.

#### THE REIGN OF CHARLEMAGNE.

All was prepared—the fire, the sword, the men  
 To wield them in their terrible array;  
 The army, like a lion from his den,  
 March'd forth with nerves and sinews bent to slay.  
 A human Hydra issuing from his fen  
 To breathe destruction on its winding way.

BYRON.

**A. D.** 1. THE French monarchy was divided between  
**771.** Charles, called afterwards Charlemagne, or Charles  
 the Great, and his brother Carloman. A civil war  
 which was on the point of breaking out between the rival  
 brothers was prevented by the death of the latter, and Charle-  
 magne became the sole monarch of France. Having secured  
 his accession he married the daughter of Didier, king of the  
 Lombards, but soon after divorced her without assigning any  
 cause. Didier, enraged at this affront, afforded an asylum to  
 Carloman's widow and her two sons, who had been deprived

of their inheritance by Charles, and attempted to gain over pope Adrian I. to his side. 2. But the pope was far from wishing to gratify the Lombard prince; on the contrary, he entered into a closer alliance with the French king, on which Didier ravaged the territories that Pepin had given to the church, and which were now called the patrimony of St. Peter. Upon the news of these events Charlemagne passed the Alps with a numerous army, and by forced marches arriving at Verona before his approach was suspected, captured the town, and made his sister-in-law with her two children prisoners. He next laid siege to Pavia, and by its capture put an end to the kingdom of the Lombards, A. D. 771. which had subsisted two hundred and six years. Didier died in a monastery, but history is silent as to the fate of Charlemagne's nephews.

3. During the siege of Pavia Charlemagne paid a visit to Rome, where he was met by the whole body of the clergy, with banners in their hands: Adrian received him with great pomp in the church of St. Peter, and the people sung "*Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord.*" Charlemagne is said to have ratified the gift made to the church by Pepin; but as neither the original nor any copy of such an important deed has been ever produced, the truth of this event appears very questionable.

4. Almanzor, the king of the Saracens in Spain, was one of the greatest and wisest monarchs in Europe; he had completely subdued the Christian princes in the Peninsula, and compelled them to pay him tribute; the rulers of Saragossa and Arragon however revolted, and called in A. D. 772. Charlemagne, whom they acknowledged as their sovereign. The French monarch passed the Pyrennees and subdued the whole country as far as the Ebro, but on his return the rear of his army was attacked at Roncesvalles by the duke of Gascony, and his gallant nephew Roland slain. This trifling engagement has furnished the theme of an immense number of romances.

5. During all this period the war with the Saxons continued: Pepin had compelled them to pay tribute, and besides forced them to receive missionaries, but they could neither bear to pay the one nor embrace the religion of the other, the pacific spirit of which was so contradictory to the human passions. Having massacred several of the missionaries, and committed several other outrages, they provoked Charlemagne

to wage war against them, and so strenuously were they attached to liberty, that they held out against his power A. D. for thirty years. 6. In one of these battles Witikind, 782. the Saxon general, inflicted a severe defeat on the French, which Charlemagne cruelly revenged by the massacre of Verdun, where four thousand five hundred of the principal Saxons were beheaded. 7. At length Witikind, after being



Submission of Witikind.

defeated with great slaughter in several battles, made his submission, and embraced Christianity. His followers were not equally tractable; they often revolted, and were not completely subdued until Charlemagne removed many thousand families of them, which he dispersed through Flanders and other countries. Some of the most resolute tribes retired into Scandinavia, carrying with them an implacable hatred against the dominion and religion of the French.

8. Every nation in Germany that attempted to make the least resistance to the arms of Charlemagne was subdued; the Slavonians in Pomerania shared the fate of the Saxons, and were compelled to become Christians and subjects. Tassilo, duke of Bavaria, the nephew of Charlemagne, had



encouraged the Saxons in their rebellion, and Charlemagne in turn entered Bavaria. The duke in his distress sought the alliance of the Huns or Abares, who had settled in the kingdom of Hungary, to which they have given their name. This nation of robbers used to sally out and plunder all the neighbouring states, and then return with their booty to some fortified enclosures which they called *rings*. This alliance with the Bavarian duke was fatal to both parties; his own subjects, disgusted with their barbarous allies, rebelled against Tassilo, and delivered him up to Charlemagne, by whom he was sentenced to perpetual imprisonment; the Huns, after a severe and protracted struggle, which lasted nine years, were totally subdued, their *rings* taken, and the accumulated plunder of two hundred years seized on by the French monarch.

9. On the death of queen Hildegard, Charlemagne took for his wife Fastrade, a woman of low birth, but A. D. 783. of a vindictive and haughty temper; this marriage was fatal to his peace and to his fame: she filled his mind with jealousies and suspicions, stimulated him to acts of cruelty, and made him the oppressor both of the nobles and the people. 10. This conduct created disaffection, a conspiracy was formed to dethrone Charlemagne, and A. D. 789. to place the crown on the head of Pepin, one of his natural sons. The plot was fortunately discovered, and most of the conspirators punished, but Charlemagne never again recovered the full confidence of his subjects.

11. Leo III., who succeeded Adrian on the papal throne, immediately after his accession sent the standard of Rome to Charlemagne, entreating him to send A. D. 796. a deputy to that city to receive the allegiance of the inhabitants; a clear proof that the pontiffs at this period acknowledged the sovereignty of the emperor. Three years after, the relations of the late pope brought an accusation against Leo, attacked him in the open street, overwhelmed him with a shower of blows, and shut him up half dead in the prison of a monastery. From thence, however, he contrived to make his escape, and fled to Charlemagne, who received him with the greatest respect, sent him back loaded with honours, and promised soon to follow him into Italy.

12. In the following year Charlemagne proceeded to Rome, to investigate the charges made against Leo; A. D. 800. several of the clergy objected to this proceeding, declaring that ecclesiastics could not be tried by a lay tribunal,

out Leo consented to make his defence, and was honourably acquitted. On the Christmas-day following, the pope, in the midst of divine service, placed an imperial crown on the head of Charlemagne, and the people shouted, "*Long life to Charles Augustus, crowned by the hand of God, great and pacific emperor of the Romans.*" Leo by this act threw off the nominal subjection under which the popes still were to the emperors of Constantinople, and from this period there were two empires, the eastern and the western, Charlemagne being the first emperor of the west.

13. The death of Fastrade having left Charlemagne again a widower, he designed to marry Irene, who had usurped the throne of Constantinople, after having dethroned and murdered her son Constantine. This match was prevented by a new change in the east; Irene was dethroned by the patrician Nicéphorus, who confined her in a monastery, and mounted the throne.

14. The new emperor, dreading the power of  
A. D. 811. Charlemagne, hastened to enter into alliance with him; a treaty was concluded, by which the limits of the two empires were settled; and thus the sovereignty of the entire Roman empire, so long claimed by the monarchs of Constantinople, was resigned.

15. The fame of Charlemagne penetrated into Asia. The celebrated caliph, Haroun al Raschid, whose name is familiar to every reader of the Arabian Tales, and who was one of the greatest encouragers of learning in the east, sent an embassy to Charlemagne with many valuable presents, among which was a striking clock, said to have been the first ever seen in France: as a further proof of his friendship, the caliph ceded to him the sovereignty of Jerusalem, which, even at this period, was frequented by pilgrims for the purposes of devotion.

16. Charlemagne had now vanquished all his old  
A. D. 807. enemies, when a new and more formidable foe appeared on his coasts; the Norinans, a people from the northern shores of the Baltic, under the command of a brave leader named Godfrey, made several piratical incursions on the shores of France, and carried off immense spoil. Charlemagne led an army against the country of these pirates, but finding the difficulties of the war insuperable, was compelled to make peace with them and return home.

17. One great cause of the ruin of states, in the middle

ages, was the absurd custom of dividing them, after the decease of the sovereign, among several princes; Charlemagne adopted this absurd practice, and by his will, which he caused to be signed by the bishops and other great lords, he shared his empire between his three sons, Charles, Pepin, and Louis, appointing them also his lieutenants during his life-time. But soon after this arrangement the two eldest died, and Charles associated his surviving son Louis with him in the kingdom. 18. The death of his children weighed heavily on the mind of Charles; from a state of vigorous health he passed all at once to the infirmity and decrepitude of old age; as the hour of his dissolution approached, he devoted his time to preparation for the awful change, and spent the last year of his life in the study of the Scriptures, in prayer and in acts of charity. When Charles felt that the moment of his dissolution was at hand, he gathered sufficient strength to make the sign of the cross with his right hand; then quietly composing himself in the bed, he exclaimed, "Into thy hands I commend my spirit," and expired as he uttered the words.

A. D.  
813.A. D.  
814.

19. Charlemagne died in the seventy-second year of his age, and the forty-fourth of his reign, after having acquired a vast empire, which his abilities could alone maintain. He was master of all France, Germany, Hungary, and Belgium, together with the country of Barcelona in Spain, and Italy as far as Benevento. His abilities, as a conqueror and general, did not surpass his great qualities as a monarch and statesman. He created a naval force to control the piratical attempts of the Normans, he designed a canal of communication between the Rhine and Danube, which would have united the commerce of the Atlantic Ocean and the Black Sea—a useful project, which the want of intelligent workmen prevented from being put into execution; he founded schools and universities, and gave his subjects a code of laws called *capitularies*; which, amid many absurdities, contain a great number of useful enactments. The administration of justice during the reign of Charlemagne, was provided for by the establishment of commissioners, who made quarterly circuits through the provinces, to receive and judge of all complaints against the local governors, and to whom the clergy were subject as well as the laity. The greatest defect in the policy of Charlemagne was his constant intermeddling with points of religious belief, and his issuing edicts on ob-

scure questions of theology, many of which transcended the bounds of human knowledge. The *procession* of the third person in the Trinity, was one of the topics on which Charlemagne thought fit to legislate, and but for the prudence of Leo III. the emperor's determination on this subject would have produced as great a schism between the Italian and Gallican churches, as that between the Latins and Greeks. Though Charlemagne censured the riches and luxury of ecclesiastics, he made several rich donations to the church, and greatly increased the power and possessions of the papal see.

20. In private life the French monarch was a very estimable character; he divided the day into several portions, assigning to each its different employment. He was a kind master, a tender husband, and an affectionate father. He was strongly attached to literature, and conversation with men of learning was the favourite employment of his hours of relaxation.

---

### Questions.

1. What was the cause of the war between Charlemagne and Didier?
2. How did it terminate?
3. In what manner was Charles received at Rome?
4. What led to the battle of Roncevalles?
5. With what German nation was Charles at war?
6. Was he ever defeated?
7. How did the war terminate?
8. What other nations were subdued by Charlemagne?
9. Why was his second marriage unfortunate?
10. What was the consequence of his cruelty?
11. To what dangers was Pope Leo III. exposed?
12. How did the pope reward Charlemagne?
13. What prevented the marriage of Charles and Irene?
14. What remarkable treaty was concluded with Nicephorus?
15. How does it appear that the fame of Charles penetrated into the east?
16. What new enemy attacked the French coasts?
17. How did Charles provide for his children?
18. How was the close of his life spent?
19. What was the character of his reign?
20. How did he conduct himself in private life?



Ancient Crossbow Men.

## CHAPTER IV.

## FRENCH MONARCHS OF THE CARLOVINGIAN RACE.

O monarch, listen.—

How many a day and moon thou hast reclined  
 Within these palace walls in silken dalliance,  
 And never shown thee to thy people's longing!—  
 Till all, save evil, slumbered in the realm.

BYRON.

1. THE empire which had been established by the wisdom and policy of Charlemagne, soon crumbled to pieces during the reigns of his weak and inglorious successors. The entire history of the period is confused and entangled by the divisions which the sovereigns made of their dominions between their children, by the rapid changes of territory and succession of monarchs, distinguished only by their name; the reader should therefore refer to the tabular view of the French kings at the end of the volume, whenever he finds himself impeded by these difficulties. The people of France hailed the accession of Louis with joy, because he had endeared himself to the people of Aquitain.

A. D.  
814.

where he had hitherto resided, by gentleness and good temper, and seemed more attached to his native subjects than to foreigners; while Charlemagne was supposed to have disliked both the language and the people of France. From the suavity of his manners and kindness of his disposition, his subjects called him Louis Le Débonnaire, or the Good-natured; a name expressive of qualities valuable in private life, but not the best suited for the management of a powerful empire.

2. Two years after his accession he received the imperial crown from the hands of Pope Stephen V., and soon after committed the greatest and most common error of the French sovereigns, by dividing the monarchy among his children; thus still more weakening an authority already much enfeebled by the folly of the government. He gave Aquitain to Pepin, Bavaria to Louis, and made Lothaire, the eldest of these princes, his partner in the empire.

3. Bernard, the nephew of Louis, enjoyed the crown of Italy as a fief of the empire; indignant at the elevation of Lothaire, he raised the standard of revolt, and broke out into open rebellion. Being abandoned by his troops, he was taken prisoner, tried, and condemned to death; but Louis commuted the punishment, and caused his eyes to be put out; three days after the young prince died. In order to prevent new troubles, the emperor shut up in a monastery three natural sons of Charlemagne, and compelled them to take the monastic vows.

4. After these acts of rigour, Louis became distracted with remorse; he reproached himself as the murderer of his nephew, and the tyrant of his brothers; these feelings were aggravated by the artifices of the clergy, who, at length, persuaded the king to accuse himself in a general assembly, and to solicit the prelates to admit him to public penance. Though the clergy pretended to be greatly edified by his proceedings, they saw how easily a man of such feeble understanding might be enslaved to their authority, and were not slow in taking advantage of the mistaken devotion which degraded the imperial majesty. 5. An opportunity soon presented itself; after the death of his first wife, Louis had been united to Judith, daughter of the count of Bavaria, and had by her a son who was afterwards king of France, under the name of Charles the Bald. As this child seemed to be excluded from the succession by the partition made in favour of the children of the first marriage, Louis was prevailed upon

to make a new division, and obtain the consent of Lothaire, who was principally concerned to oppose it, and who soon found reason to lament his complaisance.

The three princes soon after formed a party to restore the original arrangement, and received effective aid from Vala, abbot of Corbie, who, though reputed a saint, did not scruple to put himself at the head of a faction. Prodigies were invented to inflame the credulous multitude, the most odious charges were brought against the government, and especially the empress was accused of having committed adultery with Count Bernard, a minister who had rendered himself odious by his stern inflexibility. 6. The weak-minded Louis humbled himself to the rebels, his empress was confined to a cloister, the king himself narrowly escaped a similar fate, and was compelled to publish a general amnesty, which only increased the insolence of the seditious.

7. The flames of this rebellion had scarcely been extinguished, when a multitude of errors kindled another. Louis began once more to exercise the powers of a sovereign; he recalled Judith to court, when her ambition was exasperated by a thirst of vengeance; he banished Vala, regardless of the popularity which he had acquired by his pretensions to sanctity, and finally he disinherited his two sons Lothaire and Pepin, thus affording them a pretext for their unnatural hostility. He even made himself odious to his able minister, count Bernard, by giving himself up to the councils of a monk, who had unhappily gained his confidence.

8. Lothaire, Pepin, and Louis, assembled their troops in Alsace, and prepared to march against their father and their sovereign. Pope Gregory IV. joined them under the pretence of acting as a mediator, but displayed all the zeal of a warm partizan, and threatened the weak monarch with the terrors of excommunication. Upon this several of the loyal prelates of France sent a spirited remonstrance to the pope, accusing him of treason to his sovereign, threatening him with excommunication for excommunication, and even with deposition, if he persevered in his rebellion. Agobard, bishop of Lyons, the most celebrated of the French prelates, refused to concur with his brethren, and joined with Vala and a monk named Ratbert, in asserting that the pope was invested with the authority of universal judge, and was amenable to no human tribunal. Gregory, acting on

the principles of his supporters, replied to the remonstrance of the loyal prelates in terms of haughtiness, previously unparalleled, and asserted an authority which no pope had hitherto claimed.

9. The crafty Lothaire sent Gregory to propose terms of accommodation with Louis: it is not known what passed at the interview, but the consequences were destructive of the royal cause. By the intrigues of Gregory the monarch was suddenly deprived of all support, and obliged to surrender to his enemies at discretion. He was then deposed by a tumultuous assembly, and the empire conferred on his son; after which the pope returned to Rome.

10. In order to give permanency to this revolution, Ebbo, whom Louis had raised from a servile condition to the see of Rheims, proposed the following extraordinary and iniquitous method. "A penitent," he said, "ought to be excluded from holding any civil office! therefore a king who is a penitent must be incapable of governing; consequently, to subject Louis to penance, will for ever bar his way to the throne." The advice was acted upon, Louis was compelled to perform public penance in the monastery of St. Medard de Soissons, and after having signed a written confession, was stripped of his royal robes, clothed in the habit of a penitent, and immured in a cell; while Agobard was employed to write a vindication of all these horrors.

11. But the prelates had proceeded too far; the cry  
 A. D. 834. of outraged nature and the voice of justice made a deep impression on the minds of the people; Lothaire became the object of universal detestation, and a new revolution restored Louis to his throne. His superstitious weakness became now more conspicuous than ever; he refused to resume the title of sovereign until he had received absolution, professed the most profound submission to Gregory, and, after a short suspension, restored Agobard to his former authority.

12. A repetition of the same faults naturally pro-  
 A. D. 840. duced the same misfortunes; on the death of his son Pepin, Louis divided his dominions between Lothaire and Charles, to the exclusion of the Bavarian prince, who immediately had recourse to arms. While the emperor was on his march against this rebellious son, tortured with grief, and terrified by an eclipse of the sun which he deemed an evil omen, he fell sick in the neighbourhood of Mentz, where



he expired in the twenty-eighth year of his reign. A provision for his favourite son Charles occupied his attention even in his last moments, and he bequeathed to him the provinces of Burgundy and Neustria, which was subsequently called Normandy.

13. During this reign the Saracens having subdued Sicily, infested the Tuscan Sea and threatened to make themselves masters of Italy; and in the mean time the Normans continued to ravage the coasts of Flanders and France. Thus with enemies on the north and south, discord, crime, and civil war raging within, Europe at this period presented a most lamentable picture; the misfortunes of France above all demand our attention, for its crimes were the greatest and its sufferings were the most severe.

14. A bad son will never make a good brother; scarcely had Lothaire been seated on the throne, when he prepared to strip his brothers of their dominions. Louis and Charles, united by common interest, marched against their eldest brother, and defeated him at Fontenai in Burgundy. Few battles have been more bloody than this; historians differ as to the precise number of the slain, but all agree that the loss which France sustained in that fatal field, was one of the principal causes of the subsequent triumphs of the Norman invaders.

15. In order to procure the assistance of the Saxons, Lothaire had promised to suspend the laws of Charlemagne, which compelled them to observe the ordinances of Christianity; this afforded his brothers a pretence for endeavouring to procure his deposition. A numerous meeting of bishops was held at Aix-la-Chapelle, before whom the two princes preferred their complaint; and the bishops having examined the charge, pronounced that Lothaire had forfeited his right to the empire, which they assigned over to his brothers. This decree would have been observed to its full extent, had Lothaire been as ready to obey it as his brothers. But this prince was still formidable, and compelled his rivals to a new treaty of partition, subsequently confirmed at Mersen on the Maes, by which he retained most of his former dominions.

16. A few years after these transactions, Lothaire died; a little before his dissolution he commanded himself to be clothed in a monkish dress; a convenient piece of devotion, by which bad princes thought that their crimes might be expiated at the moment of death. His

A. D.  
841.

A. D.  
855.

dominions were divided among his sons; Louis had Italy with the title of emperor, Lothaire II. obtained that province which from him was called Lotharingia, and subsequently *Lorraine*, and Charles had the kingdom of Provence. Thus the empire of Charlemagne was divided into a number of petty states, the mutual jealousies of which were productive of constant bloodshed. The dominions of Charles the Bald were the most unfortunate of these states; governed by a prince who inherited the weakness of his father and the turbulent spirit of his mother, devastated by the Normans, who carried fire and sword to the very gates of Paris, and distracted by dissensions between the clergy and nobility, who, intent on their own petty jealousies, abandoned the state to its enemies. In this condition of affairs Charles was unable to make any resistance to the Normans, and when they sailed up the Seine to besiege Paris, he could only save the city by bribing them to retire; a course of proceeding which only made them the more eager to return.

17. The weakness of the successors of Charle-  
A. D. magne, had stimulated the ambition of the popes to  
862. establish their authority over all the European monarchs, and an event which occurred about this time not a little contributed to their success. Lothaire II. king of Lorraine, divorced his wife Teutberga on a false charge of incest. She had first justified herself by the ordeal of boiling water, but was subsequently convicted on her own confession, if a declaration extorted by threats and brutal violence, can be called by that name. Lothaire then married his concubine Valdrada, and persuaded a council of bishops assembled at Aix-la-Chapelle, to sanction his proceedings. 18. The flagrant iniquity of this act in some degree justified the interference of the pope: it was perhaps his duty to have rebuked Lothaire, but Nicholas was resolved to bring him to trial. A council was assembled at Mentz which proceeded to examine into the affair, and, contrary to the universal expectation, it decided in favour of Lothaire. Nicholas deposed the bishops who had been most influential in procuring this decision, and sent a legate to threaten the king of Lorraine with prompt excommunication unless he recalled Teutberga. The intimidated monarch consented, and even gave up Valdrada to be taken as a prisoner to Rome. She however escaped on the road, and returning to Lorraine, was restored to her former honours; while Teutberga, wearied out by the contest, as-

sented to the nullity of her own marriage, and acknowledged her rival as legitimate queen. 19. This did not satisfy Nicholas; but death prevented his interference, and his successor, a prelate of greater moderation, contented himself with summoning Lothaire to Rome. That prince swore on the Holy Sacrament, that he was innocent of the crimes laid to his charge; and his death, which occurred soon after, was universally looked upon as the punishment of his perjury.

20. The dominions of Lothaire were seized by his uncles, Charles the Bald and Louis the Germanic, to the exclusion of his brother the emperor Louis. In vain did pope Adrian threaten the king of France as an usurper; supported by the celebrated Hencmar of Rheims, he issued a manifesto asserting the supremacy of the state over the church, and declaring that *free* men would not allow themselves to be enslaved by the bishop of Rome. The pope soon found means to annoy the French monarch; Charles had shut up his two younger sons in a monastery; Lothaire, who was lame and sickly, reconciled himself to his lot, but Carloman resisted his father's determination, and found the pope an assistant in his rebellion. Carloman was eventually defeated, and obliged to seek an asylum in the court of Louis the Germanic.

21. Meantime Louis II. died without male issue, and their mutual advantage persuaded the French A. D.  
875. court and the holy see to lay aside their jealousies. Adrian wrote a friendly and even flattering letter to Charles; his successor, John VIII. went farther, and crowned him as emperor at Pavia. About the same time died Louis the Germanic, dividing his kingdom as usual among his three children. Charles made an ineffectual attempt to deprive them of their possessions, but was defeated with loss and disgrace. It appears a strange instance of imprudence that he should thus aim at foreign conquests, while he was unable to preserve his own dominions from the ravages of the Normans, who devastated the country in every direction.

22. The Saracens still continued to lay waste the shores of Italy, and the pope, terrified at their progress, A. D.  
877. summoned the emperor to his assistance, threatening that he would deprive him of the empire in case of a refusal. Charles complied with the mandate, but he had scarcely arrived in Italy, when the news reached him that his nephew Carloman was on his march to deprive him of the imperial crown. He hastened to return to France, but on the road he

was deserted by his lords, and being seized with disease, died miserably in a wretched hut by the way-side.

23. This reign is remarkable as being that in which the feudal system was finally established. The government of provinces and districts, which had been previously held during pleasure, or at most for life, was by a capitulary enacted in the last year of this reign, made hereditary; and thus the power of the nobles was firmly established on the ruins of the royal authority. 24. About this time also, the Gauls and Franks began to be amalgamated into one nation, and the language of the country, which had been previously a mixture of Latin and German, began to settle down into two dialects, deriving their name from the word in each that signified *yes*. The southern was called *langue d'oc*, and was the parent of the Provençal or language of the Troubadours, the northerners used the *langue d'oui*, from which the modern French has been derived.

---

### Questions.

1. Why were the French pleased at the accession of Louis?
2. What error did he commit?
3. How did he suppress the rebellions that threatened his security?
4. Did he repent of his severity?
5. What event occasioned new disturbances?
6. How did the rebellion terminate?
7. What were the causes of the second civil war?
8. By what prelate were the rebels aided?
9. How did the war terminate?
10. By what artifice was it attempted to exclude Louis from the throne?
11. What was the consequence?
12. What caused the death of Louis?
13. In what situation was Europe at this time?
14. How did the sons of Louis behave to each other?
15. Under what pretext did his brothers attack Lothaire?
16. Why was the empire further subdivided?
17. What circumstance enabled the popes to increase their power?
18. How did pope Nicholas behave?
19. In what manner did this affair terminate?
20. Who seized on the dominions of Lothaire? And what was the consequence?
21. How were the French and papal courts united?
22. Was there any thing remarkable in the death of Charles?
23. When was the feudal system established, and how?
24. What two languages prevailed in France?



Charles the Bald.

## CHAPTER V.

## THE CARLOVINGIAN RACE CONTINUED.

In vain recorded in historic page  
 They court the notice of a future age :  
 Those twinkling tiny lustres of the land  
 Drop one by one from Fame's neglecting hand ;  
 Lethean gulfs receive them as they fall,  
 And dark oblivion soon absorbs them all.

COWPER.

1. CHARLES the Bald was succeeded by his son Louis, surnamed *Le Begue*, or the Stammerer, during whose brief reign of two years, no event of importance occurred. He left behind two sons, Louis and Carloman, and some months after his death, a posthumous son, Charles, was born, who was afterwards surnamed the Simple. Louis III. and Carloman shared between them the dominions of their father, and lived together in harmony. But Bozon, the father-in-law of Carloman, dismembered the French monarchy by the erection of a new kingdom. A council, held at Manté, in Dauphiny, declared that they had been divinely inspired to give the kingdom of Arles, or, as it is more usually called

A. D.  
879.

Provence, to the Duke of Bozon. 2. The pope sanctioned the proceeding, and personally crowned the new monarch. Bozon proved a wise and politic sovereign; he preserved his little kingdom safe from all the calamities by which the rest of the country was devastated, and during several centuries Provence continued the centre of all the elegance and refinement of France.

3. The sons of Charles the Bald did not long possess the throne; both died prematurely, and the right of inheritance devolved to Charles the Simple, then in his fifth year. The nobles of France saw that in the present condition of that country, an infant sovereign would precipitate the ruin of the state, and they therefore gave the crown to Charles, surnamed *le Gros*, or the Fat, the only surviving son of Louis the Germanic. As he had previously succeeded to the inheritance of his two brothers, and had obtained the imperial crown from the pope, the greater part of the dominions of Charlemagne were again united under one head; but that head, destitute of genius and courage, was unequal to the management of such extensive territories. 4. Charles was proud and cowardly; he was also rendered contemptible by his gluttony, and infamous by his disregard of treaties. Soon after his accession, he purchased a peace from the Normans, by yielding up to them the province of Friezland, and stipulating to pay them tribute; but he again provoked their hostility by repeated acts of treachery, and they fell upon France with greater fury than ever. 5. Advancing through the country, they burned Pontoise, and at length laid siege to Paris. This siege is celebrated both in history and romance for the valiant resistance of the besieged.

Eudes, Count of Paris, had put the town into a good state of defence, and augmented the garrison by the addition of several brave nobles, among whom two bishops, Goslin and Ansheric, were conspicuous. 6. For more than a year they held out, anxiously expecting the approach of their sovereign to raise the siege. At length he appeared at the head of a numerous army, but though almost sure of victory, he had not the spirit to hazard an engagement, but purchased the retreat of the Normans by the payment of an enormous ransom.

7. All the nations of the French empire were seized with a spirit of revolt, principally arising from their disgust at this disgraceful transaction. The Germans first took up arms,



Eudes.

and elected Arnolph, a natural son of the king of Bavaria, as their sovereign. Italy submitted to the dukes of Friuli and Spoleto, and France chose as its sovereign, Eudes, the heroic defender of Paris. The unhappy Charles fell into a state of confirmed insanity; deserted by his servants, and expelled from his palace, he would have wanted the common necessities of life but for the compassion of Luitbart, bishop of Mentz, and under the protection of that generous prelate he terminated his miserable existence. A. D.  
888.

8. Eudes had been elected king of France, but his dominions were limited to the provinces that lie between the Meuse and the Loire; even in this diminished territory there were several principalities, whose submission to the sovereign was only nominal, of whom the counts of Flanders and Anjou were the most powerful. After a short time, the people of France became dissatisfied with the vigorous administration of Eudes, and the count of Vermandois united with the archbishop of Rheims to restore the throne to the rightful heir, Charles the Simple. A. D.  
893. 9. After some fighting, it was agreed to divide the kingdom between the two monarchs; Eudes retaining Paris and its neighbourhood,

while the court of Charles was established on the banks of the Moselle. At length Eudes died, and Charles became the sole monarch of France.

10. After an absolute blank of some years, we meet with an account of the appearance of Rollo, the most celebrated of the Norman chieftains. He every where defeated the French forces, seized on Rouen, which he converted into a place of arms, and struck the king with so much terror, that he resolved to purchase peace on any conditions. He sent a bishop as an ambassador to Rollo, offering to give him his daughter in marriage, and cede the province of Neustria to him and his followers, provided that he should become a Christian, acknowledge the king of France as his feudal sovereign, and aid in repelling any future invasions of his countrymen. Rollo, to whom religion was a matter of perfect indifference, assented to all the conditions, stipulating only that Bretagne should be ceded to him until the other province was cultivated. This was granted, the marriage soon afterwards took place, and Rollo paid homage to the crown more like a conqueror than a vassal.

11. The weakness and incapacity of Charles became every day more apparent; he allowed himself to be entirely governed by Haganon, a man of low birth, hated by the nobility, and despised by the people. Robert, brother of king Eudes, appeared in arms against him; and Charles, instead of levying an army, assembled a council, where he procured the excommunication of his opponents. 12. After a slight struggle, Robert was killed in battle, and his son, Hugh the Great, or the Abbot, though he might have obtained the crown for himself, chose rather to bestow it on Raoul or Rodolph, duke of Burgundy. Rodolph gained over the nobles by lavish donations of the land which still belonged

to the crown; Charles was made a prisoner, and his queen Elgiva fled to the court of her brother Athelstan, king of England, accompanied by her son, a boy about nine years old. Herbert, count de Vernandois, had obtained possession of the person of the unhappy Charles, under the pretence of undertaking his defence; but he detained him a prisoner, in order to procure good terms from Rodolph by threatening him with the liberation of his rival. By this means he procured the county of Laon from the new sovereign, and Charles soon afterwards died, poisoned, as it is said by the count de Vernandois.



13. During his unhappy reign, France was for ever deprived of Germany and the empire. Despising the weakness of Charles the Simple, the German states unanimously elected Otho, duke of Saxony, to the imperial throne; but Otho declining it on account of his advanced age, proposed Conrad, duke of Franconia, and his choice was confirmed by the assembly of the states. This monarch died in 919, recommending to the nobility Henry, son of his benefactor Otho, as his successor. At a general assembly of the states this recommendation was adopted; and Henry, surnamed the Fowler, from his love of hawking, obtained possession of the empire. This prince and his immediate successors were celebrated for their valour and prudence; they restored tranquillity to the middle of Europe, and thus the house of Saxony became the heirs both to the glory and power of Charlemagne.

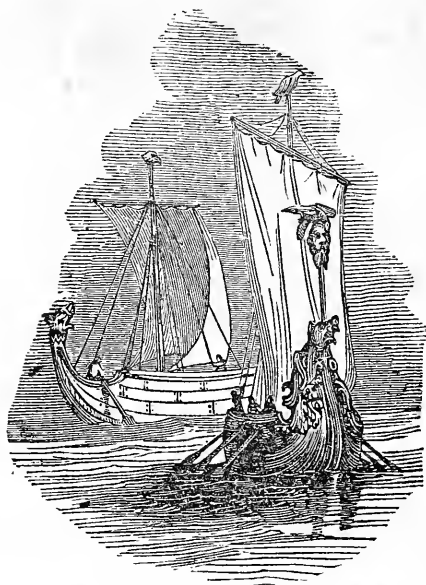
14. Though Rodolph was nominally king of France, all the real power of the state was lodged in the hands of Hugh the Great, who had raised him to the throne. In addition to his hereditary property, he enjoyed the revenues of so many abbeys, that he is frequently called the Abbot. The possessions of the church were now so great that they had attracted the cupidity of the laity, and though the papal see frequently endeavoured to check such a glaring abuse, it continued to prevail during this and the following age. A. D. 935. Rodolph did not long enjoy the crown; he survived the unhappy Charles about six years, leaving no children. Rollo, the conqueror of Normandy, died about three years before, leaving his son William, surnamed *longue épée*, or Long-sword, the heir both of his principality and his virtues

---

### Questions.

1. By whom was the kingdom of Provence founded?
2. What was the character of Bozon?
3. By whom were the dominions of Charlemagne again united under a single sovereign?
4. What was the character of Charles the Fat?
5. Did any thing remarkable occur at the siege of Paris?
6. How was the siege raised?
7. What was the effect of the king's cowardice?
8. Why did the French revolt against Eudes?

9. How was the war terminated?
10. On what condition was peace made with Rollo?
11. Who raised the standard of revolt against Charles?
12. What were the events of the war?
13. By whom was the empire of Germany founded?
14. How was France governed?



**Ships of the Northmen or Normans.**



## CHAPTER VI.

## THE CARLOVINGIAN RACE CONCLUDED.

O mortal, mortal state! and what art thou?  
 Even in thy glory comes the changing shade,  
 And makes thee like a vision fade away!  
 And then misfortune takes the moisten'd sponge  
 And clean effaces all the picture out.

ÆSCHYLUS.

1. ON the death of Rodolph, the supreme power remained in the hands of Hugh, who, in addition to the county of Paris, his paternal inheritance, possessed the duchies of France and Burgundy. Either disliking the title of king, or dreading the jealousy of the nobles, Hugh a second time refused the crown, and invited Louis, the son of Charles, to return from his place of refuge in England,

A. D.  
936.

and assume the reins of government. 2. Athelstan dreading some treachery, endeavoured to dissuade his nephew from compliance; but the young prince was eager to return to his country, and the character of Hugh removed all grounds of apprehension. Louis, surnamed *d'Outremer*, or the Stranger, was received on his landing with the greatest respect; Hugh conducted him to Rheims, where he was crowned by the title of Louis IV. 3. Louis was superior to his predecessors in ability and courage, but he was destitute of honour and integrity, deficiencies which made all his other qualities ineffectual. Hugh had indeed invited Louis to return, but had not the slightest intention of giving up the administration. The king made an attempt to obtain the reins of power, but Hugh then became his enemy, placed him under restraint, and did not restore his liberty until he had ceded the county of Laon, which was almost the only part of the royal domains that remained unappropriated.

4. Hugh had been excommunicated by several councils, and even by the pope: the clergy, and especially the bishops of Lorraine, consequently embraced the cause of Louis, and thus originated a war which continued for several years. The principal ally of Hugh in this conflict was William *Longue épée*, duke of Normandy, one of the bravest nobles of the time. 5. The count of Flanders adopted the royal cause, and having a private quarrel with the duke of Normandy, procured him to be assassinated under circumstances of the greatest treachery. William left a young son named Richard, whom Louis brought to court under pretence of undertaking the care of his education. 6. The count of Flanders instigated the king to murder the orphan, but by a stratagem of Osmond, his governor, the young prince was rescued from their grasp, and placed under the protection of his maternal uncle, the count de Senlis. Soon after these

A. D. transactions Louis was made a prisoner by the count  
945. de Senlis, and could not obtain his freedom until he had restored several places in Normandy, which he had unjustly seized on. Richard was at length established in his dukedom; he was a good and a pious prince, equally conspicuous for his personal graces and moral qualifications. The Norman historians called him Richard *Sans Peur*, or the Fearless, and relate many anecdotes of his piety, charity, and intrepidity.

7. Louis d'Outremer died in the thirty-third year of his

age, by a fall from his horse, leaving behind him two sons, Lothaire and Charles. Lothaire was only four-<sup>A. D.</sup>teen years old when he began to reign, but the go-<sup>954</sup>vernment was so well administered by his mother and her brother, St. Bruno, that for three years France enjoyed a profound tranquillity. Hugh the Great died two years after Louis, and his son Hugh Capet inherited both his wealth and his ambition. 8. Lorraine, an ancient fief of the French crown, had been seized on by the German emperor, and Otho, to secure the possession, bestowed it as a fief on Charles the brother of Lothaire. This arrangement equally displeased the French king and the people; Lothaire was indignant at the loss of the province, and the nation considered their honour degraded by one of their princes becoming tributary to a foreign power. 9. Lothaire, without waiting to publish a declaration of war, invaded the dominions of Otho, and nearly made the young emperor a prisoner at Aix-la-Chapelle; so completely was he surprised, that he was obliged to rise from the table where he was sitting at dinner and trust to the fleetness of his horse for escape. Lothaire stripped the palace at Aix-la-Chapelle of every thing valuable, and returned to Paris laden with booty. 10. Otho in turn invaded France, and advanced to the very gates of Paris, but Hugh Capet had so well secured the town, that Otho was compelled to vent his rage in empty menaces. 11. On his return, Otho had to cross the river Aisne, but as his army arrived on the banks late in the day, the emperor and a part of the army only could pass over; during the night the water rose so considerably that the second division were unable to ford the stream. In this situation they were attacked by Lothaire, and Otho had the mortification of witnessing the defeat of his army, without being able to afford them any assistance. At length he sent over the count of Ardennes in a small skiff, to challenge Lothaire to single combat: the French nobles would not permit this challenge to be accepted, declaring that they did not wish to lose their own king, and that under no circumstances would they recognise Otho as a sovereign.

12. Peace was eventually concluded between the rival monarchs, and soon after Lothaire died. His son<sup>A. D.</sup> and successor, Louis V. survived him but a few months,<sup>989.</sup> and Charles, duke of Lorraine, was now the sole survivor of the race of Charlemagne. But the character of Charles was odious to the French people, his acceptance of Lorraine as a

fief of the empire was looked on as an act of treason against his country; the nation therefore rejected him, and chose as their monarch Hugh Capet, count of Paris, whose family, like the ancient *mayors of the palace*, had long been the real sovereigns of France.

13. Before entering on the history of a new dynasty, it will be useful to take a view of the state of society during the period whose history we have just completed; because there were many institutions originated in those dark ages, which long exercised a powerful influence over the whole of Europe. Those which more particularly demand our attention are the usurpations of the church, the establishment of the feudal system, and the institution of chivalry. The increase of power acquired by the clergy during the reigns of Charlemagne's successors, was for the most part owing to their being the sole depositaries of learning. Ignorance had risen to such a height in the West, that few persons except the monks could either read or write. Hence they brought under their cognizance some of the most important relations of life, and became the registrars and judges in all matters connected with contracts, marriages, and wills. This produced a mixture of civil and ecclesiastical law, which created the most fatal confusion among all ranks, while it opened to the clergy new sources of wealth and power. 14. In marriage especially their interference was productive of many serious evils. Under the first Christian emperors marriage had always been considered as a civil contract, and as such subjected to the control of the general legislature; but the clergy averred that marriage was a sacrament, and, therefore, could only be regulated by ecclesiastical authority. They formed new obstacles of consanguinity and affinity, which they carried to such a length that people scarcely knew where to find a lawful wife; for there was none within the seventh degree. As the popes assumed a special right of determining on this important subject, and of granting dispensations, they obtained a power of interfering in the domestic concerns of princes, which they frequently perverted to the worst of purposes.

15. Religion was overwhelmed with a multitude of ceremonies; pilgrimages, the procuring of relics, offerings, and egacies to the church, were represented as of more value and importance than piety and virtue; nay, were even considered as an expiation of the most atrocious crimes. The censures

of the church, which in a purer age had been used to check transgressions, were now made the instruments of party vengeance. The priesthood, originally designed to bless, was more employed in cursing; excommunications were inflicted according to the dictates of policy or revenge, and hurled against nobles or princes whom the prelates were anxious either to plunder or enslave.

16. The manners of the clergy themselves were a scandal to religion. Scarcely were they acquainted with common decency. Debauchery and vice spread their sway over the entire ecclesiastical body, and not unfrequently found their way to the papal throne. The possessions of the church were openly exposed to sale, and ecclesiastical dignities were either the purchase of bribery, or the reward of violence. The sovereigns were unable to restrain these excesses, for the clergy asserted their independence of every civil tribunal; in many instances they appealed to the pope to remedy these evils, and thus afforded precedents for papal interference, which they afterwards had reason to lament.

17. But the great source of the power which the popes soon after obtained, and the great support of their subsequent influence, arose from the creation of several new monastic orders. The monastic reformation of Clugny took its rise about the beginning of the tenth century, and its progress was amazingly rapid. The monks of this order, distinguished for their piety and austerity, seemed, in an age of general depravity, like angels sent from heaven to save the human race. They soon triumphed over all the ancient orders, as well as the secular clergy; but the wealth that had corrupted their predecessors, proved equally fatal to their virtues. The court of Rome lavished upon them unheard-of privileges; exempting them from every jurisdiction except their own, and binding them to her interest by every imaginable tie. In return they exalted every where the power of the popes; besides being accustomed from their youth to obey the commands of a superior with the same implicit submission as the mandates of Heaven, they were easily led to suppose that the head of the church was invested with unbounded authority. Thus, in the subsequent age, did religion serve more than ever as a pretext for the greatest excesses: it entered into all affairs of importance, and was the primary spring of all events. It is, therefore, necessary to be acquainted with the errors and abuses by which it was corrupted; for at that time theology

mingled with all political transactions, and seemed to have absorbed the mental powers of mankind, who certainly were never so little acquainted either with politics or religion.

18. The establishment of the feudal system made the nobles independent sovereigns in their respective districts; the greater part were tyrants in their own domains, and robbers in those of others. Hence arose innumerable private wars which kept the country in continual anarchy, and the

very remedies applied to cure the evil, were sources  
 A. D. of fresh calamity. 19. The bishops, to check these  
 1040. enormities, published what they called "*The Truce of God*," enacting, that from Wednesday evening until Monday morning, no act of violence should be committed, under pain of fine and excommunication. But this was found too severe a law, and the truce was subsequently shortened to the interval between sunset on Saturday and sunrise on Monday; so that during all the rest of the week, murder and robbery might seem to be authorized.

20. The institution of chivalry served in some degree to alleviate these horrors. Romantic notions of honour, and an extravagant devotion to the fair sex, however absurd in modern times, were a check to many extravagances in an age of violence. And when justice in courts of law was impossible to be obtained, the existence of a body of men sworn to redress wrongs, and defend innocence, could not have been wholly destitute of utility. It must be confessed, however, that chivalry tended to keep alive the love of war, and a thirst for military adventure, which, in a subsequent age, caused those calamitous wars, the crusades; but it also introduced a spirit of generosity which often softened the horrors of war by noble instances of magnanimity and humanity.

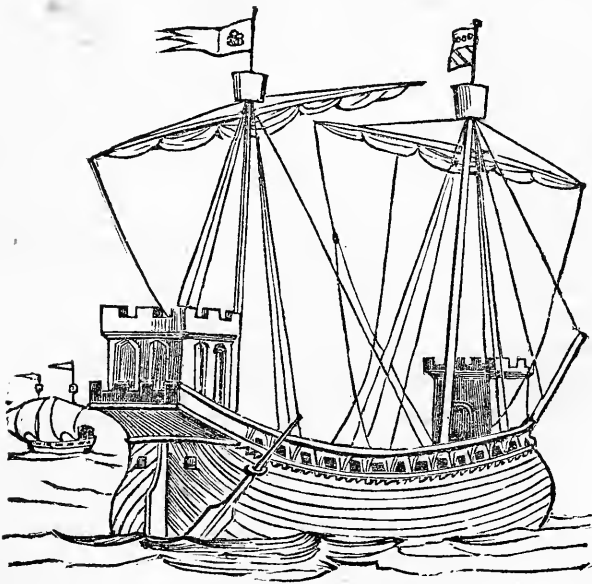
---

### Questions.

1. By whom was Rodolph succeeded?
2. How was Louis received in France?
3. What was his character?
4. By what ally was Hugh Capet supported?
5. How was William slain?
6. By what means was the young duke of Normandy rescued from his enemies?
7. Who succeeded Louis d'Outremers?
8. How did Charles displease the French nation?



9. What danger did the German emperor escape ?
10. How far was Otho successful in his invasion of France ?
11. How was his army defeated ?
12. What circumstances gave the crown of France to the family of Capet ?
13. What was the state of the church during this age ?
14. How were the laws respecting marriage a means of increasing the power of the clergy ?
15. Was the power of excommunication abused ?
16. Were the manners of the clergy corrupt ?
17. What institution particularly strengthened the papal power ?
18. What evils resulted from the independence of the nobles under the feudal system ?
19. What was the Truce of God ?
20. What effect had the institution of chivalry ?



Ship of the Tenth Century.



Hugh Capet.

## CHAPTER VII.

## FROM THE ACCESSION OF HUGH CAPET TO THE FIRST CRUSADE.

Ill hap attend  
 That worst of traitors, a perfidious friend!  
 Loyal in guise, his serpent-coil he winds  
 Round the frank singleness of noble minds.      W<sup>A</sup>Y.

A. D. 987. 1. THE abilities of Hugh Capet did not rise above the standard of mediocrity, but he possessed a great share of strong sound sense, and that practical knowledge which is commonly called worldly wisdom. Perceiving the vast influence of the clergy, he gained them over to his side by renouncing the rich abbeys which his father had possessed, and through their means spread a report, that St. Riquier, whose shrine he had visited barefoot, had made him a promise of the crown. In an assembly held at Noyons he was formally elected king, and was immediately after consecrated at Rheims.

2. Charles of Lorraine did not endure his exclusion patiently; but as he was unable to cope with his adversary in the field, he had recourse to treachery and fraud. Arnolph, the illegitimate son of his brother Lothaire, was a priest at Laon; through his means, Charles being admitted into the town, took possession of the palace of his ancestors, and was proclaimed king by the old retainers of his family. Ancelin, bishop of Laon, took a prominent part in these transactions, and thus acquired the confidence of Charles, whom he had previously determined to betray. 3. Capet, alarmed at the progress of his rival, endeavoured to detach Arnolph from his interest, and accordingly raised him to the archbishopric of Rheims. But Arnolph proved ungrateful to his benefactor; he admitted Charles into Rheims, but to save appearances, required the prince of Lorraine to send him as a prisoner to Laon. 4. Hugh at length levied an army, and formed the siege of Laon, but his forces were defeated by an unexpected sally of the enemy, and he was compelled to retreat. Prosperity was ruinous to Charles; believing that the raising of the siege of Laon left him in perfect security, A. D. 992. he gave himself up to ease and enjoyment. This was the opportunity which Ancelin had long expected; he invited Hugh to approach the town, opened the gates to him during the night, and made him master of the persons both of Charles and his queen. They both died in confinement, leaving behind them two sons, who were born in prison, and two daughters, who, having remained in Germany, escaped the captivity of their parents. 5. The sons of Charles appear to have been taken under the protection of the emperor of Germany, and to have resigned all claims to the throne of France. A descendant of one of the daughters was married to Philip Augustus, and through her the late royal family of France claim to be descended from Charlemagne. 6. The trial of Arnolph soon after this engaged the attention of the state. His partisans maintained that this cause ought to be carried before the pope, but the Bishop of Orleans strenuously maintained the contrary, and persuaded the council to adopt the same opinion. The king came in person to pass sentence, when Arnolph threw himself at his feet, promising obedience for the future. His life was spared, but he was deprived of his see, and the celebrated Gerbert appointed in his stead. 7. Gerbert had been originally the son of a peasant, afterwards he became a monk at Aurillac, and soon out

stripped all his brethren in literature and science. The envy of the other monks compelled him to quit his convent, he passed into Spain, and there studied mathematics and natural philosophy among the Arabians. The fame that he acquired in these pursuits, made him suspected by the vulgar as a magician, but recommended him also to the emperor of Germany and the king of France, as a fit tutor for their children. 8. The fortune and merit of the new archbishop made him an object of envy to the French prelates; they appealed to the court of Rome against Arnolph's deprivation, because the consent of the pope had not been previously obtained. The pope sent a legate into France, and Hugh, who dreaded a quarrel with his holiness, was compelled to deprive Gerbert and restore Arnolph. 9. But the fortune of both was only changed in appearance; Arnolph was detained in prison, but Gerbert obtained the archbishopric of Ravenna from his former pupil, Otho III., emperor of Germany, and eventually became pope under the title of Silvester II.



Robert the Pious.

10. Hugh died in A. D. the tenth year of his 996. reign, and was succeeded by his son, Robert I., surnamed the Pious, whom the old French historians describe as a saint, and the moderns as an idiot; to a weak intellect, he united a scrupulous and ignorant devotion, which exposed him to the artifices of an ambitious and enterprising clergy. 11. He married Bertha, daughter of Conrad, duke of Burgundy, who was equally distinguished by her good temper and beautiful person.

Unfortunately, she was fourth cousin to the king, a degree prohibited by the canons of the Romish church; and though several French bishops had assented to the marriage, Pope Gregory V. undertook to annul it. 12. Accordingly, without even hearing the parties, he issued a decree, ordering the king and queen to separate under pain of excommunication, and suspending all the bishops who had been accomplices in their

pretended crime. Robert, passionately attached to his wife, made no haste to comply, but reckoned himself as excommunicated. 13. Such was the superstition of the period, that he was immediately forsaken by all his courtiers; only two domestics continued their services, and even they cleansed with fire the plates used at table by the king, believing that they were polluted by his sacrilegious touch.

14. Robert, worn out by importunity, and dreading a revolt, at length consented to a divorce, and Bertha retired to a convent. The king's next marriage was with Constance, daughter of the count of Arles; a woman of insatiable ambition, proud, cruel, fond of expense, and totally devoted to pleasure. Robert found his court insupportable, he gave himself up entirely to the monks, and spent his time in the practice of superstitious austerities; while the queen, with her train of troubadours and young Provençal nobles, filled the palace with noisy festivity. 15. About this time, the news of the cruelties practised on the Christians of Palestine by the Saracens excited the indignation of all Europe.

A. D.  
1002.

Pope Silvester II. preached up a crusade, but ineffectually, and the wrath of Christendom was vented on the Jews. These unfortunate people, whose persecution in the middle ages was almost considered a virtue, were suspected of acting as spies for the Saracens, and on this vague suspicion numbers were ruthlessly massacred.

16. Henry, duke of Burgundy, brother to Hugh Capet, dying without issue, Otho William, his wife's son by a former husband, took possession of his dominions. Robert, conceiving that his own claim to the duchy was superior, proceeded to assert it by force of arms. As he was not a warrior himself, he summoned to his aid the duke of Normandy; and having by his means assembled a considerable army, he laid siege to Auxerre. Near the town was an abbey sacred to Saint Germain, which it was necessary to storm previous to the assault of the garrison. When the royal troops were about to advance to the attack, a priest met the king, and warned him not to violate the sanctuary of the saint; while he was yet speaking, a mist rose from a neighbouring river, superstition magnified this common event into a miraculous appearance; the soldiers exclaimed that the saint had come to defend his temple, and took to flight with their king at their head. After this strange termination of the first campaign, the war lingered a few months longer; it eventually

erminated by William's resigning the dukedom to the king, but retaining all the power and real advantages of sovereignty under the humbler title of count of Burgundy.

17. Robert's eldest son died young; the second was an idiot, and Henry was therefore chosen by Robert as his successor. This arrangement was opposed by Constance, who endeavoured to secure the crown for her younger son Robert the strict friendship that existed between the brothers, and the unexpected firmness of Robert, defeated her intrigues:

she, however, succeeded so far as to fill the royal family with quarrels and disunion. The inglorious reign of Robert terminated in the sixtieth year of his age; on his return from a pilgrimage he was seized with a violent fever at Melun, which soon ended his life.



Henry I.

18. Henry I. was about twenty years of age when he succeeded to the throne; Constance and Robert opposed his accession, but by the aid of the duke of Normandy he triumphed over all opposition. Constance retired to a convent, where she soon after died; as the king believed that his brother's hostility had arisen more from the persuasion of his mother than his own inclinations, he not only restored him to his confidence, but gave him the province of Burgundy. 19. The most remarkable circumstance in the reign of this prince is, that he took for his

second wife Anne, daughter of Jarodislas, czar of Muscovy. The obstacles to marriage were so greatly multiplied, and the example of his father so terrifying, that he thought it expedient to send for a wife into a country then almost unknown, rather than encounter the dangers of an excommunication. 20. The evils that had arisen from the disorders of the clergy and the feuds of the nobles, appear to have reached their height. Hildebrand, who was afterwards pope under the name of Gregory VII., laboured strenuously and successfully to sub-

ject all Europe to the despotism of the church; he virtually ruled the holy see long before his election to the papal throne, and directed all his efforts to subject monarchs and emperors to the papacy. The private wars of the nobles were more like those of princes than subjects, and during the reign of Henry, several pitched battles were fought, attended with unusual slaughter.

21. Henry at his death left three sons, of whom Philip, the eldest, was only seven years old. Pursuant to the will of the late king, the regency was entrusted to Baldwin, earl of Flanders, who took better care of the monarchy than of the monarch. Philip was permitted to grow up uneducated, the slave of uncontrolled passions and unregulated desires. 22. In his fourteenth year he was freed from all restraint by the death of his guardian, and soon after was involved in a war with Robert, count of Friezland. Philip was compelled to make peace with the count, and as one of the conditions, was obliged to marry Robert's step-mother. The king was by no means pleased with the match, and after some years divorced her on the plea of consanguinity. 23. He then enticed from her husband, Bertrade, the wife of Fulk, count of Anjou, and openly married her in spite of every remonstrance. Pope Urban II., after many ineffectual threats, excommunicated Philip; the monarch took no notice of the proceeding, but continued to live with Bertrade, deriving new hopes from the death of his former wife, and from the consent of Fulk, who bore the loss of his faithless spouse with great patience.

24. The conquests of the Saracens in the east, and especially the capture of Jerusalem, had alarmed the emperor of Constantinople for his safety; in an evil hour he wrote to the pope, soliciting him to stir up the western princes to form a league against the Saracens. The consequence of the papal exertions was the Crusades, or Holy Wars, but before we enter on the history of that eventful period, it is necessary to give some account of the province of Normandy, from which England had about this time received a new race of sovereigns.

---

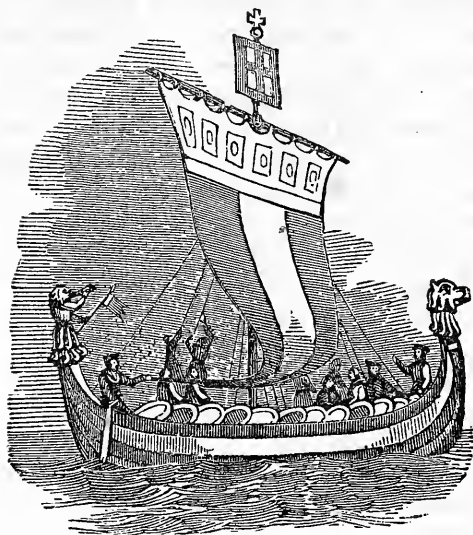
### Questions.

1. What was the character of Hugh Capet?
2. By whom was his accession opposed?

3. How did Arnolph behave in the civil war?
4. How did the contest terminate?
5. Why did the last race of French monarchs boast to be descended from Charlemagne?
6. What was done to Arnolph?
7. By whom was he succeeded in his bishopric?
8. Did the clergy acquiesce in this arrangement?
9. To what eminence did Gerbert subsequently rise?
10. By whom was Hugh Capet succeeded?
11. To whom was Robert married?
12. How did the pope proceed in annulling the marriage?
13. What proves the excessive superstition of the age?
14. To whom was Robert subsequently wedded?
15. What unfortunate people were bitterly persecuted at this time?
16. What strange event occurred at the siege of Auzerre?
17. How did Robert's queen excite disunion in the royal family?
18. By whom was the accession of Henry opposed?
19. Is there any thing remarkable in his marriage?
20. What pope made the greatest efforts to obtain universal dominion?
21. How was Philip educated?
22. To whom was he first married?
23. In what manner did he obtain his second wife?
24. What remarkable wars commenced about this time?







**The Ship in which William the Conqueror sailed to England.**

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE HISTORY OF NORMANDY.

O'er the glad waters of the dark blue sea,  
Our thoughts as boundless, and our souls as free,  
Far as the breeze can bear, the billows foam,  
Survey our empire and behold our home.

BYRON.

1. THE nations who successively invaded southern Europe from the ninth to the twelfth centuries, were originally descended from the same stock ; but when, by conquest, they had obtained a settlement in any country, they gradually adopted the arts of the vanquished, and laid aside their habits of plunder for the more useful pursuits of agriculture. The next horde of invaders refused to acknowledge these degenerate warriors as their countrymen, and inflicted on them the same calamities which they had caused the original inhabitants to suffer. The Saxons in Britain, the Goths and Franks

in Gaul, found in the Danes or Normans the avengers of the cruelties which they had previously practised on the Celtic population. The severe persecution of the Saxons by Charlemagne induced many of their bravest warriors to fly into Scandinavia; their representation of the cruelties practised on the worshippers of Odin, stimulated their brethren of the north to prepare for revenge, and we have already seen that even in the reign of Charlemagne, the northern shores of France were devastated by Scandinavian pirates.

2. The invasion of Rollo, in the reign of Charles A. D. the Simple, was the last of their plundering expeditions; by an agreement with that monarch, who was 912. anxious to save his country from devastation, and to secure for himself an active body of partisans, the province of Neustria, and the hand of the king's daughter, were given to Rollo, who thenceforward took the title of Robert I., duke of Normandy. The remains of the Celtic Gauls, who had been cruelly oppressed by the Franks, gladly submitted to the equitable administration of Rollo, and the number of his subjects was continually increased by parties of the aboriginal natives, who sought, under a new master, relief from the oppression of their former conquerors. 3. But the Normans were not so successful in obtaining the affections of the inhabitants of Brittany, whom Charles, unable to subdue himself, had transferred to his new allies. This province, situated at the north-western extremity of Gaul, was known to the Romans by the name of Armorica; it was inhabited by the bravest Celtic tribes, and had successfully resisted most of the invaders who had seized on the rest of Gaul. 4. When the Saxons had established their dominion in Britain, many of the ancient inhabitants removed to Armorica, with the consent of the ancient inhabitants, who acknowledged them as brethren of the same origin; the new settlers distributed themselves over the whole northern coast, as far as the territory of the Veneti, now called *Vannes*. The name of Brittany was thenceforth given to this province. The increase of the population of this western corner of the country, and the great number of people of the Celtic race and language thus assembled within a narrow space, preserved them from the irruption of the Roman tongue, which, under a form more or less corrupt, had gradually become prevalent in every other part of Gaul. 5. Remembering the evils that had forced them to become exiles, the Bretons had a vehement dislike of all

foreign rule, and under every change of fortune, were eager to seize an opportunity for asserting their independence.

6. Under the command of their *Tierns*, or Counts, as the Normans called them, Alan and Berenger, they made a desperate resistance to Robert, and were with difficulty subdued. The conqueror appears to have exercised his victory with moderation, and to have been contented with receiving homage from the leaders as their feudal *suzerain*.

7. The conduct of the Norman duke, and his successors in their dominions, is honourably contrasted with that of their contemporaries. Robert gave his subjects a charter, provided for the due administration of justice, and encouraged strangers to settle in his dominions. The historians describe the tranquillity and security of Normandy during his reign, by assuring us that ornaments of gold and silver were exposed unguarded on the highways without any danger of their being carried off by robbers. 8. Robert re-  
A. D.  
912.  
 signed the crown to his son William, called *Longue-épée*, or Long-sword, and spent the remaining three years of his life in retirement.

9. An insurrection of the Bretons, and a more formidable rebellion of the Normans, broke out during the first years of William's reign; but by united valour and prudence he suppressed both, and treading in the steps of his father, applied himself diligently to the improvement of his dominions. The Danes maintained a friendly intercourse with the conquerors of Normandy; and when Harold, king of Denmark, was dethroned by his rebellious son Sweyn, he sought refuge in the Norman court, and owed his restoration to the friendship and valour of William. 10. To succour unfor-  
A. D.  
936.  
 tunate princes, seems to have been the fated employment of the Norman duke. When Hugh, count of Paris, endeavoured to deprive Louis d'Outremer of the throne, William exerted his utmost efforts in behalf of the rightful sovereign of France, and was the principal means of securing him on the throne. With similar generosity, he embraced the cause of Herbin, count of Montreuil, whom his treacherous neighbour Arnold, count of Flanders, had expelled from his dominions. William defeated the usurper in a decisive engagement, and rejected every reward which the restored nobleman offered to him. 11. But this expedition was the cause of his death. Arnold, enraged at his defeat, resolved

A. D. 942. to employ treachery, since open force had failed; he solicited an interview with William in one of the islands of the Somme, and having craftily separated the duke from his attendants, caused him to be assassinated.

12. Richard I. was but a child at the time of his father's death, but the administration of affairs was undertaken by four Norman nobles, of whom Bernard, count of Harcourt, commonly called Bernard the Dane, was the chief. Louis, who owed his crown to William, ungratefully conspired with Hugh, count of Paris, to strip his son of his dominions. With this design he entered Normandy, at the head of a numerous army, pretending that his intention was merely to avenge the murder of the late duke: but after he had been received as a friend at Rouen, he seized on the person of the young duke, and sent him off to Paris under the pretence of having him properly educated. 13. At the instigation of the count of Flanders, Louis designed the assassination of Richard, but he was rescued from the danger by the fidelity of his tutor Osmond. This faithful attendant went to the castle of Laon, where his young master was confined, and under pretence of going to feed his horse, conveyed him out of the castle enveloped in a truss of hay. They directed their course to the residence of the Count de Senlis, Richard's maternal uncle, and reached their place of refuge in safety. 14. Meantime the gratitude of a prince whom William had benefited, was about to be displayed by the restoration of his son to his dominions. Bernard, count of Harcourt, had successfully exerted himself to sow disunion between the French king and the count of Paris; he had also sent a secret message to Harold, king of Denmark, informing him of the state of affairs, and entreated him to aid in the deliverance of Normandy from the dominion of the French. Harold came at the first summons; the Normans, headed by Bernard, hastened to join him, and Louis, unable to compete with their united forces in the field, solicited an interview to settle the terms of peace. While the two kings were discussing the articles, a Norman, recognising the count of Montreuil in the hostile army, bitterly reproached him with his ingratitude, and, when he made a haughty reply, a Dane that was present struck him dead. This became the signal for a general engagement, which commenced before the two kings had heard of the transaction. The French were totally defeated, and Louis made prisoner; his captors treated him with great re-

spect, but he was obliged to restore Normandy to the young duke, and pay a heavy ransom before he could obtain his liberty. 15. Richard was surnamed *Sans Peur*, or the Fearless; he inherited all the noble qualities of his race, and though surrounded by powerful enemies, preserved his dominions secure and tranquil. His marriage with the daughter of Hugh the Great alarmed the fears of Louis; he entered into an alliance with Otho, emperor of Germany, Conrad, king of Burgundy, and Arnold, count of Flanders, to overwhelm both Hugh and Richard. But the efforts of the allies were every where unfortunate: unable to make any impression on Paris, they directed their march towards Normandy, where Richard cut off some of their best soldiers in an ambuscade, and repulsed them from before the walls of Rouen with loss and disgrace.

16. On the death of Hugh the Great, Richard was appointed guardian to his children, and by his fidelity in the execution of that office, again provoked the hostility of the French monarch. After a long struggle, in which the Normans were every where successful, Richard triumphed over the treachery and the forces of his opponents, and compelled them to beg a peace. Some years after, Hugh Capet, aided by his former guardian, obtained the throne of France, and thus changed that from a hostile into a friendly country. The rest of Richard's reign was spent in profound peace, and at his death Normandy was one of the most flourishing countries in Europe. 17. Richard II., surnamed the *good and intrepid*, succeeded. The early part of his reign was disturbed by an insurrection of the peasantry, and by the rebellion of his natural brother, the count de Hiemes. Richard having quelled his adversaries, shut up his brother in a prison, where he remained five years. Having at length made his escape, he suddenly presented himself before Richard, while he was hunting, in a squalid dress, and earnestly solicited forgiveness. The duke generously granted him his pardon, and restored all his former possessions. 18. The throne of England was at this time possessed by Ethelred, who with difficulty maintained himself against the Danes; to secure a powerful ally, he married Emma, sister to the duke of Normandy; but no aid that he could obtain was sufficient to repel the invasion of Sweyn, the Danish monarch; and Ethelred, compelled to abandon his kingdom, lived for some time in exile at the court of his

A. D.  
987.

A. D.  
1003.

brother-in-law. 19. The king of France, having united with some of the princes who bordered on Normandy, Richard found himself unable to resist the coalition alone, and solicited the aid of the Danes. A numerous army was sent to his assistance, but he found that his allies were more injurious to his cause than even his enemies. The king of France having agreed on terms of peace, the Danes, enraged at losing the prospect of plunder, turned their arms against Brittany, where they committed the most frightful outrages. Richard was obliged to purchase their departure with a large sum of money, and from this time forward, the intercourse between Denmark and Normandy appears to have declined. 20. So great was the duke's character for honour, that Geoffry, count of Brittany, with whom he had been often at war, nominated the Norman regent of that province, during his absence on a pilgrimage. Geoffry was accidentally killed, but Richard acted as a faithful guardian to his children, and when they came of age, gave them immediate possession of their father's territories. 21. On the death of Ethelred, Canute became sole monarch of England, and queen Emma, with her two children, were compelled to take refuge in the court of her

brother. Richard prepared to invade England, but his  
 A. D. fleet being shattered in a storm, he made peace with  
 1026.

Canute, and gave him Emma as his wife. 22. The sons of Ethelred seemed by this specification to have lost all chance of inheriting the British crown; but several years after, Canute's sons having died without heirs, Edward, surnamed the *Confessor*, returned from exile, and obtained the throne of his ancestors. Richard, after a long and successful reign, died, leaving behind him two sons, Richard and Robert.

23. Richard III. did not long survive his father; after a short reign of eighteen months, he died at Rouen, poisoned, as is believed, by his brother.

24. Robert II., surnamed the *liberal* and *magnificent*, succeeded his brother; the early part of his reign was disturbed by insurrections, but he so completely subdued them, that he

thought he might with safety venture on a pilgrimage  
 A. D. to Palestine. The climate of Asia completely de-  
 1035. stroyed his health, and he was obliged to complete his journey in a litter. Another Norman pilgrim returned from the holy city, met Robert, supported by four Saracens; he asked the duke what account he should give of him on his return? "Tell my friends," said Robert, "that you saw me

borne into Paradise by four devils." He died on his way back at Nice, in Bithynia, leaving no legitimate heir.

25. Before Robert had set out for Palestine, he had nominated his natural son William to be his successor, and the states of Normandy had confirmed his choice; but when the news of his death reached Europe, several of the ducal family endeavoured to have William set aside. The states, however, obstinately adhered to their former decision, and William triumphed over all his competitors. 26. These wars evidently proved the source of the duke's future prosperity, as they supplied him with an army inured to combats, and inspirited by repeated success, with which he was enabled to take advantage of the opportunities presented him by fortune. Edward the Confessor, on his return to England, became disgusted with his Saxon subjects, and gave himself up to Norman favorites. The family of Godwin, Earl of Kent, were particularly odious to him, and to prevent their becoming his successors, (which, as he had no heirs, appeared very probable,) he bequeathed his crown to William, duke of Normandy. On the death of Edward, Harold assumed the crown of England, but William passing over at the head of a gallant army, defeated the English at the decisive battle of Hastings, slew Harold, and subjected the whole

A. D.  
1066.



William the Conqueror receiving the Crown of England.

country to the Norman sway. From henceforward the history of Normandy is so intimately connected with that of France and England, that it is no longer necessary to treat of it separately.

27. A little before the conquest of England, some Norman adventurers founded a new kingdom in Italy, under circumstances so extraordinary as to demand some notice

A. D. 1016. Forty Norman gentlemen, returning from a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, saved the city of Salerno, which was on the point of being seized by the Saracens, and refused to receive any of the rewards offered to them by the gratitude of the inhabitants. The fame of this exploit spreading through Italy, induced several of the Italian princes to take into their pay troops of Norman adventurers, who were ever ready to sell their services. The duke of Naples, to whom they had been of great use in his contest with the prince of Capua, bestowed upon them a considerable territory, situated between the two cities, where they founded the city of Aversa. This establishment attracted new adventurers. Three sons of Tancred of Hauteville, a gentleman of Normandy, one of whom

A. D. 1046. was called *William Fier-a-bras*, or *Bras-de-Fer* (Iron arm) laid the foundation of a new principality for their family. After having wrested La Puglia from the Catapan, the title of a magistrate acting under the authority of the court of Constantinople, they shared the conquest with the other officers. Bras-de-fer was elected count of La Puglia by his soldiers; he was succeeded by his brothers, Drogon and Humphrey, who being afterwards joined by their younger brother, Robert Guiscard, soon became formidable to the Italians. Leo IX. dreading that these adventurers would not respect the property of the church more than that of the laity, formed an alliance against the strangers, whom he had previously excommunicated. The Normans, who scarcely exceeded three thousand men, sent him a most respectful message, promising to do him homage for their fiefs; but the pope having refused the offer, they cut his army in pieces, took himself prisoner; but instead of doing him any injury, they prostrated themselves before him, and having received absolution, restored him to liberty.

28. What they offered to Leo IX. was accepted by A. D. 1059. Nicholas II. Robert Guiscard having received from him the investiture of all the conquests which he had gained in La Puglia and Calabria, and all that he might after



wards make in those provinces or in Sicily, took the oath of feudal fidelity to the pope. With equal vigour and success they attacked the forces of the Greek empire in the south of Italy, and the Saracens in Sicily; victory followed victory in rapid succession, until they had obtained actual possession of those countries of which the pope had only given them the empty titles. Thus powerful vassals were attached to the holy see, valuable rights of lordship were acquired, and new means of aggrandizement were procured.

---

*Questions.*

1. What stimulated the Normans to attack France?
2. How did Rollo acquire and secure Normandy?
3. Did he meet with any resistance?
4. Why did Armorica receive the name of Brittany?
5. What was the character of the Bretons?
6. How were they treated by Robert?
7. Was Normandy well governed?
8. By whom was Robert succeeded?
9. In what wars was William Long-sword engaged?
10. What princes did he assist in their misfortunes?
11. How did William die?
12. To what dangers was young duke Richard exposed?
13. How was he rescued?
14. By whose assistance was he restored to his dominions?
15. What formidable alliance did Richard defeat?
16. What caused his second war with France?
17. Who headed the rebellion against Richard II.?
18. Did any exiled sovereign take refuge at his court?
19. What remarkable events occurred during his war with France?
20. Does any remarkable circumstance prove his high character for honour and integrity?
21. How was the war between Richard and Canute prevented?
22. Did any son of Ethelred reign in England?
23. How did Richard III. die?
24. Is any curious anecdote told of Robert II.?
25. By whom was Robert succeeded?
26. What circumstances led to the Norman conquest of England?
27. Did the Normans found any other kingdom?
28. Was the erection of a Norman power in Italy useful to the pope?



Philip I.

## CHAPTER IX.

FROM THE FIRST CRUSADE TO THE ACCESSION OF  
PHILIP AUGUSTUS.

But when on high the sacred standard rose,  
Through all their veins a brisker current flows,  
New hopes, new strength, inspire the pious throng,  
"TIS HEAVEN'S HIGH WILL," they shout, and rush along.

MISS PORDEN.

1. WE must now return to the history of France  
A. D. 1095. Although Urban II. had excommunicated the king, he did not hesitate to take refuge in France when exposed to danger by the quarrels between the emperor and the holy see. He called a council at Clermont, and in a long speech recommended to the assembly's notice the state of Palestine, exhorting all to take up arms and rescue its sacred soil from the infidels. 2. The preaching of Peter the Hermit, an enthusiastic monk of Picardy, who had lately returned from a





Peter the Hermit received by Alexis Comnenus

pilgrimage to Jerusalem, and who gave a most pathetic description of the calamities to which the pilgrims were exposed, had prepared their minds; no sooner then did they hear the papal recommendation, than all with one acclaim shouted *Deus id vult*, "God wills it." 3. At the same council, Urban once more excommunicated Philip, forbade princes to give *investitures*,\* and ordered that bishops and priests should not for the future do homage to their sovereigns. He next travelled from province to province, commanding the people everywhere to join the crusades; deposing those bishops who had in any way resisted his power, and lavishing privileges on the monks, who had been found by experience to be the most strenuous supporters of the holy see.

4. The crusading frenzy which seized on France produced the most dreadful calamities; a disorderly rabble, headed by Peter the Hermit, and a Norman gentleman called Walter the Pennyless, first set out; their numbers exceeded 300,000. They displayed their furious zeal on the way, by the massacre of Jews, laid waste for subsistence the countries through which they passed, and excited against themselves the vengeance of the indignant population. On his arrival at Constantinople, Peter the Hermit was graciously received by the emperor of the east, Alexis Comnenus, who hastened to forward the march of the rabble who accompanied him, into Asia Minor. Nearly all of them perished miserably of hunger, fatigue, and suffering, before they reached the Holy Land.

In the regular army that followed under the command of Godfrey of Bouillon, were some of the principal nobles of France; among these the most conspicuous were, Hugh de Vermandois, brother to the king; Robert of Normandy, son of William the Conqueror; Robert, earl of Flanders; Stephen, count of Blois, father of king Stephen; and Raymond, count of Toulouse. After many vicissitudes, the crusaders captured Jerusalem, July 15th, A. D. 1099, and founded a Christian kingdom in Palestine. 5. After this exploit, most of the French who survived returned home; but being reproached by their countrymen as deserters of the sacred cause, they again set out for Palestine under the command of William, duke of Aquitaine. This chieftain, more distin-

---

\* The right of the king to give the investiture or possession of the see to a bishop was always resisted by the popes; they thought that if they permitted any interference of the state in ecclesiastical matters, their own supremacy would be gradually undermined.

guished for his literary talents than political wisdom, was soon involved in a dispute with the emperor of Constantinople. 6. The treacherous Greek, in revenge for some insults he had received, betrayed the Crusaders to the Saracens; they were led by false guides into defiles that exposed them to be attacked at a disadvantage; in this situation they were assailed by an army of the Saracens, who routed them with great slaughter, a few only of the nobles saving themselves by flight.

7. While the bravest of his subjects were thus uselessly wasting their strength in Palestine, Philip continued sunk in the lowest debauchery; he obtained absolution from the pope, and went barefooted to a council at Paris with Bertrade, to swear that they would live no longer together. The pope's legate gave them absolution; but the condition of repudiating Bertrade does not appear to have been insisted on, for the king continued to live with her, and had her children declared capable of inheriting the crown.

8. Philip died in the fiftieth year of his inglorious reign. The royal dominions did not at this time extend over more than one hundred square miles; but the monarchy had reached its lowest state of debasement, and from henceforward began to increase in power and territory during every succeeding century.



Louis VI.

9. The accession of Louis VI. was hailed by the French with delight; he had been associated with his father in the sovereignty several years before, and had given striking proofs both of his valour and justice, by subduing and punishing the lords of Montl'heri, Montford, and other barons who had become captains of banditti, and sallied out from the towers which they had erected along the roads, plundering travellers, and devastating the country.

10. The popularity he had thus obtained, exposed him to great danger, for Bertrade, jealous of his fame, and anxious to secure the crown for her own son Philip, gave him a poisonous draught. Thou \

Louis was saved by a skilful physician, he ever after felt the injurious effects of it, and his complexion even till his death continued pale and sallow. 11. The education of the young prince had been shamefully neglected, but his own taste led him to cultivate the manly exercises of chivalry, and at the same time he acquired those high principles of honour and integrity, by which knighthood was distinguished in the earlier ages. His great corpulence, which procured him the surname *le Gros*, or the Fat, did not render him inactive, and the situation of France at the time of his accession, was such as to require the most vigorous exertions.

12. The nobles still continued to act the part of oppressors, and Louis scarcely subdued one ere he was compelled to march against another; however he persevered, and though his half-brother Philip joined with some of the factious nobles, he finally prevailed in restoring something like social order to the distracted country. 13. A few years after Louis was engaged with a more powerful foe. Henry I. of England had seized on the duchy of Normandy, shut up his brother Robert, the rightful duke, in prison, and compelled Robert's son, William, to seek for safety in the court of France. Louis undertook to restore William to his dominions the more readily, because Henry had lately erected the strong castle of Gesors on the frontiers of Normandy, and had thus become formidable to the French monarchy. A battle was fought at Brenneville, in which the English were victorious, but there was not much blood shed, as both parties were anxious to take their enemies alive for the sake of their ransom. This was the first battle fought between two nations whose subsequent hostility has shed so much blood.

14. Henry I. of England, was a more clever politician than his gallant rival, and he contrived to involve Louis in a quarrel with Henry V. of Germany. Pope Calixtus V. had been driven out of Italy by the emperor, and compelled to take refuge in France. The pope assembled a council at Rheims, and thundered out an excommunication against the emperor, who on his part resolved to destroy the town where so gross an insult had been offered to him. 15. The king of France unfurled the *oriflamme*,\* the several vassals of the crown

\* The oriflamme, or sacred banner of France, was reported to have descended from heaven, in honour either of Clovis or Charlemagne. It was, according to Mailly, a square banner of flame-

flocked to the sacred standard, and he soon found himself at the head of 200,000 men. The emperor did not venture to come to an engagement, but quickly repassed the Rhine with all his forces. Louis wished to take advantage of these circumstances and invade Normandy, but his nobles refused to join in the expedition, dreading that the precedent of punishing a disobedient vassal might at some future period be turned against themselves.

16. The death of his eldest son in the prime of  
 A. D. life, by a fall from his horse, was the source of bitter  
 1131. affliction to Louis; he never afterwards took the same  
 interest in public affairs; and when he had procured the co-  
 ronation of his second son Louis, he seemed to devote  
 A. D. himself entirely to the affairs of another world. 17.  
 1137. On his death-bed he addressed his son in words that  
 cannot too often be repeated to a sovereign: "Remember,  
 my son, that a kingdom is a public trust, for the exercise of  
 which you must render a strict account after your death."  
 18. This reign is distinguished by several useful establish-  
 ments, especially by that of *communes*, which were some-  
 thing like our corporations. To check the extravagant  
 power of the nobility, whose excesses the royal power was  
 unable to restrain, the king sold permission to several of the  
 cities and towns to form associations for mutual protection,

---

coloured taffeta, without figures or embroidery, but with three deep indentures at the bottom; and suspended from a gilded lance. Hence was derived its compound name; *or*, alluding to the gilded staff, and *flamme*, signifying both the colour of the silk and the shape of the banner. It was always raised when the king intended to summon the aid of all his vassals. When displayed in the battle-field, it was a signal that no quarter would be given. The folly of the age attributed many fabled virtues to this banner, and it was believed that its presence would ensure victory. The falsehood of this, however, was fatally proved at Crecy. Nothing can more decidedly mark the respect in which the oriflamme was held, than the oath administered to its bearer:—

"You swear and promise, on the precious body of Christ Jesus, here present, and on the bodies of Monseigneur St. Denis and his companions, here also, that you will loyally, in your own person, guard and govern the oriflamme of our lord the king, also present, to the honour and profit of himself and his kingdom, and that you will not abandon it for the fear of death or any other cause, but that you will in all things do your duty, as becomes a good and loyal knight, towards your sovereign and liege lord."



and to choose their own magistrates. This example was imitated by several of the nobility, anxious to raise money to furnish themselves for the crusades; and thus a system of municipal government was gradually established in France, which greatly tended to promote commerce and civilization.

19. After the example of Charlemagne, Louis sent justices itinerant through the country, who formed a court of appeal against unjust sentences in the baronial courts. This institution was equally beneficial to the king and the people; it diminished the authority which the nobles derived from their territorial jurisdiction, and corrected many evils which had arisen from local oppression. These wise establishments were the work of four brothers named Garland, and of the abbé Segur, who were the principal ministers of Louis le Gros.

20. During this reign the monasteries were greatly multiplied; and the authority of the monks everywhere increased. The most conspicuous of the ecclesiastics who interfered in public affairs, was St. Bernard, abbé of Clairvaux, a man greatly celebrated for his piety and eloquence; by the force of his talents he acquired a great personal influence over the pontiffs, kings, and nations, but not possessing real political wisdom, he did not exercise his power to any beneficial purpose. 21. Arnold de Brescia, another monk, preached against the influence exercised by ecclesiastics in state affairs, and maintained that the clergy violated their duty by interfering in politics. These doctrines roused the indignation of the ambitious clergy, and the tenets of Arnold were everywhere proscribed; still the number of his followers increased, until the pope, dreading the progress of such opinions, had him condemned and burned as a heretic.

22. Louis VII., surnamed *the young*, had been associated in the kingdom with his father, some years before the death of that monarch. His ardent temper soon after his accession involved him in a quarrel with the church. The chapter of Bruges elected an arch-



Louis VII.

bishop displeasing to the king, Louis annulled the election and commanded them to proceed to a new one. Pope Innocent II., although he owed the tiara in a great measure to the influence of the French monarch, warmly espoused the cause of the chapter, consecrated the new archbishop himself, and when Louis refused to admit him, placed the kingdom under an interdict.



Thibaut, Count of Champagne.

23. Thibaut, count of Champagne, devoted to the cause of the monks more through ambition than zeal for religion, took up arms against his sovereign; while St. Bernard filled the country with faction, by incessantly declaiming against the king's impious interference with religion. 24. Louis A. D. 1143. assembled his forces, and invading Champagne, took the town of Vitri by storm: a merciless slaughter was made of the inhabitants; thirteen hundred had fled into a church, hoping that the sanctity of the place would prove their protection; but by command of the king, the edifice was set on fire, and they all perished miserably in the flames. 25. Remorse for this crime ever after preyed on the mind of Louis, and to make atonement, he resolved, at the instigation

of St. Bernard, to join in the second crusade. 26. On this occasion, all the enthusiasm of the former expedition was renewed. At an assembly held at Vezelai, the king and Bernard, mounted on a scaffold, addressed the multitude, and impressed on them the duty of waging war against the *idolaters*, as they ignorantly called the Mohammedans. So great was the enthusiasm produced in the assembly, that the crosses which had been prepared were not sufficient, and Bernard tore his robe in shreds to supply the crowd of volunteers. The command of the expedition was offered to the saint, but he had the good sense to refuse; he trusted to his talents as a preacher rather than as a warrior, and having succeeded in France, he proceeded to Germany, where he kindled a similar flame. 27. Two monarchs, Conrad III., emperor of Germany, and Louis of France, were the leaders of the <sup>A. D.</sup> second crusade. 1147. Few expeditions have been more calamitous. The treachery of the Greeks, who dreaded the crusaders even more than the Saracens, the ignorance of the leaders, the disunion of their followers, and the total absence of discipline, combined to ruin the two armies. After a series of calamitous defeats, the monarchs were obliged to visit Jerusalem as pilgrims instead of conquerors; and returned to Europe without honour, and almost without followers. 28. Eleonora, the queen of Louis, had accompanied him on this expedition; she was the heiress of Poitou and Aquitaine, and by her marriage these rich provinces had been united to France; but while Louis was advancing through Palestine, Eleonora remained at Antioch, indulging in the most criminal excesses, and Louis resolved at all hazards to obtain a divorce.

During the absence of the king the administration of affairs had been trusted to the abbé Segur, under whose judicious management the nation enjoyed peace and tranquillity. He had opposed the project of the crusade, but was borne down by the superior influence of Bernard, and he made an equally ineffectual resistance to the meditated divorce. 29. Louis repudiated Eleonora on the old pretext of consanguinity; six weeks after she married Henry II. of England, and thus united the provinces of Aquitaine and Poitou to the English crown. This created mutual jealousy between the rival monarchs, and produced a desultory warfare, which, with little interruption, lasted nearly twenty years. 30. During one of the brief intervals of peace, the two monarchs went to visit pope Alexander III., whom the disturbances of Italy had compelled to

take refuge in France, and showed their submission to the pontiff by taking each a rein of his horse's bridle, and conducting him in this state to the lodgings that had been prepared for his reception.

31. Through hatred of Henry, Louis strenuously supported the celebrated Thomas-à-Becket, in his resistance to his sovereign, and aided Henry's unnatural sons in their frequent rebellions against their indulgent father. Queen Eleanor was the principal cause of these troubles in the family of Henry; as she had brought him so rich a dowry, she expected that the monarch would have evinced his gratitude by devoted affection; and when she found herself neglected, she urged her sons to raise the flames of civil war in those provinces that had been committed to their government. Young Henry in Normandy, Geoffry in Brittany, and Richard in Aquitaine, threw off allegiance to their king and father nearly at the same time. The war was principally remarkable for the mutual treachery of the rebels and their adherents; the brothers seemed to hate each other as much as they did their father, and one of them, Geoffry, declared that "mutual hatred was the family inheritance of the Plantagenets." 32. Louis during the war exhibited several gross instances of vile treachery, especially at the siege of Rouen, where, having granted the inhabitants a truce, he attempted to storm the town while they were off their guard; but a priest on the walls having observed the bustle in the enemy's camp, rung the alarm-bell, the garrison at once hurried to the walls, and Louis was repulsed with disgrace.

33. After the conclusion of a truce with the English, Louis resolved to crown his eldest son Philip; but on the day appointed for the ceremony, the young prince lost his way while hunting in the forest; and when discovered, had suffered so much from cold and fatigue that he fell into a dangerous sickness that threatened his life. The fond father undertook a pilgrimage to the shrine of Thomas-à-Becket, on whose patronage he conceived that he had had a strong claim. The journey was fatal to the old king; the rapidity with which he travelled, and the anxiety of his mind, brought on an attack of the palsy, from which he never recovered. The coronation of Philip was celebrated with extraordinary splendour, but illness prevented his father from witnessing the ceremony; he lingered, however, some months longer, and when he felt

the near approach of death, he ordered all his private property to be distributed among the poor.

34. In this reign the poetry of the Troubadours had attained the summit of its popularity. These poets were for the most part natives of Provence, and their songs were written in the dialect of that country. Love and gallantry were the principal subjects of their poetic effusions; but though many of them display considerable refinement, a great number are sullied by grossness and indelicacy. 35. About this time also we find the first traces of the French drama, in the theatrical representations introduced by the monks. The subjects were principally some of the historic events recorded in Scripture, or the legend of some favourite saint. They were called *mysteries*, and long continued to form an important part of every religious festival.

36. Coats of arms and surnames became hereditary about the time of the second crusade; they were introduced to designate the rank and lineage of the several leaders engaged in the wars for the recovery of Palestine. Louis the Young was the first king who assumed the *fleur-de-lis*, as the royal cognizance; it is disputed by antiquarians whether this ensign be really the flower of the lily, or rather the head of the ancient French javelin. The majority of heraldic writers seem inclined to adopt the latter opinion.

---

### Questions.

1. By what pontiff were the crusades preached in France?
2. Did he succeed in persuading the French to join in the wars?
3. What else was done at the council of Clermont?
4. Who were the leaders of the crusaders?
5. By whom were they induced to undertake a second expedition?
6. What success had they?
7. How was the life of Philip spent?
8. What was the extent of the royal territories during the reign of Philip?
9. Why were the French delighted at the accession of Louis?
10. To what dangers had he been exposed in his youth?
11. How did he remedy the defects of his education?
12. In what domestic wars was he engaged?
13. What was the cause of war between Louis and Henry I. of England?
14. On what account did the emperor of Germany invade France?

15. What were the events of the war?
16. By what domestic calamity was Louis le Gros afflicted?
17. What advice did he give his son on his death-bed?
18. What useful institutions were made in this reign?
19. Was any beneficial institution revived?
20. For what is St. Bernard remarkable?
21. What was Arnold de Brescia?
22. What was the cause of quarrel between Louis VII. and the Pope?
23. Did any nobleman of importance join the monks?
24. What was the massacre of Vitri?
25. How did Louis strive to expiate his crime?
26. Where, and by whom, was this new crusade proposed?
27. What was the event of the expedition?
28. How did the queen Eleonora provoke the hostility of her husband?
29. To whom was she subsequently married?
30. What instance of submission to the pope is recorded of the rival monarchs, Louis and Henry?
31. By what domestic calamities was the family of Henry distracted?
32. What act of treachery did Louis attempt?
33. What was the cause of his death?
34. Who were the Troubadours?
35. What was the origin of the French drama?
36. When were coats of arms introduced?





Philip II., surnamed Augustus.

## CHAPTER X.

### THE REIGN OF PHILIP AUGUSTUS.

Still if you glory in the lion's force,  
Come, nobly emulate that lion's course!  
From guarded herds he vindicates his prey,  
Nor lurks in fraudulent thickets from the day.

LOVIBOND

1. THE reign of Philip Augustus forms an important era in the history of France; previous to his accession, the monarchs had only a nominal supremacy over a confederation of princes, who were in reality independent sovereigns; but in the course of this reign, the power of these vassals was broken, and the absolute authority of the king established. As he was only fifteen at the time of his father's death, the regency was entrusted to the count of Flanders, but Philip, impatient of control, soon took the reins of government into his own hands. 2. The first act of the new monarch was one of questionable policy and absolute injustice; he confiscated the property of all the Jews in France, and banished them from his dominions, under the

A. D.  
1180.

pretence that they had been guilty of usury and extortion : but subsequently finding the want of rich capitalists, he permitted them to return. 3. The vigour of the young monarch was soon experienced by the clergy and nobility. When the clergy at Rheims were asked for a subsidy, they requested the king to be contented with their supplications for his success ; soon after, they applied to Philip for protection against some nobles that ravaged their territories, and Philip replied that he would supplicate these nobles to abstain from injuring the church. The entreaties of Philip were encouragement to the assailants ; a fresh complaint was made by the clergy, and Philip, in reply, said, " Of what do you complain, my friends ? have not I protected you with my prayers, as you assisted me with yours ? " The clergy then promised that they would, for the future, exhibit more substantial proofs of loyalty, and Philip, in his turn, afforded them more efficient protection. The count of Flanders, who had usurped some of the royal domains, was forced by the vigorous measures of Philip to restore them ; and Henry II., who had often cajoled Louis VII., found the new sovereign a formidable rival in policy.

4. The causes of disunion between the French and English sovereigns were numerous and complicated ; the more so, because they were mixed up with the quarrels between Henry and his sons. The possessions of Aquitaine and Brittany, which Henry had obtained by his wife Eleonora, made his share of France nearly equal to the dominions of Philip, and the union of so many provinces under a single sovereign made him too formidable a vassal. The daughter of Louis had been betrothed to Richard, count of Poitiers, the son of Henry ; and the young princess was sent to the court of the British king until she attained a marriageable age. The marriage was delayed in consequence of the wars between Henry and his children ; but slander assigned other reasons, and it was asserted that a criminal intercourse had taken place between Henry and his intended daughter-in-law. Several conferences on these topics took place between Philip and Henry, under an elm near Gisors, which grew exactly at the confines of France and Normandy ; but the superior wisdom of Henry so frequently baffled the French monarch, that he ordered the elm to be cut down, declaring that no future conferences should be held under its shade.

5. At length the interference of the pope restored peace for a time : when the news of the capture of Jerusalem, by



Saladin, reached Europe, the Roman pontiff sent legates into every part of Christendom, entreating princes to lay aside their mutual jealousies, and unite for the recovery of the holy sepulchre. Amongst others, appeared William, archbishop of Tyre, driven from his see by the victories of the Saracens—one of the most celebrated men of the age for learning and eloquence. By his persuasion, the two kings agreed to adjourn their differences, and to unite in a new expedition against Palestine. 6. But this apparent reconciliation lasted only for a short time; count Richard engaged in war with the count of Toulouse; the French king, to avenge the cause of his vassals, attacked the English territories, and Henry, much against his will, found himself involved in a new war. Richard, who had been the original cause of the war, made a private offer to the king of France of doing him homage, and swearing fealty, provided that he were put in possession of all his father's continental dominions, and Philip readily agreed to the conditions. 7. Against such a coalition, Henry found himself unable to maintain a contest, and solicited the intervention of the pope. A legate was sent, who threatened to place the kingdom of France under an interdict, but Philip was not to be daunted by this threat. 8. He replied, "Sir legate, pass the sentence if it please thee, for I fear it not. The Roman church has no right to harm the kingdom of France, either by interdict or otherwise, when the king thinks proper to arm against his rebellious vassals, to revenge his own injuries and the honour of his crown. Besides, I see by thy discourse, that thou hast smelled the king of England's *esterlins*."

9. To annoy Henry the more, Philip and Richard made a great parade of their friendship; they lived in the same tent, ate at the same table, and slept in the same bed; and yet we shall see their friendship after a few years terminating in the most rancorous hatred. At length Henry, worn out by successive calamities, died at Chinon, having pronounced a malediction on his children, which he could never be prevailed on to retract. Richard visited his father on his death-bed, and afterwards returned to the French camp, where he jested about the impotent hostility the old king had shown during the interview. A. D.  
1189.

10. Richard, now become king of England, prepared to join with Philip in the third crusade; the two monarchs publicly renewed their former league of amity, and swore that

each should protect the dominions of the other as if they were his own. But this friendship was not of long duration; during their delay in the harbour of Messina, which was the rendezvous of their fleets, frequent subjects of dispute arose. Richard was haughty and tyrannical, both in manner and disposition; Philip was proud, jealous, and deceitful; violence on the one side was opposed by artifice on the other, and the other crusaders had reason to dread that the expedition would be frustrated by a war between the ambitious rivals. 11. These dissensions were with difficulty quelled in Messina, but they broke out with fresh violence in Palestine, until at length, Philip, unable to brook the pre-eminence that Richard had obtained by his superior valour, feigned indisposition, and returned to Europe. In his way back, he applied to the pope to be absolved from his oath of fidelity and friendship, but the pontiff rejected his request with becoming indignation. 12. Notwithstanding Philip stimulated John to rebel against his absent brother, and attempt to seize on his dominions, the labours of both were frustrated by the Norman nobles, who admired the valour of their sovereign, and felt a personal interest in the honour that the prowess of Richard, whom they surnamed the Lion-hearted, had added to the Norman name.

13. The news of these events recalled Richard from Palestine; but on his return, while passing through Germany, many in the disguise of a pilgrim, he was discovered and imprisoned by the duke of Austria, whom he had grievously insulted in the Holy Land. After a long and tedious captivity, the English monarch was liberated, and returned to England eager to avenge the wrongs inflicted on him by his rebellious brother and treacherous rival. When Philip heard of Richard's liberation, he sent John a billet announcing the news in these emphatic words, "Take care of yourself; the devil is unchained."

14. From Richard's return until his death, an almost incessant war was continued between him and Philip; but their hostility was confined to petty skirmishes on the borders, and to aiding rebellious vassals who took up arms against the rival sovereigns. The king of France, dreading the military skill of Richard, only once ventured to encounter him in the field, and was then defeated with the loss of his baggage among which were the archives of the kingdom.

15. The death of Richard liberated Philip from a powerful rival; and a conjuncture of favourable circumstances in the inglorious reign of his successor, <sup>A. D.</sup> 1199. enabled him to seize on the hereditary dominions which the English kings had for so many years possessed on the Continent. We have previously seen that the people of Brittany were strenuous assertors of their own independence, and very averse to foreign domination. In order to secure their affections, Henry II. having appointed his second son count of Brittany, united him in marriage with Constance, a descendant of the native princes of that country. As soon as Constance had borne a son, the Bretons insisted on his being baptized by the name of Arthur, because there had been for a long period, prophecies circulated among all the Celtic tribes, foretelling that a prince of that name should restore the ancient glories of the Breton race. 16. John was recognised as king, in England, Normandy, and Aquitaine; but the duchy of Brittany, the counties of Anjou, Maine, and Touraine, with several others, acknowledged Arthur as their sovereign, and claimed the protection of the king of France. Philip having thus obtained an entrance, dismantled the towns and razed the fortresses of his new vassals; but despairing of being able to retain these provinces against the will of the inhabitants, and in despite of the king of England, he made peace with John, and sacrificed to him Arthur and his followers. 17. But while Philip was thus despoiling young Arthur of his inheritance, he had him educated at court with his own sons, and kept him as an useful agent in the possible case of a new rupture with John. This rupture soon took place, in consequence of an insurrection of the Poitevins under the command of the count de la Marche, <sup>A. D.</sup> 1202. from whom the king of England had taken his betrothed wife. Philip on this broke the peace, proclaimed Arthur count of the Bretons, Anjouens, and Poitevins, married him to the princess Mary, then only five years old, and sent him at the head of an army to conquer those towns of Poitou, which still held out for the king of England.

18. The issue of the war was calamitous to Arthur, he laid siege to Mirebeau, a small town near Poitiers, in which the dowager queen of England then resided. The town was taken, but Eleanor retired into the citadel, and sent pressing messengers to John to advance to her relief. Eager to liberate his mother, the English king hurried across the country



Death of Prince Arthur.

by forced marches, attacked the besiegers, who were totally unprepared, and made Arthur, together with the principal leaders of the insurrection, prisoners. He carried them all into Normandy, where Arthur soon disappeared, murdered by his uncle, as the Bretons affirmed; or accidentally killed in attempting to make his escape, as the Normans relate the story.

19. The death of Arthur stung the Bretons to madness; in him they had placed the last hope of regaining their national independence, and the same ardent imagination which had led them to believe their future destiny connected with that of this child, inspired them with a sort of mad affection for Philip, because he was the enemy of young Arthur's murderer. They accused John before the French king, as his feudal *suzerain*, of young Arthur's murder; and he in consequence summoned John as his vassal for Normandy, to appear and defend himself before the twelve peers of France. As no notice was taken of this summons, the lands which John held under the French crown were declared forfeit, and an army was levied to put the sentence into execution.

20. The conquest of Normandy was effected almost without an effort on the part of Philip. The Bretons, forgetful that they were forging chains for themselves, and listening

only to the dictates of a blind revenge, poured their forces into the country, and committed such ravages that the other parts of the province gladly submitted to the king of France, from whom alone they could expect protection. The English monarch made no attempt to rescue his dominions, but passed his time in hunting and other diversions. 21. When the people of Rouen, after having made a fierce resistance, and endured every extremity, sent a deputation to inform him that they must surrender unless relieved, the envoys found their king playing at chess; he did not rise from the board, nor give them an answer, until the game was finished. He then said to them drily—"I have no means of succouring you within the time appointed, so do the best you can." The town of course surrendered; those which still held out followed its example; and the conquest of all the English dominions but Guienne was completed. 22. In less than a century after this conquest, the Normans had become so identified with the French, that in every war against England, their privateers did more injury to the British trade than any other portion of the French navy.

23. The reign of Philip Augustus is remarkable by being intimately connected with the pontificate of Innocent III. This pope, who seemed to have inherited the haughtiness and ambition of Gregory VII., treated crowned heads as if they were merely his vassals. He commenced by excommunicating Philip, and placing his kingdom under an interdict, on account of his having divorced his wife Ingeberge, and the king was forced to make a show of submission. 24. The vengeance of the pope was next directed against John, for refusing to allow Stephen Langton to take possession of the see of Canterbury; not content with placing the kingdom under an interdict, he declared the throne vacant, and offered to bestow it on Philip. The French monarch, listening only to the dictates of ambition, and forgetting that this precedent might hereafter be directed against himself, prepared a fleet and levied an army to go and take possession. John was too great a coward to encounter the storm; he surrendered his crown to Pandolf, the papal legate, and consented to hold England for the future as a vassal of the holy see. In consequence he was formally reconciled to the church, and the French were forbidden to attempt any thing against one who was under the peculiar protection of the holy see.



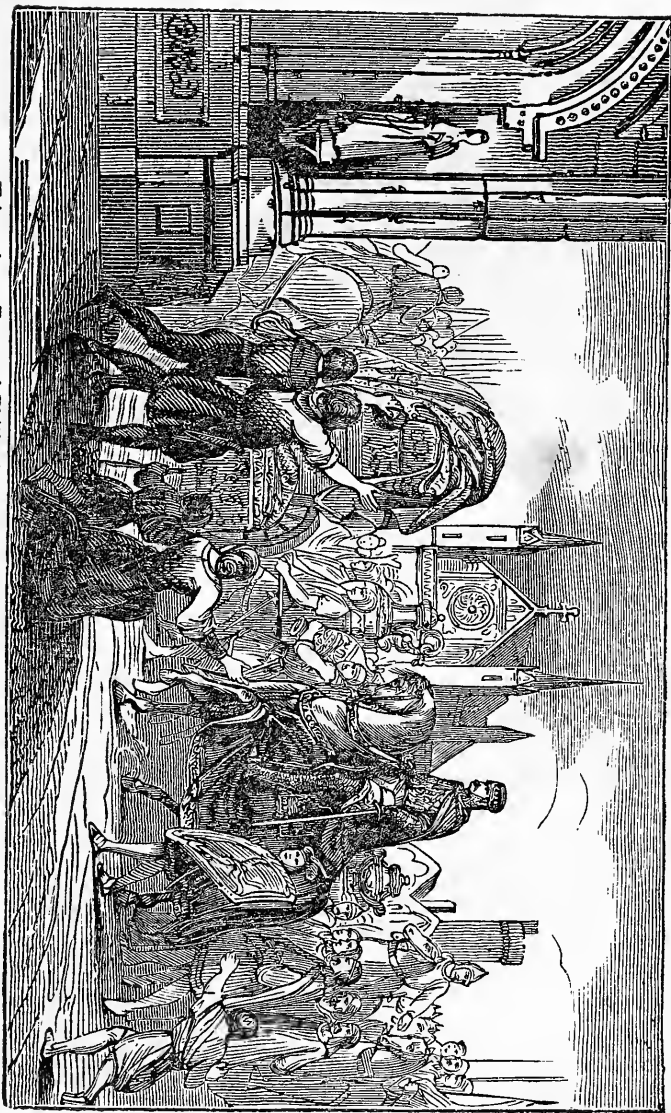
King John of England.

25. Indignant at being thus deceived, Philip continued his preparations: and though attacked by a crowd of enemies, extricated himself by his valour and prudence. The emperor Otho and the count of Flanders, united with the English, invaded France, and Philip, with far inferior forces, met them on the plains of Bouvines, near Tournay. The French obtained a complete victory; Otho having encountered a French knight, was dismounted and rescued with difficulty; alarmed at the danger, he seized another horse and fled; while Philip with an exulting smile said to his nobles, "My friends, we shall see nothing to-day

but his back." The flight of the emperor was the signal for the ruin of his army; the Imperialists no longer resisted, and a terrible slaughter ensued. After having obtained so glorious a victory, Philip returned to Paris, and entered his capital in triumph. His two most bitter enemies, the count of Flanders and the count of Boulogne, were led in triumph and confined in the Louvre, then a castle in the vicinity of Paris, which served both for a palace and a prison.

26. John, after this defeat of his allies, was on the brink of ruin; he had been compelled by his barons to sign *Magna Charta*, and swear to its observance, but the oath was violated almost as soon as it had been taken. On this the barons declared him deposed, and elected as their sovereign Louis, the eldest son of Philip, whose wife, A. D.  
1216. Blanche of Castile, was the grand-daughter of Henry II.; and this prince was actually proclaimed in London. When Innocent heard of these transactions, he redoubled his excommunications, but they were disregarded; indignation threw him into a fever, and he died while meditating new

Triumphant Entry of Philip Augustus into Paris after the Battle of Bouvines.







acts of violence. 27. The greater part of England had already submitted to Louis, when the death of John saved that country from a foreign yoke; the English everywhere submitted to Henry III., the son of John, and Louis had the good sense to resign a crown which he could scarcely have retained.

28. We have already seen how the death of prince Arthur enabled Philip to establish the royal authority in the northern provinces of France; circumstances, equally extraordinary, destroyed all the national power of the inhabitants of the country between the Mediterranean, the Rhone, and the Garonne. These men, for the most part vassals of the count of Toulouse, were, in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, far superior to the rest of Gaul in wealth and civilization. They carried on an extensive and lucrative commerce with the East, where the signature of their count had then greater weight than the king of France's great seal. Their towns had a municipal constitution like the Italian republics, their merchants enjoyed many of the privileges of nobility, their literature was the most refined in Europe, and their literary dialect, the Provençal, was classical in Italy and Spain. But with all these advantages, they had one greater source of pre-eminence, which yet was the cause of their ruin. They had anticipated, and in some degree exceeded, the religious reforms of the sixteenth century; they had virtually renounced the authority of the Romish see, which vainly exhausted the resources of its immense diplomatic organization to bring them into obedience. The emissaries of the pontiff brought to Alby, Narbonne, and Toulouse, bulls of excommunication against the enemies of the Romish faith; but the clergy, and even the bishops, had shared in the alleged heresy, and the weapons of the church were disregarded. To stop this spreading contagion, it was necessary to destroy the freedom and social order from which it arose, and Innocent III. <sup>A. D.</sup> 1208. undertook the task. He preached a crusade against the inhabitants of the county of Toulouse and diocese of Alby, as his predecessors had done against the Saracens; and published throughout Europe, that whoever would take up arms and war against them to the uttermost, should obtain remission of all his sins, and a part of the property of the heretics.

29. Unfortunately the period was favourable for this crusade of Christians against Christians. The conquest of Nor

mandy had dispossessed many of its gallant knights, and made them soldiers of fortune ; companies of warlike adventurers roamed through Europe, offering their services to any sovereign that would take them into pay, and there were few kings who dared to refuse sending soldiers to the aid of a pontiff, who was so ready to fulminate interdicts and excommunications. Besides, the pilgrimage against the Albigenses (for so was this war called) promised greater profit, with less risk, than the crusade against the Saracens. A numerous army was levied, entitled *l'ost de notre Seigneur*, (the host of our Lord,) and its general, Simon, count de Montford, did homage to the king of France for territories over which his sovereignty was not as yet extended.

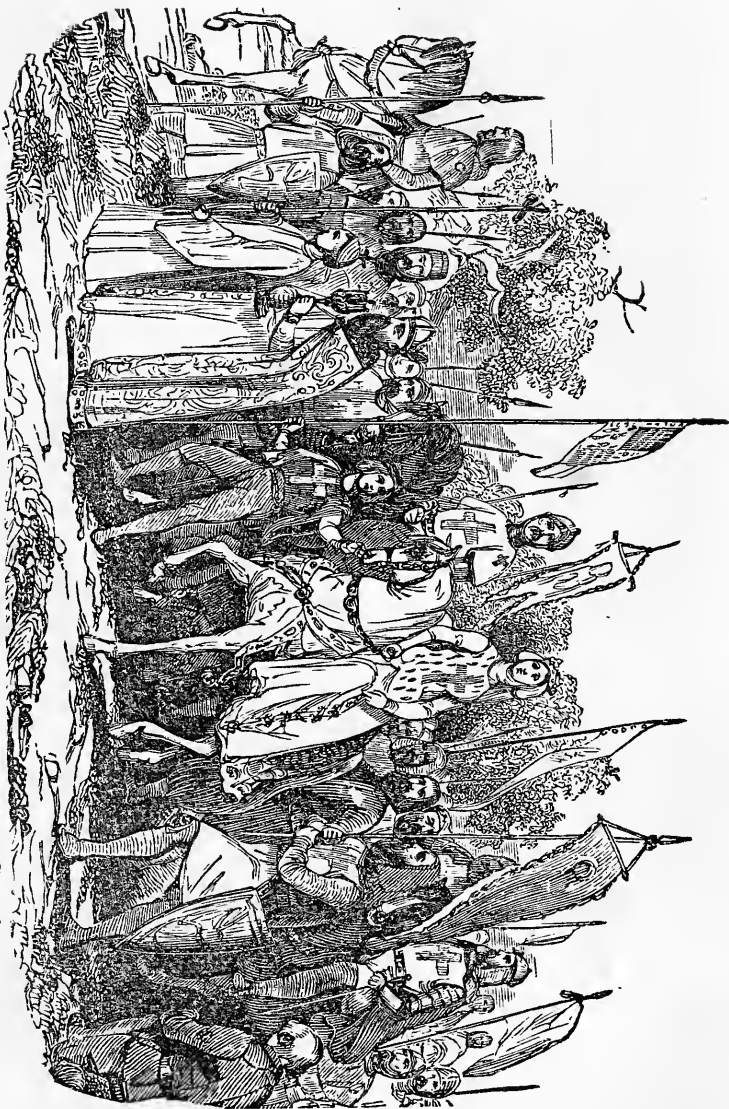
30. Raymond VI., count of Toulouse, interested himself in favour of his unhappy subjects, the Albigenses, whom the pope wished to exterminate ; for this he was excommunicated as a favourer of heresy, and all his dominions confiscated. No submission, no degradation, not even submitting to be beaten with rods as a public penance, and taking up arms against his faithful subjects, could procure Raymond's pardon. He was obliged to seek refuge in the court of his brother-in-law, the king of Arragon, and leave his unfortunate subjects to their fate. 31. The war was carried on with more ferocious cruelty than any ever recorded in history ; the fanatical fury of the soldiers was stimulated by the exhortations of the

clergy ; at the storming of Beziers, when it was proposed to spare the Catholics, a monk exclaimed, " Kill all, God will recognize his own ;" and the atrocious precept was but too well obeyed. The war terminated by the complete devastation of the country, and the almost complete extermination of its inhabitants. Philip obtained the sovereignty over these valuable provinces, and the inquisition was established at Toulouse, to prevent the profession of any doctrines condemned by the pope.

A singular crusade took place during the reign of Philip Augustus. His sister, Margaret of France, was married to Bela, king of Hungary. At his decease she took an oath to live only for Christ, and to close her life in the Holy Land. Accordingly she herself headed a crusade of her subjects, and led them to the holy war.

32. In the close of Philip's reign, the fifth crusade took place. This expedition sailed against Egypt. At first they were successful, and captured Damietta, but fortune soon

Margaret of France, Queen of Hungary, leading the Hungarians on a Crusade.





changed; when they advanced into the country, the adventurers were suddenly hemmed in by an inundation of the Nile, and were glad to purchase a safe retreat by the surrender of all their conquests.

33. Philip died in the 44th year of his reign, after having laid the permanent foundation of the royal authority in France. His claim to the title of Augustus, uniformly given to him by the French historians, appears very questionable; his treachery to king Richard and prince Arthur, his persecution of the Jews, and his crusade against the Albigenses, are foul blots on his character, not to be compensated by his having paved the streets of Paris, erected an aqueduct, or having reduced all the provinces of Gaul into the kingdom of France. He was the first European sovereign who maintained a standing army; under pretence that he was in danger of being assassinated by his rival Richard, he instituted a corps of body-guards, whom he called *ribauds*, and on whom he conferred many privileges. During his reign, the university of Paris acquired great eminence, but no useful branches of learning were cultivated; science still was confined to the Arabians, and religion was disgraced by a number of offensive ceremonies, all of them absurd, and many indecent. New orders of preaching friars were instituted during this period, of whom the most remarkable were the followers of St. Dominic, to whom the care of the inquisition was confided. Yet, with all their efforts, what they called heresy was not extirpated in France. The Protestants, who at this day remain in the southern provinces of that country, are descended from the Albigenses, whose piety and constancy they still deservedly venerate.

A. D.  
1223.

---

*Questions.*

1. Who was regent during Philip's minority?
2. With what unjust act did he begin his reign?
3. How did he act to the clergy and nobles?
4. What was the principal cause of disunion between the French and English monarchs?
5. By whose interference was peace restored for a time?
6. Who caused a new war?
7. To whose mediation did Henry appeal?
8. How did Philip treat the papal legate?
9. In what manner did Richard treat his father and king?
10. Whence arose the hostility between Philip and Richard?

11. How was it injurious to the cause of the crusaders?
12. Of what treachery was Philip guilty?
13. How did Philip communicate to John the news of Richard's liberation?
14. In what manner was the war between Richard and Philip carried on?
15. Why were the people of Brittany attached to prince Arthur?
16. Did the Bretons find Philip a faithful ally?
17. What caused a new war?
18. What became of prince Arthur?
19. How were the Bretons affected by the news of his death?
20. By whose assistance did Philip subdue Normandy?
21. How did John behave when his territories were invaded?
22. Did the Normans retain any affection for the English?
23. How did Innocent II. treat Philip?
24. By what means was John rescued from the dangers by which he was threatened?
25. What were the events of the battle of Bouvines?
26. To what dangers was John exposed?
27. How was England saved from becoming a French province?
28. Why were the Albigenses persecuted?
29. How does it appear that the time chosen for this iniquitous war was well selected?
30. What became of Raymond?
31. How were the Albigenses treated?
32. What was the fortune of the fifth crusade?
33. What was the general character of Philip's reign?



Figures taken from Monuments of the Twelfth Century.



Louis VIII.

## CHAPTER XI.

## LOUIS VIII. LOUIS IX.

On their broad shields they bore him from the plain,  
 To sense a corpse, and number'd with the slain.  
 His fixed eyes in hovering shades were drown'd,  
 His gallant limbs in death-like fetters bound.  
 The shouts tumultuous, and the din of war,  
 His ear received like murmurs heard afar;  
 Or as some peasant hears, securely laid  
 Beneath a vaulted cliff or woodland shade,  
 When o'er his head unnumber'd insects sing  
 In airy rounds; the children of the spring.

EPIGONIAD.

1. LOUIS VIII., descended from Charlemagne by the mother's side, was the first of the Capetian line who had not been crowned during the lifetime of his father. Previous to his accession, he had been engaged in endeavouring to drive the English from Guienne, and had so far suc-

A. D.  
1223.

ceeded, that only a few towns on the sea-coast remained in their possession. These must soon have yielded, had not Louis been summoned away by the pope to complete the subjugation of the Albigenes. He captured Avignon, situated in the independent territory of Provence, and even penetrated as far as Toulouse. On his return he died, poisoned, it is

said, by Thibaut, count of Champagne, who was in love with the queen. 2. Louis IX., afterwards called St. Louis, was but twelve years old at the time of his father's death, but the regency was ably managed by his mother, Blanche of Castile. Th



Blanche of Castile.

proud nobles were averse to the government of a foreigner, and a woman;\* but the queen, by a mixture of prudence and firmness, disconcerted all their efforts, and retained the reins of government until the young king had reached his twenty-first year. The persecution of the Albigenes still continued; this unfortunate people having made some resistance to the crusaders, were assailed by fresh armies, and forced into submission.

3. When the young king came of age he showed his gratitude to his mother by continuing to her a share in the ad-

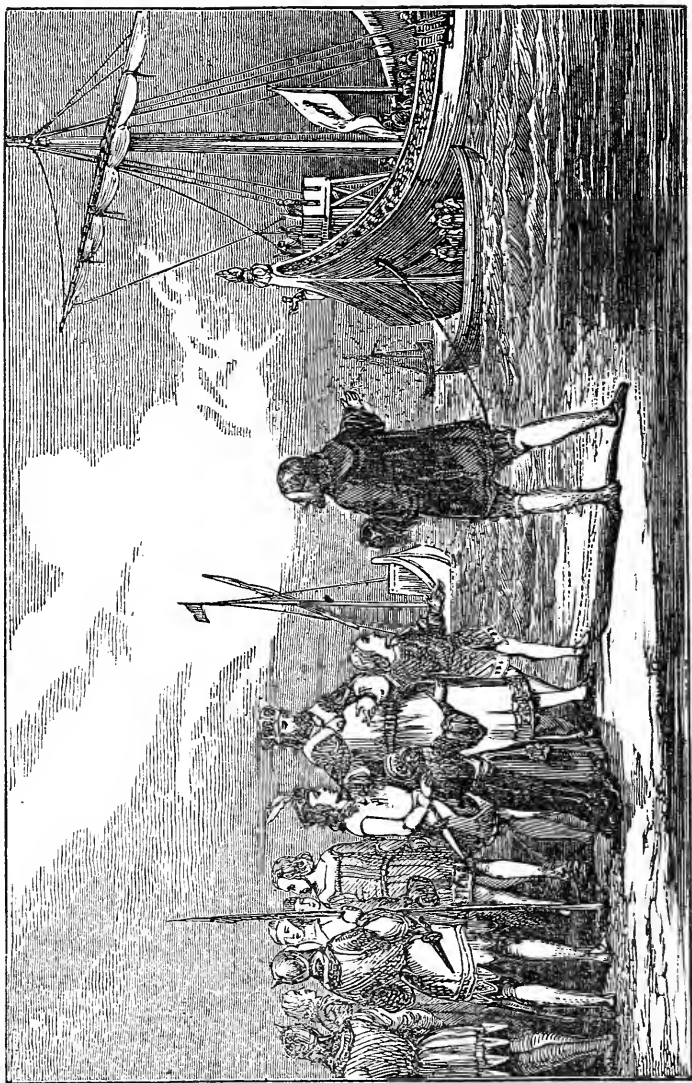
ministration; he then applied himself diligently to the refor-

---

\* A strange anecdote is recorded of the oppression of the clergy, and bold spirit of the queen regent. In the year 1223, the chapter of Notre Dame levied a heavy tax on the villages over which they had jurisdiction. The inhabitants of Châtenay were either unable or unwilling to pay the required sum; they were all arrested and crowded into a small prison by their reverend taskmasters. Queen Blanche having learned that these unfortunate beings were deprived of air and food, solicited the chapter to set them at liberty. But the canons, so far from complying, were so enraged at the queen's interference, that they apprehended the wives and children of the prisoners, and thrust them into the same wretched place of confinement. Exhausted by hunger, thirst, and want of air, many of these unfortunate beings died miserably; when the queen, exasperated at the conduct of the canons, went to the prison, accompanied by







St. Louis Embarking for the Crusade.

mation of the state, and especially the abuses introduced by the licentiousness of the clergy, and he so far succeeded as to correct some of the most glaring evils. 4. His tranquillity was first disturbed by the revolt of the count of Marche, who, being aided by Henry III., took up arms against Louis. The revolters and their allies were twice defeated, and the war terminated by the annexation of a considerable portion of the count's territory to the crown of France. 5. Soon after this Louis fell sick, and while his recovery was doubtful, made a vow that he would, on his restoration to health, attempt the liberation of Palestine. His mother and his wisest counsellors in vain endeavoured to change his resolution; as soon as he became well, he assumed the cross, and the nobility, who were ardently attached to him, followed his example.

6. Three years were spent in preparations for this expedition; and the precautions taken by the king showed, that though seduced by the prejudices of the time to adopt this absurd scheme, yet he could display such prudence and wisdom in the execution, as almost to atone for its defects. The Sieur de Joinville, who accompanied the king, has left us an interesting record of this calamitous expedition, from which the following sketch is extracted.

7. After a long delay at Cyprus, Louis directed his course to Egypt, where he found an army of Saracens prepared to oppose his landing. No sooner had his vessel touched the ground, than Louis leaped into the water, followed by his bravest troops, waded to the shore under a heavy fire of arrows, and attacked the enemy with so much impetuosity, that they were instantly broken, and forced to fly in disorder. So great was the panic produced by this defeat, that Damietta, which was well prepared to make a long resistance, was surrendered almost without a blow. 8. Louis, compelled to remain at Damietta during the inundation of the Nile, had the



Louis IX.

some servants whom she commanded to break the door. The servants refused, dreading the consequences of a quarrel with the

grief to see his soldiers give themselves up to every species of licentiousness. At length the falling of the waters permitted the advance of the crusaders, and Louis prepared to lay siege to Cairo. During the march, the army were exposed to incessant attacks from the Saracens, which, though they were always repulsed, greatly harassed the invaders. A more serious impediment soon appeared; they reached the banks of the Astmoun canal, and were utterly at a loss how to proceed. 9. After some delay, an Arab, induced by a large bribe, pointed out a ford, and the count of Artois, brother to the king, passing over, defeated a body of Mamelukes who had been posted there to defend the passage. Contrary to the advice of the Templars, and those who were acquainted with the Saracenic mode of warfare, the count pursued the fugitives into the town of Massoura, where his cavalry were soon entangled in the streets. Assailed by stones from the roofs of the houses, and attacked by the troops, who had rallied afresh, the whole detachment would have perished had not Louis come to their assistance. The Saracens were finally defeated, but the victors had suffered more loss from the battle than the vanquished. 10. New combats increased the glory, but weakened the strength of the crusaders; while the Saracens, constantly on the watch, cut off all their supplies; famine and disease attacked the camp at the same time, while their enemies were every day strengthened by the arrival of fresh troops. While preparing to retreat to Damietta, the camp of the crusaders was suddenly attacked, when the king lay exhausted in his tent by disease and disappointment; even in this bitter moment he displayed all the valour and energy of his character; he mounted his steed, and endeavoured to marshal his line, but fell exhausted by weariness. 11. One of his knights dragged him with difficulty out of the *melée*, and gave him in charge to a woman that followed the camp; the victory of the Saracens was complete, and Louis remained a prisoner. 12. His queen, who had accompanied him in the

---

church. The queen determined to accomplish her design, commenced breaking the door herself; when the first blow was struck, the charm was dissolved, and an entrance was soon forced by the attendants. A multitude of men, women, and children, pallid and tottering through weakness, immediately came forth, and dreading to be subjected to fresh punishment, implored protection of the queen, who succeeded in delivering them from their state of bondage to the chapter.

expedition, was at Damietta when this unfortunate event occurred, unable to move, as she was near the time of her confinement. An old knight was her only attendant, and from him she obtained a promise that he would put her to death sooner than see her fall into the hands of the Saracens. In the midst of this distress she was delivered of a son, whom, in allusion to her calamity, she named Tristan. 13. Louis entered into a treaty with the Sultan of Egypt, by which he agreed to restore Damietta for his own ransom, to pay one hundred thousand marks of silver for the redemption of the other captives, and to keep peace with the Saracens for ten years. From Egypt he proceeded to Palestine, where he collected the money that he had promised the sultan, and honourably fulfilled all the conditions of the treaty. At length the news of his mother's death showed him the necessity of returning to his own dominions. Grief for the misfortunes of her son, and remorse for the unjust execution of two men whom she had deemed guilty of spreading a false account of the great calamity that had overwhelmed the French army, brought down the queen regent's gray hairs with sorrow to the grave. Louis, at his landing, was received <sup>A. D.</sup> 1254 with the greatest joy by the people, but, at the same time, they remarked with sorrow, that he still continued to wear the cross, a sign that his crusading spirit was not yet extinct, and that he still meditated a new expedition.

14. The affairs of the government at home engaged all the king's attention after his return; the tyranny and oppression of the nobles had risen to an extravagant height, and the courts of justice were notoriously influenced by the most corrupt motives. In his own conduct, Louis exhibited the most difficult part of justice to put in practice, the virtue of restitution; he ordered that all the fiefs which had been unjustly annexed to the royal domains, should be restored to their legitimate owners. He gave up to the king of England several of the towns which his father had conquered in Guienne, receiving in return a renunciation of that monarch's claims over Normandy and Touraine. 15. Such was the impression produced by this generous conduct, that Louis was chosen arbitrator of the disputes between <sup>A. D.</sup> 1264. Henry III. and his turbulent barons, headed by the earl of Leicester. An assembly of the states of France was summoned at Amiens, and there, in the presence of that assembly, as well as in that of the king of England, and Peter

de Montfort, Leicester's son, he brought this great cause to a trial and examination. The decision of Louis was, that the royal authority should be restored, and the provisions of Magna-Charta observed; but this equitable sentence displeased both parties, and it became manifest that the dispute could only be settled by a civil war.



Charles of Anjou, King of Sicily.

16. During this reign the authority of the kings of France was extended over new portions of the southern provinces; Charles of Anjou, brother to the king, before the crusade had been married to Beatrice, the heiress of Provence; and thus the national independence of that interesting little country was annihilated. The Provençals made several ineffectual efforts to shake off the yoke, but these being defeated, served only to rivet their fetters the tighter. Louis exchanged with the king of Arragon his right to Catalonia, for that monarch's claim to several towns in the south of France; and acquired by purchase a great portion of the territories of the count of

Champagne. 17. The prudence that dictated these measures seems to have forsaken the king on another occasion, where it is difficult to reconcile his conduct either with wisdom or justice.—The hatred which the popes had shown to Frederick II. extended to his posterity. On his death, Innocent III. offered the crown of Naples to the king of England, for his second son prince Edmund; but this invasion was defeated by the emperor Conrad, who appears to have inherited the abilities of his father. Soon after, the victor was poisoned by his natural brother Manfredi, who assumed the reins of go-

vernment nominally as guardian to the young prince  
 A. D. 1266. Conradin. The pope however claimed the kingdom of Naples as a fief of the holy see, and offered it to Charles of Anjou. Louis was weak enough to permit his brother to accept the offer, and allowed a crusade to be preached throughout his dominions against Manfredi and Conradin. By this means Charles soon found himself at the

head of a powerful army, and passing into Italy, defeated and slew Manfredi, at the battle of Benevento. Conradin, who was only sixteen years old at the time, still continued the war, but at length the superior skill of Charles prevailed, the young prince was defeated and made a prisoner.

18. As Conradin had been excommunicated, his cruel captor refused him the rights of a prisoner of war, and ordered him to be publicly executed. In this trying moment Conradin exhibited a courage and spirit worthy of his illustrious race. When brought to the scaffold, he drew off his glove, and flinging it into the midst of the assembled multitude, entreated the person into whose hands it might fall, to bear it to some of his relations as a symbol of inheriting his rights and an obligation to avenge his judicial murder. The glove was picked up by a knight, and carried to Peter, king of Arragon, who subsequently exacted terrible vengeance for Conradin's death.

19. Although the former crusade had been attended with such calamitous consequences, Louis was eager to engage in another; and the English king, relieved from his difficulties by the defeat and death of the earl of Leicester, promised to send him a body of auxiliaries under the command of his gallant son Edward. 20. Louis did not wait for <sup>A. D.</sup> the arrival of his allies; he embarked on board some <sup>1270.</sup> Genoese vessels, but instead of proceeding to Egypt or Palestine, he directed his armament against Tunis. The siege had not lasted more than a few weeks when a pestilence broke out in the camp, and destroyed great numbers of the troops. At length the king himself fell sick, and finding his end approaching, sent for his eldest son Philip, and put into his hands a manuscript containing directions for his future conduct. He then received the comforts of religion prescribed by the Romish church, and piously resigned his soul into the hands of his Creator. 21. Charles, of Anjou, about the same time landed to join his brother, but he found Louis and his son Tristan dead, Philip sinking under disease, and the army on the brink of ruin. In these calamitous circumstances, Charles took upon himself the management of affairs, and adopted such measures as the emergency rendered necessary.

22. Louis IX. was a good, rather than a great king; his piety was sincere and unaffected, but greatly sullied by the prejudices of the age. His crusading expeditions were not the only instances of his intolerance, for he continued the in-



Funeral of St. Louis.

quisition at Toulouse, and joined in the persecution of the unhappy Albigenses. He was so much attached to monastic institutions that he intended at one time to become a monk, and was with difficulty dissuaded by his son and brother. To the lower ranks of his subjects he was deservedly dear; he afforded them protection against the nobles, and appointed a day in every week for receiving and examining their petitions. He also increased the municipal privileges of cities and towns, established a judicious system of police, and encouraged commercial enterprise. His most valuable bequest to his subjects was a code of laws containing many judicious regulations.\*

\* The reign of Saint Louis may be considered the golden age of religious communities in France. He founded several new monasteries, and enlarged the revenues of others. He was constantly surrounded by monks, who inspired him with a blind confidence in all they did. The king was even anxious to enter the cloister, but being prevented by the remonstrances of his family, he contented himself with practising the austerities of a monastic life. He kept all the fasts of the church in their utmost rigour, frequently performed severe penance, and even suffered himself to be whipped by his confessor.

The following is the extraordinary list of relics which he purchased from the emperor Baldwin:—1. Our Lord's crown of thorns. 2. Part of the true cross. 3. A cross called the Cross of Triumph,



Finally, though he does not appear to have quite deserved the title of *saint*, it is certain that the name has been given to many of inferior merit.

---

*Questions.*

1. Were there any remarkable events in the reign of Louis VIII.?
2. Who became regent after his death?
3. How did Louis IX. behave after his accession?
4. Did he meet with any enemies?
5. On what expedition did he resolve?
6. Was there much time consumed in preparing for the crusade?
7. Where did the French land?
8. Into what errors did they fall?
9. Why were they defeated at Massoura?
10. Did they meet with any additional losses?
11. How was the king made prisoner?
12. Where was his queen at this time?
13. What circumstances induced him to return to France?
14. How did he exert himself to remedy the evils under which that country was suffering?
15. Between what parties was he chosen as mediator?
16. Did he enlarge his hereditary dominions?
17. What events led to the invasion of Naples, by Charles of Anjou?
18. Did any thing remarkable occur at the execution of Conradin?
19. Was Louis discouraged by his ill-success in his first crusade?
20. What calamities destroyed the second expedition against the infidels?
21. Who took the command of the remnant of the French army?
22. What was the character of Louis IX.?

---

because it was carried before the Christian emperors in battle. 4. Some blood of Jesus Christ. 5. The clothes in which he was wrapped in his infancy. 6. Some blood that flowed from a miraculous image when struck by an infidel. 7. The chain with which Christ was bound. 8. The holy tablecloth. 9. A piece of the holy sepulchre. 10. Some of the virgin's milk. 11. Part of the head, of the lance by which Christ was pierced. 12. Part of the purple robe. 13. The reed given to Christ as a sceptre. 14. Part of the sponge dipped in vinegar. 15. His grave-clothes. 16. The towel with which he wiped the feet of the apostles. 17. The rod of Moses. 18. The top of the head of St. John the Baptist. 19. The skulls of St. Blaise, St. Clement, and St. Simon.



Philip the Bold.

## CHAPTER XII.

## PHILIP THE HARDY AND PHILIP THE FAIR.

Cruelties you've practised,  
 Practised on us with rigour, this hath forced us  
 To shake our heavy yokes off; and if redress  
 Of these just grievances be not granted us,  
 We'll right ourselves, and by strong hand defend  
 What we are now possessed of.

MASSINGER.

1. PHILIP III. was twenty-five years old at the time  
 A. D. of his father's death, but as he was sick of the disease  
 1270. which caused the death of Louis, Charles of Anjou  
 took the command of the French army, and defeated every  
 attack of the Moors. When Philip was recovered, he wisely  
 resolved on withdrawing his forces from Africa. Peace was  
 concluded with the king of Tunis, on condition that he  
 should defray the expenses of the war, permit the public ex-  
 ercise of Christianity in his dominions, liberate all his captives

and pay an annual tribute to Charles of Anjou. This was the last crusade; these wars, which had cost the blood of two millions, and incalculable sums of money, terminated by leaving Palestine in the possession of the Mahommedans. 2. After Philip had honoured his father's remains with a magnificent funeral, he applied himself to the affairs of state, but evinced in their management little of that spirit which in his earlier years had procured him the epithet Hardy or Bold. Warm, if not rash, in the formation of projects, the vigour with which he commenced his undertakings was lamentably contrasted with the weakness displayed in their execution. This instability of character exposed him to the artifices of favourites, and one La Brosse, who had been his father's barber, having insinuated himself into the king's confidence, instigated him to the commission of several crimes. 3. On the death of his first wife, Philip was united in marriage to Maria of Brabant, a princess whose talents and accomplishments gave her considerable influence over the mind of her husband. Jealous of this, La Brosse resolved to effect her destruction, and on the death of Philip's eldest son, spread a report that he had been poisoned by his step-mother. According to the custom of the age, the queen offered to prove her innocence by a judicial combat.\* Her champion triumphed in the lists, and this was deemed a sufficient proof of her innocence.

4. Alphonso, king of Castile, was a monarch so devoted to literary pursuits, that he totally neglected the affairs of his kingdom; his eldest son had married Philip's sister, but on his death the widow and children were seized on, and imprisoned by Sancho, Alphonso's second son, who wished to secure the crown for himself. Philip undertook the liberation of his nephews, but, by the treachery of his favourite, all his counsels were betrayed to Sancho, and he was obliged to retreat without having performed any service. Soon after Philip learned the treason that had been practised by La Brosse, and he immediately ordered him to be executed.

5. The tyrannical conduct of Charles of Anjou, in Sicily, had alienated the affections of his subjects; <sup>A. D.</sup> 1282. Peter III. of Arragon had received the glove of the

---

\* A nun, who pretended to the gift of prophecy, was also consulted by the king respecting the queen's guilt; and the testimony of this impostor, in favour of the accused, is said to have produced a very powerful effect on the mind of the king.

murdered Conradin, and was married to the daughter of Manfredi; Pope Nicholas III. was indignant with Charles for having refused to give him his daughter for one of his nephews; and from these circumstances originated one of the most atrocious conspiracies recorded in history. It was determined to massacre all the French in Sicily at the same moment. John de Procida, whom Charles had illegally deprived of his property, was the principal agent in preparing this horrible tragedy: during two years the measures for its execution were carried on with so much secrecy, that not a single circumstance appeared which might warn the victims of their impending fate. 6. In this interval Nicholas died; his successor was not made acquainted with the conspiracy, for, being a Frenchman by birth, it was feared that he would have prevented such an attack on the family of his native sovereign. The signal for arms was the ringing of the vesper bell on Easter eve, whence this massacre is commonly called the *Sicilian Vespers*; as soon as its fatal knell sounded, the unsuspecting Frenchmen were everywhere attacked, and in two hours one of that nation alone survived in the island,\* whose superior probity made him respected even by the assassins. Peter of Arragon had waited the event with a considerable fleet on the coast of Africa, and as soon as he had learned the complete success of the conspiracy, hastened over to Sicily, where he was received as its legitimate sovereign.

7. Peter dreaded the power of the king of France, who was greatly attached to his uncle, and in order to gain time, sent Charles a challenge to meet him, and decide their pretensions to Sicily by single combat. Charles, more chivalrous than wise, accepted the challenge; and, on the morning of the appointed day, appeared on the ground that had been specified, but waited in vain for his antagonist; at length the count of Anjou, wearied out, departed. Late in the evening of the same day Peter came, and satisfied with having made this mock appearance, returned from the field of battle with the utmost speed, pretending that he was afraid of being arrested and detained by the king of France. But during the absence of Charles, the Neapolitans had revolted, and his son had been taken prisoner by De Lauria, the Arragonese admiral, the most celebrated commander of the time. Charles of Anjou in vain endeavoured to retrieve his losses, and died of sheer vexation and disappointment.

---

\* His name was William des Pourcelets, a native of Provence.

8. The pope had in the meantime excommunicated the king of Arragon, and given his dominions to Charles, the second son of Philip. The French king advanced with a powerful army to place his son on the throne, but his success did not answer his expectations; his fleet was captured by De Lauria, and disheartened by the misfortune, he resolved to return home. On his way back he died at Perpignan in the forty-first year of his age. 9. The reign of Philip is not remarkable for any improvement in the territories or government of France: he is said to have been the first monarch that granted patents of nobility, a prerogative which he exercised in favour of his goldsmith, who was also his banker.

10. Philip IV., surnamed the Fair, obtained the crown in his seventeenth year: the war with the king of Arragon still continued; but, after much bloodshed, the son of Peter retained possession of Sicily and Arragon, while the son of Charles of Anjou was permitted to keep the crown of Naples. 11. This war had scarcely terminated, when another more furious arose out of a trivial circumstance. A quarrel having arisen between an English and a Norman sailor, the latter was slain. The Normans cruized



Philip the Fair.

against the English to revenge the death of their countryman; but they were defeated, and an English fleet appearing on their coast, plundered several of their towns. Philip summoned Edward I. as duke of Guienne, to appear before the court of peers, and answer for having borne arms against his suzerain; Edward sent his brother, the earl of Cornwall, to plead his cause, but he being overmatched by the policy of Philip, surrendered some towns in Guienne as pledges for his brother's appearance, which, when Philip once got into his possession, he refused to restore. The English engaged the count of Flanders on their side, while Philip persuaded the king of Scotland to espouse his cause. 12. This

A. D.  
1285.

A. D.  
1293.

war was fatal to the allies on both sides; the principals entered into a treaty of peace which was cemented by a double marriage, Edward espousing Margaret, sister to the king of France; and his son, afterwards the unfortunate Edward II., was married to Philip's daughter Isabella. Edward then directed his whole strength against Scotland, which he easily subdued; and Philip sent his uncle, Charles of Valois, to attack Flanders, which was unable to make any effective resistance. The count of Flanders was in the decline of life; he had served in the crusades under Saint Louis, and believing that he had therefore some claim on the moderation of France, he obtained a safe conduct from Charles of Valois, and proceeded to Paris. Philip, contrary to the law of nations, threw him into prison, and the Flemings, partly by bribes, and partly by force, were completely subjected to the French crown.

13. But Philip the Fair had soon to engage with a more formidable enemy, pope Boniface VIII., whose manner of obtaining the papal crown is the best description of his character. He persuaded Celestine V., who, with all the sanctity of an anchorite, was the most simple of the human race, to abdicate an employment for which he was totally unfitted, and then got himself elected in his room. He afterwards confined the virtuous Celestine in a vile prison, and had him put to death. No one was ever more intoxicated with the chimerical pretensions of the Church of Rome to universal empire than Boniface; he sent his orders to all crowned heads as if he had been their legitimate sovereign. 14. But the obstinacy of Philip was fully a match for the violence of Boniface; when summoned by the pope to appear at Rome and answer for his invasion of Flanders, Philip treated the insolent message with merited contempt, and thus provoked the anger of the pontiff, who wanted only an opportunity of venting his indignation. This he soon obtained; Philip seeing his resources exhausted, insisted that the clergy should bear a part of the burdens of the state; they, on their part, claimed their privilege of exemption, and appealed to Rome. 15. Boniface forthwith published a bull, prohibiting the clergy, or any religious order, to pay any tax whatever without the pope's special permission; and all who either paid or received such tax were declared to be excommunicated. Philip in his turn issued an edict, prohibiting the exportation of money from the kingdom, a severe stroke against the court of Rome,

which annually obtained enormous sums from France. Boniface declared by another bull, that if the prohibition extended to him and the clergy it was *madness*, as no secular princes had any authority over them. The king retorted by a spirited manifesto, that as the clergy were members of the state they were as much interested in its preservation as the rest of the people, and ought therefore to contribute to its necessities. The pope replied by a series of bulls in rapid succession, each more violent than the preceding, but Philip treated them with contempt, and declared that he believed the pope had lost his senses. 16. At length, to put an end to this unseemly contest, Philip assembled the states general; this assembly consisted of the clergy and nobles, to whom Philip, for the first time, added deputies from the commons. The states general unanimously asserted the independence of the crown, but in their declarations of attachment to the king, most of the clergy inserted the following clause; *saving the fidelity due to the pope*. Had Boniface mingled any share of prudence with his violence, he might have had better success; but his rashness and vehemence only covered him with ridicule. He held a council at Rome, in which he procured it to be decided, that the two swords mentioned in the gospel were symbols of the temporal and spiritual authority with which the pope was invested. 17. He published the bull which, from its two first words, is commonly called *Unam Sanctam*, in which it is declared, that "the temporal sword ought to be employed by kings and warriors in the service of the church, as the pope shall permit and direct. The temporal power is subject to the spiritual, and cannot itself be judged but by God alone. To resist the spiritual power, then, is to resist God, unless the two principles of the Manichæans be admitted." 18. Philip again had recourse to a council of the states; before them the chevalier de Nagaret, advocate-general, accused the pope of simony, heresy, and magic, and insisted on the necessity of his deposition. Boniface, on his part, put the kingdom under an interdict, and offered the crown of France to Albert of Austria, whom he had hitherto treated as a rebel and usurper, but whom he acknowledged as emperor when about to employ him as the instrument of his passion. All the orders of the kingdom joining with Philip appealed to a future pope and a general council against what had been or should be done to the disadvantage of the royal authority. 19. Boniface fulmi-

A. D.  
1302.

nated his bulls against the king and the nation, and was preparing another still more injurious to crowned heads, when he was arrested at Anagni by Nagaret and Sciarra Colonna. The latter, who was the pontiff's personal enemy, loaded him with abuse, and even struck him on the face: perhaps Boniface might have been subjected to still greater indignities had not the people of the town taken up arms in his defence, and rescued him from the hands of his enemies. The pontiff returned to Rome, but vexation for the insult he had received threw him into a fever, and his death relieved Philip from his most dangerous enemy.

20. During the heat of the disputes with Boniface, Philip the Fair experienced a sad reverse of fortune. The tyranny of the governors to whom the administration of affairs in Flanders had been committed, made the Flemings rebel, and, being animated by a simple citizen of Bruges, they massacred almost all the French. The count d'Artois, who was sent with a numerous army to reduce them, despising them as a mob, rashly exposed himself in the year 1302, when he lost the famous battle of Courtrai, where he and the flower of the French nobility fell. So many knights were slain, that four thousand gilt spurs remained with the enemy as monuments of their victory.

21. The king marched in person to exact vengeance for his loss, but his first campaign was ineffectual, and though he obtained a great victory the following year, the revolvers returned so often to the charge, that the king exclaimed, "I believe it rains Flemings." 22. A treaty was at length made, by which it was agreed that the count of Flanders should be restored to his dominions on condition of his acknowledging the king of France as his suzerain, and thus, after torrents of blood were shed, matters reverted to their original situation. Nearly at the same time, Robert Bruce expelled the English from Scotland, and thus these unjust aggressions, which commenced at the same time, had the same disgraceful termination.

23. Though Benedict XI., the successor of the violent Boniface, had absolved Philip the Fair from the excommunication, that haughty and revengeful prince was not yet satisfied. After the death of Benedict, the cardinals being divided into two parties, he caused the votes to fall upon Bertrand de Got, a native of Gascony, devoted to the interests of France. The principal bulls of Boniface were suspended or annihilated, and a prosecution commenced



against his memory. The council assembled at Vienna for this extraordinary trial acquitted the deceased pontiff of heresy, and refused to investigate the other charges. Two Spanish knights offered to vindicate his memory by judicial combat; a strange proposition to make in a council!

24. The Templars, a military and religious order instituted for the recovery of Palestine, had rendered themselves odious by their riches, pride, and debauchery; their immense possessions had excited the cupidity of Philip, and he prevailed on the pope to unite with him for their destruction.

A. D.  
1307.

Under the pretence of consulting about a new crusade, they were summoned to meet at Paris, and no sooner had they assembled, than they were all arrested and thrown into prison. They were accused of the most horrid, but at the same time the most absurd crimes, and were tortured into confessions. These they afterwards retracted, and were in consequence sentenced to death as relapsed heretics and traitors. 25. Fifty-seven of the knights were burned alive, and after some delay, James de Molai and three others were put to death by the most excruciating tortures, protesting the innocence of the order with their last breath. The property of the Templars was nominally transferred to the Hospitallers, now called the knights of Malta, but the greater part of it was retained by their persecutors.

26. The expenses of the crusades and other wars, had so impoverished the royal exchequer, that Philip debased the coin to recruit his finances; an expedient which produced incalculable evils. Some of his regulations were, however, more valuable; he gave form and permanency to the courts of justice, which the French call *parliaments*; he introduced into them *legists*, or men of the law, by whose report causes were decided, and raised the legal profession to its proper importance in the state.



A Knight Templar.

27. If we were to judge of the national manners from those of the court during this reign, the following anecdote must give us a dreadful idea of them. Before the death of Philip the Fair, the wives of his three sons were accused of adultery. One of them was strangled in prison ; the second escaped by saying that her marriage was null on account of kindred ; and the third was reconciled to her husband.

28. Philip died by a fall from his horse while hunting, in the 46th year of his age and 28th of his reign.

29. It was during this reign that the league of Swiss independence was formed. The emperor Albert of Austria, seeing the spirit of liberty spreading among his subjects, thought that he could stifle it by the rigours of a despotic government. Three cantons, that of Schweitz, which gave name to the entire confederacy, and those of Ury and Underswalden leagued together in 1307, to free themselves from an odious yoke, and after a series of brilliant victories, succeeding in establishing a free constitution.

---

### Questions.

1. How were the crusades terminated ?
2. Did Philip prove a good monarch ?
3. What remarkable trial took place in his reign ?
4. Why was the king's favourite, La Brosse, executed ?
5. By whom was the plot formed to drive the French out of Sicily ?
6. What were the Sicilian vespers ?
7. What finally became of Charles of Anjou ?
8. To whom did the pope next give the crown of Sicily ?
9. What change was made by Philip in the French constitution ?
10. How did the Sicilian war terminate ?
11. Whence originated the war between France and England ?
12. How did this war terminate ?
13. What was the character of pope Boniface ?
14. From what causes sprung the quarrel between Philip and the pope ?
15. How was the contest carried on ?
16. By what means did Philip endeavour to put an end to the dispute ?
17. For what is the bull *Unam Sanctam* remarkable ?
18. What charges did Philip bring against the pope ?
19. How did this end ?
20. What reverse of fortune did the French experience about this time ?
21. Did the Flemings resist the French vigorously ?

22. What two nations lost and recovered their liberty at the same time?
23. Was the memory of pope Boniface's bulls effaced by his death?
24. What religious and military order was persecuted by Philip and the pope?
25. How were the knights treated?
26. Did Philip introduce any new institutions?
27. What circumstance shows the depravity of the court?
28. What was the age of Philip at his death?
29. Did any nation about this time assert its independence?



Huntsman and Valet of Philip the Fair.



Louis X.

## CHAPTER XIII.

LOUIS THE QUARRELSOME.—PHILIP THE LONG —  
CHARLES THE FAIR.

In quick succession regal forms pass by,  
 Their pride, their power, but creatures of the day,  
 Like the bright meteor of a summer sky,  
 Their short-lived glory dies and fades away.

COOKE.

1. Louis X., surnamed *Hutin*, or the quarrelsome, A.D. 1314. succeeded his father, and commenced his reign with an act of injustice, sacrificing the superintendant Marigni, who was persecuted by the public hatred, and unjustly accused of being the author of the national misery. Some Italian financiers, for the French were too ignorant to transact the business of the revenue, had caused the coin to be debased during the late reign, and this pernicious system was attributed to Marigni. Magic made one of the articles of his indictment, and absurdity served instead of proofs.

The count de Valois, uncle to the king, and the minister's personal enemy, caused him to be condemned without a hearing, and hanged as if he were a worthless criminal. His death was in some degree avenged by the remorse with which the count was seized, and even the people were afflicted at his execution.

2. In the mean time, money was wanted to supply the exigencies of the state; and the same expedients which had occasioned disturbances on former occasions, could not be repeated. A scheme was therefore conceived to sell liberty to the inhabitants of the country, who were still serfs, bound to the soil, and could not leave the lands of their lords, or dispose of their property. 3. The king's edict for the general enfranchisement, says, "*according to the law of nature every man is born free*;" an expression the more remarkable, as that natural right was obliged to be purchased; and what appears rather whimsical, numbers who were not desirous of freedom were actually compelled to purchase it against their will. 4. Louis engaged in war with the Flemings, and formed the siege of Courtray, but the elements conspired against him; famine also appeared in his camp, and he was compelled to withdraw his army. He died the following year, not without some suspicions of poison.

5. After the death of Louis, a great difficulty <sup>A. D.</sup> 1316. arose about the succession. The queen was delivered of a son, who lived only eight days; and the duke of Burgundy maintained that Joanna, the king's daughter, ought to succeed; but the three estates of the realm decided that, according to the Salic law, no female could inherit the crown of France. They therefore elected Philip V., surnamed the Long, brother to the late king. 6. This did not extend to any other countries, nor even to the grand fiefs. Joanna, whose claim had been rejected, was acknowledged queen of Navarre, which thus became again separated from France.



Philip the Long.

7. The Jews and lepers were accused of having agreed with the Turks to poison all the wells and springs; their real crime was, that the former had acquired great wealth by commerce, and that the charitable bequests made to erect *lazar-houses* or hospitals for the latter, amounted to a very considerable sum. Great numbers of these unfortunate people were burned, and their property seized by the king.

8. During the brief reign of Philip, some good was done, and much more attempted. He excluded the bishops from parliament, where they had too great influence, in order that the ecclesiastical jurisdiction might no longer interfere with the civil tribunals. He paid large sums to several barons as a compensation for their resigning their privilege of coining money, which they had grossly abused. The frequency of private wars, and the disturbances which party quarrels continually created, had risen to an intolerable height; and, as a remedy, the king compelled the citizens to deposit their arms in arsenals, from whence they could not be taken but in his wars, and for his service. He proposed to fix an uniform standard for money, weights, and measures, through his dominions; but the nobles every where opposed this beneficial project, which they supposed to be in some way or other connected with a new scheme of taxation; and while the matter was yet in debate, Philip was seized with a quartan fever, which soon terminated his existence.

9. As he died without male issue, his brother  
A.D. 1322. Charles IV., surnamed the Fair, succeeded him without opposition. The great vassals of the crown were summoned to attend the coronation; all obeyed but the count of Flanders, and the duke of Guienne, who was also king of England. This was made the pretext for a war on the dominions that the English still retained on the continent; and Charles of Valois being sent with a numerous army, reduced Edmund, earl of Kent, brother to the king of England, and governor of the province, to such straits that he was compelled to surrender himself a prisoner. He was, however, permitted to return home, on the condition that if the king of England did not, within a certain space, give satisfaction to his suzerain, the earl of Kent should come back to his prison.

10. Edward II., who was at that time on the throne of England, was a prince equally weak and unfortunate; by his attachment to favourites, he had provoked the enmity of his queen and nobility, who were secretly preparing to remove

him from the throne. When the earl of Kent arrived in England, queen Isabella offered to conduct the negotiation with her brother the king of France. She took her children with her on this journey, and conducted the negotiations with so much prudence, that her son, prince Edward, was invested with the duchy of Guienne, and the county of Poictou, for which he did homage. 11. But Isabella, after having finished this business, refused to return home, pretending that her life was endangered by the Spencers, and applied to her brother for assistance and protection. Charles at first espoused the cause of Isabella, but disgusted with the open preference she showed for the company of Mortimer, more than suspected of being her paramour, he ordered her to quit his dominions. 12. Driven from France, she retired to the county of Ponthieu, and from thence to Hainault, where the brother of the count, according to the custom of the times, declared himself her knight, and assembled a large body of troops, by which she was enabled to vanquish and imprison her unfortunate husband.

13. The pope during this reign was involved in a long war, and made several attempts to obtain money from the Gallican Church, which were successfully resisted by the king and the clergy. But the pope, by offering to share with the monarch, induced him to withdraw his opposition, and the clergy were forced to submit to their united influence.

14. Charles of Valois, who had acted so conspicuous a part in this and the former reigns, was seized A. D. 1325. with a disease, which being unknown to the physicians, was of course attributed to magic; while a few suspected that he had been poisoned, for during this century the crime of assassination by poison had fearfully increased in France. On his death-bed he bitterly repented the share that he had in procuring the unjust condemnation of Marigni, and took every means in his power to efface the stigma that had been affixed to his character. It was remarked of Charles as of the English John of Gaunt, that though he never sat upon the throne, yet his father, brother, nephew, and son, were kings.

15. Charles the Fair, though avaricious, appears to have been a good king; he provided for the due ad- A. D. 1328. ministration of justice, and employed no ministers but such as were distinguished for wisdom and integrity. He died at Vincennes at the early age of thirty-four.

*Questions.*

1. With what act of injustice did Louis X. commence his reign?
2. How did he endeavour to raise money?
3. What strange inconsistency was there in his proceedings?
4. How did he die?
5. What disputes about the succession arose after his death?
6. Did the Salic law of inheritance extend farther than the royal succession?
7. On what pretence were the Jews and lepers persecuted?
8. Were there any beneficial institutions made in the reign of Philip the Long?
9. What war arose between Charles the Fair and the English?
10. Who offered to negotiate a peace?
11. How did Isabella behave?
12. By whose assistance did she dethrone her husband?
13. Did any thing remarkable occur in the church during **this** reign?
14. For what is Charles of Valois remarkable?
15. What was the character of Charles IV.?



Charles the Fair.





Philip VI.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### PHILIP VI., CALLED ALSO PHILIP OF VALOIS, AND THE FORTUNATE.

Hopeless and sad they mourn'd their heroes slain,  
The best and bravest on their native plain,  
The king himself in deeper sorrow mourn'd;  
With rage and mingled grief his bosom burn'd.  
Like the grim lion, when his offspring slain  
He sees, and round him draws the hunter's train;  
Couch'd in the shade with fell intent he lies,  
And glares upon his foes with burning eyes.

EPIGONIAD.

1. The death of the three last monarchs without male issue, made room for the election of Philip, and A. D.  
procured him the surname of Fortunate, an epithet 1328.  
which the misfortunes of his calamitous reign strongly con-

tradicted. Another candidate for the crown was Edward III. of England, and as their respective claims are not very commonly understood, it may be useful to state them. Edward was son to the sister of the late king, Philip was that monarch's cousin-german. 2. The points admitted on both sides were, that a nephew was a nearer relative than a cousin, and that no female could inherit the crown; but on the part of Edward,\* it was contended, that though his mother could not have ascended the throne, yet as her claim was only barred by the incident of her sex, she could transmit her claim to her next male representative, who would, therefore, possess the right free from the disqualification. On the part of Philip, it was asserted that the exclusion of females was absolute, that Isabella consequently never had a right to the throne, and therefore could not transmit that which she never possessed. The peers and great barons of France were assembled to decide this great question; Robert d'Artois, count de Beaumont, warmly supported the cause of Philip, and finally prevailed in having him acknowledged as sovereign.

3. This reign was almost one continued series of wars; the first in which Philip engaged was with the Flemings, who had expelled their count and his principal nobility. The very day after his coronation, Philip advanced against these insurgents, accompanied by the king of Bohemia, and the count of Hainault. The Flemings took up a strong position on the mountains near Cassel, and when they saw the French encamped in the valley below, undertook an enterprise of great hardihood, which was very near being crowned with success. Dividing their army into three bodies, they made a desperate attempt to break into the French camp and seize the three leaders; the French, however, were on the alert, and the three parties, overwhelmed by superior numbers, suffered very se-

---

\* When Edward assumed the arms of France, he explained his claim to them in the following Leonine verses,—

Anglorum regno sum ego rex jure paterno,  
Matris jure quidem Gallorum nuncupor idem;  
Hinc est armorum variatio justa meorum.

To this specimen of royal reasoning in verse, a Frenchman replied in the following lines,—

Prædo regnorum qui diceris esse duorum,  
Regno materno privaberis atque paterno,  
Mater ubi nullum jus, natus non habet ullum;  
Hinc est armorum variatio stulta tuorum.

verely; but such was their determined valour, that they maintained the fight until night, and Philip dreading their despair, drew off his troops to allow them an opportunity of retreating. 4. In consequence of this victory, all Flanders submitted to the victorious monarch; several of the towns were dismantled, others deprived of their municipal privileges, and compelled to receive foreign garrisons; the leaders of the insurgents were driven into banishment, and thus the country was reduced to apparent tranquillity; but there remained a bitter hatred of the invaders in the breasts of the population, which only waited for an opportunity to burst forth with fresh violence.

5. The delay of Edward to perform homage for the duchy of Guienne created suspicions in the mind of Philip; he therefore sent an embassy to England, summoning him as his vassal to appear under pain of forfeiting his fief. Edward on this assembled his council; the state of the kingdom compelled him to temporize; the nation was still distracted by the intrigues between the queen-dowager and Mortimer; the Scots under the Bruces were a powerful nation, and in close alliance with France; Edward, therefore, saw that the time was not yet arrived for preferring his claim, and resolved to wait for a more favourable opportunity. 6. Having privately made a protestation to his council that he reserved his claim to the throne of France, he promised that he would in a short time proceed to Philip's court, and there perform homage similar to his predecessors. Accordingly, in a short time Edward went to Amiens, where Philip, accompanied by the kings of Bohemia and Majorca, made the most brilliant preparations for his reception. 7. The English monarch acknowledged himself a vassal to the crown of France in general terms, but absolutely refused to perform *liege* homage;\* Philip insisted on this important ceremony, and Edward, either fearing, or pretending to fear, that he would be detained as a prisoner, privately returned to England. Soon after, dreading that Philip might seize on Guienne, he executed letters patent sealed with the great seal of England, in which he acknowledged that, as duke of Guienne, he owed liege homage to the king of France.

---

\* The important phrase used in liege homage was, "I become your man," a humiliating expression which Edward was naturally unwilling to use.

8. Philip, believing that his throne was now perfectly secure, prepared to embark on a new crusade, and for this purpose levied considerable sums on the nobles, clergy, and people. One of his taxes, that on salt, called the *gabelle*, was particularly obnoxious; in allusion to it, Edward called Philip the inventor of the *Salic* law. 9. But the money which he had raised for this purpose was soon diverted to other objects. 10. Several circumstances occurred nearly at the same time, adverse to Philip and favourable to Edward, which induced the latter to assert his claim to the crown of France, and to prepare for an invasion of that kingdom. Robert of Artois, to whom Philip was in a great degree indebted for his crown, had been deprived by the king of the county of Artois, and in consequence of some rash expressions of indignation, had been driven out of the kingdom. The Flemings, enraged by the loss of their privileges, were eager to engage in a new insurrection; and de Montfort, a claimant for the duchy of Brittany, saw that he could not succeed without the aid of England, as his competitor was a favoured cousin of the French king. At the same time, Edward, by the imprisonment of the queen-dowager, and the execution of her paramour Mortimer, had restored tranquillity and order to England, while his signal victory over the Scots had freed him from all dangers on that side.

11. The war that now broke out is remarkable for  
A. D. the numerous instances of chivalrous heroism it exhi-  
1336. bited, and on that account its history is valuable, as throwing some light on the state of society and manners produced by the institution of chivalry. No sooner had Edward and his allies resolved on the war, than they severally wrote challenges to Philip, and sent them to him by a bishop! Sir Walter Manny, without waiting for a declaration of war, invaded France on the side of Flanders, and by the successes that he obtained, both inspired the English with fresh courage, and induced the Flemings openly to embrace the quarrel. 12. The principal person employed by Edward to stir up the people of Flanders was Jacob Van Arteveld, a rich merchant, whose great wealth gave him more influence than was possessed by any nobleman at the time; he prevailed on the towns to declare in favour of England, and when some scrupled to violate the allegiance they had so lately sworn, Edward assumed the title and arms of *king of France*, and thus quieted their consciences.

13. Philip having entered into alliance with the king of Castile, obtained from him the aid of a fleet, which, united with his own, dreadfully ravaged the coasts of England; but being soon after met by Edward, near the Scheldt, a fierce engagement ensued, in which the French were defeated, with the loss of half their vessels and twenty thousand men. 14. Edward followed up this victory by attacking several towns on the borders of Flanders; but in the midst of his successes he consented to a truce, which by the interference of a papal legate was protracted for two years.

15. The war again broke out on the <sup>A. D.</sup> side of Brittany. 1341.

John de Montfort had been taken prisoner by his rival, and sent a prisoner to Paris; Charles of Blois thought that his triumph was secure, but Margaret, countess of Montfort, one of the greatest heroines that the world has produced, defended the sinking cause of her husband, and with unexampled intrepidity, prepared for a desperate resistance. 16.

At length she was shut up in the castle of Hermebond, and so closely besieged that every chance of escape seemed cut off: she had even commenced to treat of a surrender, but turning once more an anxious glance to the sea, she saw in the distance the English fleet, under Sir Walter Manny, coming to her relief; all thoughts of yielding were given up, and that evening Hermebond was relieved. The siege, however, was still continued, but Manny, at the head of a small body of adventurous knights sallied out, destroyed the engines of the besiegers, and returned almost without loss to Hermebond. The countess was so pleased with this exploit, that she ran out and kissed Manny in the street, declaring that he was truly a gallant and accomplished chevalier. Charles of Blois soon



John de Montfort and his Countess.

after consented to a truce, and Margaret passed over to England in order to obtain more effective aid.

17. A shocking act of treachery on the part of the A. D. king of France renewed the flames of war. Oliver de 1344. Clisson, with several other knights of Brittany, had accompanied Charles of Blois to a tournament at Paris; Philip suspecting that they were secretly attached to the English, had them all seized and put to death without even the form of a trial. 18. The French nobility were justly indignant at this infamous proceeding, and withdrew their affections from a monarch who had acted with so much cruelty and perfidy. Edward on hearing of the event prepared to renew the war with greater spirit than ever: he proceeded himself to Normandy; the earl of Derby was directed to attack France on the side of Guienne, and Robert of Artois was sent to support the de Montfort party in Brittany. 19. Although Normandy had been so lately a fief to the English crown, its inhabitants made a fierce resistance



Charles of Blois.

to the invaders, and were consequently treated by them with great severity; having laid waste their country, the English monarch advanced into Picardy, marking his path by ruin and desolation as far as the gates of Paris. 20. At length Philip collected an army far superior in number to the invaders, and Edward retreated with the utmost speed towards the boundaries of Flanders. But the rapid advance of the French compelled him to make a stand, and though he had only 24,000 men, enfeebled by fatigue and disease, he resolved to hazard an engagement with Philip's army, amounting to

more than 100,000 men, on the memorable plains of Crécy.

Aug. 26, 21. The king of France had encamped the night 1346. before the battle at Abbeville, about nine miles from the field of battle; the morning of the engagement was spent in consultations, and when the resolution to fight was taken, the march was made with so much haste that the

ranks were a little disordered. Several other circumstances contributed to increase this confusion; the sun and wind were in the face of the advancing army; an order to halt, partially heard and still more partially obeyed, mingled the first and second lines; finally a heavy shower of rain damaged the bow-strings of the Genoese archers, on whom Philip placed his principal reliance. 22. At length about four o'clock in the afternoon they came in sight of the English army, drawn up in three lines, of which the foremost was commanded by Edward the Black Prince, and the reserve by the king himself. 23. Having made a brief pause, the count d'Alençon ordered the Genoese archers to begin *in the name of God and St. Dennis*. They advanced in rather a strange way; they took three leaps forward, setting up a shout after each; and



Battle of Crécy.

when they had given the third spring they discharged their arrows. But as their strings had been damaged by the rain their shot produced but little effect, while the English archers, who had kept their bows in cases, returned a flight of arrows so close and well directed, that the Genoese fell into irremediable disorder. The count d'Alençon, surprised and mortified at the conduct of the archers, called out treason, ordered the cavalry to ride over the run-a-ways, and fall on the English lines. This foolish command increased the confusion; the cavalry rode down their own archers, but were in their turn entangled among the routed Genoese, while the English archers kept up an incessant "hail-shower of shafts," that did fearful execution. "There were besides," says an old historian, "some *rough fellows* in the English army, who being armed only with knives, ran out of the ranks when they saw a knight dismounted and cut his throat." 24. When Alençon

at last freed himself from this tangled rout and came up with the English line, his troops were disordered and out of breath, while his enemies were fresh and vigorous. The French chevaliers maintained the battle valiantly, but the total want of discipline in their army, the disorder of their ranks, and the continued fire of the archers, who availed themselves of every opportunity, rendered all their valour unavailing. 25. The blind king of Bohemia, who had accompanied his friend and ally to this fatal field, hearing



Crossbow Man, from an old Picture of the Battle of Crécy.

the rout, resolved to lose his life rather than fly, and ordered two of his knights to fasten the reins of his horse to the bridle of theirs and gallop with him into the midst of the enemy, that *he might strike one good stroke*. His commands were obeyed; he fell in the first line fighting valiantly, and the three ostrich feathers which adorned his crest, together with his motto ICH DIEN, *I serve*, were assumed by the Black Prince, and have ever since been the cognizance of princes of Wales. 26. Philip made several efforts to rally his troops, but they were ineffectual, and at length his at-



tendants bore him off badly wounded from the field. The battle continued until late in the evening, and several slight skirmishes took place during the night; but on the following morning the English learned the extent of their victory; thirty thousand of the enemy's infantry, and twelve hundred knights, amongst whom were the kings of Bohemia and Majorca, lay upon the plain. 27.

There appears to have been no quarter given in this battle. As a signal of his determination to show no mercy, Philip in the commencement of the battle had ordered the Oriflamme

to be unfurled, which added, to all the other advantages of the English, the furious courage arising from despair.

28. The day after the battle was equally distinguished by slaughter; large bodies of recruits from the neighbouring towns had come to join the army of Philip, whom they believed marching to certain victory; these unfortunate persons fell in with a detachment of the English, and were literally slaughtered without resistance.

29. In another part of the kingdom, the French suffered a similar calamity about this time. John, duke of Normandy, son of king Philip, had been long besieging the castle of Aiguillon, on the borders of Guienne, and had made a vow that he would not depart from before its walls until he had captured the place; but the valour of the garrison, and the advance of the earl of Derby compelled him to raise the siege. In his retreat, the English, under the command of Sir Walter Manny, harassed his rear, made several important prisoners, and compelled him to change his retreat into a hurried flight. The earl of Derby being thus left master of the field, reduced several towns in the neighbourhood of Guienne, and became as formidable in the west, as his sovereign was in the east of France.



Earl of Alençon, killed at Crecy.

### Questions.

1. Who were the candidates for the crown of France?
2. What were their respective claims?

3. Did the Flemings make any daring attempt on the person of the French king?
4. What was the consequence of their defeat?
5. Why did not Edward immediately assert his claim to the French crown?
6. Had he any reservation?
7. Did any dispute arise respecting the species of homage?
8. What obnoxious tax was levied by Philip?
9. Why did he not pursue his project of a new crusade?
10. Did any circumstances favourable to Edward occur?
11. In what manner did the war commence?
12. How did Edward obtain the assistance of the Flemings?
13. What naval victory did Edward obtain?
14. Did he follow up his successes?
15. Where did the war recommence?
16. Did any lady distinguish herself by her bravery?
17. Of what gross treachery was Philip guilty?
18. What was the consequence?
19. How were the English received in Normandy?
20. Where did the rival monarchs come to an engagement?
21. To what disadvantages were the French exposed?
22. How were the English drawn up?
23. How did the Genoese archers behave?
24. Did the French cavalry retrieve the day?
25. What ally of Philip behaved remarkably in this battle?
26. How did the fight conclude?
27. Why was there no quarter given?
28. Did any thing remarkable occur on the following day?
29. Were the French defeated in any other part of the kingdom about this time?



Ladies of the Twelfth Century.



A Knight of the Fourteenth Century.

## CHAPTER XV.

### PHILIP OF VALOIS CONTINUED.—JOHN

*S.* Bring up the catapults and shake the walls;  
We will not be outbraved thus.

*N.* Shake the earth,  
Ye cannot shake our souls. Bring up your rams,  
And with their armed heads make the fort totter;  
Ye do but rock us unto death.

BEAUMONT.

1. THE war in Brittany presented a very extraordinary spectacle; Charles de Blois having laid siege to Roche d'Arien, a fortress of great importance, the countess de Montfort sent a party under the command of sir

A. D.  
1347.

Thomas Dagworth, to seek means of conveying relief to the garrison. As his party was too small to attack the besieging army with any prospect of success, he resolved to proceed by stratagem, and accordingly ordered a knight named Hartwell to beat up the enemy's quarters, and then to retreat towards a defile where the rest of the forces would remain in ambush. Hartwell attacked the camp, but led on by youthful impetuosity, instead of retreating after having given the alarm, he led his little troop into the midst of the hostile lines, where they were surrounded, and as they disdained a surrender, only two or three escaped. Seeing their plan defeated, the officers in Dagworth's detachment proposed to retreat; but he wisely remarked, that their success would throw the besiegers so much off their guard, that victory was more certain now than ever. After midnight, he advanced to the hostile camp, and found its inmates as he had anticipated, rendered secure and careless by their late success: a sudden attack surprised them so much that scarcely any resistance was made, and Charles de Blois remained a prisoner. 2. His wife, emulating the countess de Montfort, thenceforward took the command, and these two heroines continued to carry on the war in Brittany; but although these contests were distinguished by many traits of individual valour, they were not productive of any event which produced a lasting effect.

3. After his victory at Crécy, Edward saw the necessity of securing some town which would facilitate his communication with England, and for this purpose resolved to lay siege to Calais; but before detailing the events of the siege, it may be as well to mention the adventures of one who performed there a part equally conspicuous and honourable. 4. Sir Walter Manny had been engaged in attacking the French on the side of Guienne; he had performed there many actions of the most heroic valour, and when the siege of Aiguillon was raised, he had harassed severely the duke of Normandy in his retreat, and taken several prisoners. Soon after he heard of Edward's victory at Crécy, and of his intention to besiege Calais; anxious to serve personally under his sovereign, he went to one of his captives, and proposed that instead of ransom, he should procure a safe conduct for Sir Walter and twenty followers through France. The knight to whom the offer was made being a relative and favourite of the duke's, gladly accepted the offer, and in a short time procured the passport. Sir Walter proceeded through the country as far

as Orleans, but was there arrested and sent as a prisoner to Paris. After being detained there for some time, Philip was at length prevailed on to respect his son's plighted word, and not only consented to the liberation of Sir Walter, but invited him to a royal entertainment. He then, before finally dismissing him, made him several rich presents, which Sir Walter accepted only on the condition, that his sovereign would consent to his retaining them. When the gallant knight arrived before the walls of Calais, Edward requested him to return the presents of Philip, saying, "I trust, cousin, that I am not yet so poor, but that enough is left for me and you." Sir Walter immediately returned the presents by a young knight named Mansell to Philip; the French king refused to receive back what he had once bestowed, and Mansell, who was not quite so scrupulous as Sir Walter, kept them himself.

5. The siege of Calais was protracted to an unusual length; at an early period the garrison turned out all useless persons in order to spare their provisions, and Edward, with great humanity, permitted these unfortunate beings to pass through his camp. But this was only a temporary relief to the defenders of the walls; when they had been shut up more than a year, their provisions became quite exhausted; but they had not quite lost the dauntless spirit which had enabled them so long to resist a victorious army, and to baffle every effort which the chivalrous spirit of enterprise, that so peculiarly characterized Edward's army, had made for their subjugation; a letter which they sent to the king of France, and which was intercepted by Edward, will best illustrate their state and their feelings.

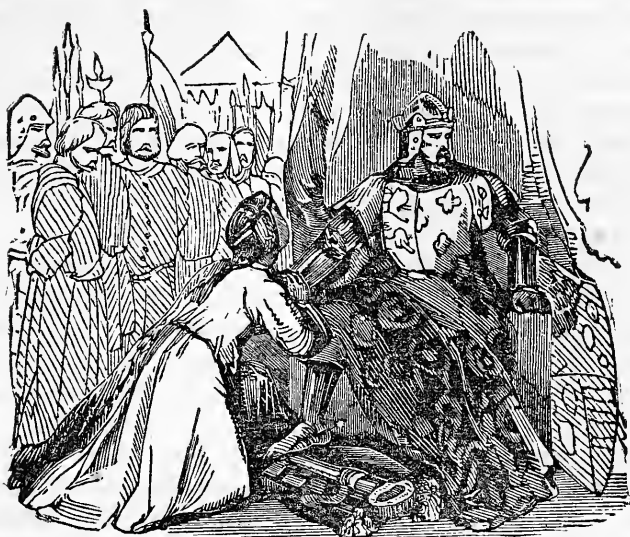
6. "Sachez, tres-doute seigneur, que vos gentz in Caleys ont mangez leurs chevaux, chiens, et ratz, et nest remit rien pour leur vivre, sinon chescun mange aultre. Par quey treshoneurable seigneur, si nous ne eymes hastife succoure la ville est perdue; et nous sommes toutz accordes, si nos ne eymes eyde, de yesser et mourir sur nos ennemis, en honneur, plus tost que dedens mourir par defaulte."

"Know, dread lord, that your people in Calais have eaten their horses, dogs, and cats, and there is nothing left for their support unless they eat each other. Wherefore, honourable lord, if we have not hasty succour the town is lost, and we are all agreed if we do not receive aid, to go and die honourably over our enemies, rather than perish here by hunger."

7. Edward transmitted this letter to Philip with an insult-

ing message to hasten to the relief of his subjects. The French king immediately assembled all his forces and marched to raise the siege, but when he arrived before Calais, he found the besiegers so strongly entrenched, that he could not attack them with any prospect of success. In vain did he send heralds to Edward, offering to fight him in a fair field; the challenges were treated as Philip had himself previously treated similar messages; they were answered by a declaration that Edward would not relinquish the advantages of situation. Finding all his efforts ineffectual, Philip was obliged to draw off all his forces the third day after his arrival. 8. The brave defenders of Calais had given way to the most enthusiastic joy when they perceived from their battlements the banners of France waving in the distance; during the interval of delay, they endeavoured, by various devices, to describe their calamitous condition to their countrymen; but when they saw the army retreating without attempting their deliverance, they broke out into wild shouts of despair, tore down the standard of France from their rampart, hurled it into the ditch, and unfurled the banner of England in its stead. 9. When Edward saw this sign of submission, he sent Sir Walter Manny to inform the garrison that they should surrender at discretion, but was afterwards prevailed on to promise, that if six principal burgesses were sent as an atonement for the rest, that he would spare the lives of the inhabitants. 10. When this cruel message was delivered to the inhabitants of Calais, the whole town resounded with lamentations. At length, Eustace St. Pierre came forward and voluntarily offered himself as a victim; this noble act of heroism was imitated by five others, and Sir Walter Manny led back the devoted band to the English camp. Edward, irritated by the length of the siege, and by the great losses which he had sustained before the place, ordered them to instant execution. 11. Sir Walter Manny and the principal commanders in the English army supplicated for the lives of Eustace and his companions in the most moving terms, but Edward was implacable, until his queen, Philippa, who had lately arrived from England, after having obtained a brilliant victory over the Scots, fell on her knees before her husband, and with some difficulty procured their pardon. Calais was afterwards re-peopled from England, and was not re-taken by the French until after the lapse of two centuries.

12. During this period, several important events had oc-



Queen Philippa interceding for the Citizens of Calais.

curred in Flanders; Von Arteveld had promised Edward that he would procure for his son the title of count of that province, but the Flemings, though displeased with their prince, were unwilling to deprive him of his inheritance, and the only effect produced by the proposal was to deprive Arteveld of all his popularity. His enemies were not slow in taking advantage of this, and procured the assassination of the demagogue in a popular tumult. 13. The Flemings, however, still adhered to the English cause, and refused to aid their count, who warmly supported the pretensions of Philip; at length he fell on the field of Crécy, and his subjects, on hearing the news, sent for his son from Paris. When the young count arrived in Flanders, the burgesses of the cities possessed all the real authority, and gave a strong proof of it by contracting him in marriage to Edward's daughter, without even asking his consent. The youthful prince, disliking the match, fled to the court of Philip, and was some time after permitted by that monarch to conclude a private truce with England, which pledged Flanders to a total neutrality.

14. France was not devastated by the horrors of war alone, a severe famine first afflicted the people, <sup>A. D.</sup> and this was followed by the most terrible plague that 1348. had hitherto appeared in Europe. It appeared first in China,

or, as it was then called, Cathay, and having traversed Asia and Greece, attacked the territories of France and Germany, where it literally decimated the population. 15. Religious fanaticism produced at the same period a new sect, called the Flagellants, who asserted that the anger of Heaven could only be averted by voluntary tortures; they proceeded through the cities and country, lacerating themselves with whips, but at length their enthusiasm degenerated into robbery, and they were suppressed.

16. The war went on but slowly after the capture of Calais; a truce was concluded between the rival monarchs, which, with little interruption, continued to the end of Philip's reign. An attempt was made to recover Calais, by bribing one of the commanders of the garrison, but he, after receiving the money, betrayed the conspiracy to Edward, who immediately went over with a reinforcement; when the French presented themselves before the town, instead of being admitted, they were attacked by a numerous party which had been placed in ambush, and cut to pieces. 17. In the midst of all his misfortunes, Philip had the satisfaction to see the province of Dauphiny annexed to the crown of France. Its last count dying without issue, bequeathed his dominions to

A. D. Philip, on condition that the eldest son of the French  
1350. king should bear the title of Dauphin. Soon after, Philip, broken down by cares and misfortunes, died, leaving to his son a disunited people, and a shattered kingdom.

18. John, duke of Normandy, succeeded his father, and seemed to have inherited his faults as well as his dominions. Philip, by illegally putting to death those whom he suspected of being attached to the English, had alienated the affections of many of his subjects, and John commenced his reign by a similar exhibition of crime and folly. The noblemen whom the king gave into the hands of the executioner, without even the form of trial, were his natural brother, the count of Marche, and the count d'Eu; the causes of his suspicion furnish a curious illustration of the manners of the time, and are, therefore, worthy of being recorded. 19. James, count of Marche, while serving against the Saracens, was accused of treason by Visconti, a near relation of the king of Cyprus. The leaders of the Christian army fearing to offend either of the crowned heads, to whom the disputants were related, referred the decision of the matter to Edward, king of England, whom they looked on as the flower of chivalry. 20. Marche



and Visconti having agreed to the reference, came to the English court, where it was resolved that the controversy should be decided by judicial combat. Lists were prepared in Westminster, and the combat took place in presence of the king and a brilliant court. Both warriors were completely locked in steel, and wore barred visors over their face; on this account, the lance and sword could produce little effect. 21. The count de Marche, wearing gauntlets (gloves cased with steel) having spikes at every joint, struck his adversary back-handed blows on the visor, through whose bars the spikes could penetrate, which Visconti, whose gauntlets were plain, could not return. The pain of these blows at length compelled Visconti to scream, on which Edward called out "Ho," and threw down his wardour, declaring Visconti conquered by the laws of arms, and totally at the disposal of his adversary. 22. The count of Marche declared that he was satisfied by having thus vindicated his character, and delivered over Visconti to the will of the prince of Wales. 23. When Marche returned to France, he found the king very indignant at his having submitted to the arbitration of Edward, the enemy of their family; he apologised by mentioning the high chivalrous character of Edward, in which he was joined by the count d'Eu, who had been a prisoner in England. But the apology seemed to John a greater crime than the original offence; they were both arrested and privately beheaded.

24. Among the vassals of France was Charles, king of Navarre, who appears to have well deserved the epithet of the Bad, which is given him by all the French historians; he had married one of John's daughters, and claimed as her portion several fiefs which, being already in the possession of others, it was not in the power of the crown to bestow. Suspecting that the constable of France had influenced the king to refuse his requests, Charles watched his opportunity, attacked the constable's residence during the night, and murdered him in his bed. 25. Not satisfied with this outrage, he sent a letter to John justifying his conduct; the weakness of his kingdom compelled the monarch to temporise, a mock investigation took place, and Charles was acquitted of guilt. But John only waited for an opportunity of vengeance; he ordered his son to court the favour of the king of Navarre, and when suspicion was lulled, he arrested Charles and his principal friends while dining with the prince-royal. The friends of

the king of Navarre were put to death without trial, and Charles himself sent a close prisoner to Paris.

26. This treachery produced the most lamentable consequences to John; the brother of the imprisoned king, and the relatives of the murdered nobleman, applied to England for aid in avenging their injuries, and as the truce had terminated some time before, the war broke out with greater fury than ever. 27 Edward the Black Prince, to whom his father had given the duchy of Guienne, assailed John on one side, while the earls of Derby and Lancaster, aided by the friends of Navarre, attacked him on the other. The Black Prince was his most impetuous adversary; he overran all the provinces in the neighbourhood of Guienne, but as he had laid waste the country wherever he came, he soon found himself with

diminished forces at a distance from all his resources, and unable to retreat with his army through an exhausted country. 28. In this situation prince Edward, with only 8000 men, was overtaken by John, accompanied by an army of more than 60,000. 29. The ruin of the Prince of Wales appeared inevitable; he took up, indeed, a strong position, but his army was destitute of provisions, his retreat cut off, and his enemies need only have remained quiet to ensure his destruction. The cardinal of Perigord, the papal legate, thought that this was a favourable opportunity for restoring peace; he went frequently between both armies, but the unreasonable demands of the French prevented all accommodation, and after a day had been wasted in useless negotiations, both sides prepared for the memorable battle of Poitiers.

Sept. 19, 1356. 30. The prince of Wales had drawn up his little band on a rising ground surrounded with vineyards and hedges; in his front was a long and narrow lane, running through a thick coppice; this he lined with archers, and at the end of the lane in front of his cavalry and men-at-arms, he placed a strong body of archers, disposed in the form of a hearse. When the French king saw these arrangements, he ordered all his cavalry to dismount except the German auxiliaries, and a body of about three hundred, whom he placed in the van. 31. The English archers were always considered the best in the world, and never did they maintain their fame better than on this eventful day. The van of the French had no sooner entered the lane, than a well directed and close fire opened on their flanks and front, which they

could neither retaliate nor avoid, so that their first line was defeated almost before it reached the enemy. The charge of prince Edward completed their overthrow, and the cavalry was ordered up to their rescue; but while they were advancing, the English archers had gained a favourable position on their flanks, a cloud of arrows threw them into confusion, they fell back on the Germans, who in their turn, recoiled on the second line, and broke its ranks. 32. Edward seized the decisive moment to charge, and the cowardly flight of a large body that had been left to guard the four sons of John adding to the enemy's dismay, there was scarce a moment's resistance when the French were completely broken, and their gallant army scattered over the plain. Bitterly did they lament the fatal order that had deprived them of their horses; encumbered by heavy armour, their lines broken, and their



Battle of Poitiers.

lances useless, they were trampled down by the English cavalry, or swept away by the dense body of men-at-arms who advanced under the cover of the archers. 33. John had still a third division of his army under the command of himself and his youngest son Philip, which, being superior in number to the English, might have changed the fate of the day; but they were dispirited by the defeat of their companions; they were, besides, for the most part unused to fight on foot, and being drawn up in close column, they presented an unerring mark to the archers. The English, "mad with success and drunk with gore," broke this last body by one furious charge; but the individual valour of John and his immediate attendants still maintained the fight. 34. The English and Gascon knights, who recognised his person, frequently exhorted him to surrender, but he refused to yield to any but his cousin, the Prince of Wales; having learned, however, that he was in a distant part of the field, he gave his gauntlet to John de Morbeck, a gentleman of Artois, whom he had banished some years before.\* John and his son Philip remained prisoners,

---

\* The individual heroism shown by an English knight in this battle deserves to be recorded, especially as his conduct displays much of that noble and generous spirit which chivalrous feeling frequently produced. The lord James Audley had been long a favoured friend of the Black Prince, and materially assisted him in making those arrangements which produced this great victory. When every preparation was made, he rode up to Edward, accompanied by his four esquires, and stated that he had made a vow to strike the first stroke, in whatever battle he should be engaged. Edward permitted him to advance with his four esquires beyond the front of the English lines; he proceeded down the lane, and taking post under the cover of some trees, patiently awaited the approaching vanguard of the French. When they rushed tumultuously into the lane, Audley furiously attacked them, and was saved from the consequences of his hardihood by the French becoming entangled in the difficult ground, and disordered by the heavy showers of arrows. When the English charged through the disordered lines, Audley kept still in front, and was one of the foremost who cut through the second line of the French. During the entire fight he was the most conspicuous among the English chivalry, but towards the end of the day he was no longer seen in the field. When the fight was over, Edward earnestly inquired after his gallant friend; he was brought before him, borne in the arms of his faithful esquires, covered with blood, and exhausted by his wounds and exertions. The prince complimented him on his valour, and as a reward settled on him a pension of 500 marks annually. No sooner was Audley carried to

but the greater part of the French nobility fell. Indeed, the slaughter was principally confined to the knights and nobles, owing, probably, to their having been deprived of their horses before the beginning of the engagement.

35. The generous Edward treated his royal captive as his sovereign; he refused to be covered or sit down in his presence, and even attended him at supper. Afterwards, when he brought him over to England, John rode into London on a white horse, richly caparisoned with all the ensigns of sovereignty, while the victor attended him, mounted on a little black pony, as a sign of his inferiority. John was lodged in the palace of the Savoy, and was treated rather as a king than as a prisoner.

---

### *Questions.*

1. What remarkable event took place at the siege of Rochefort?
2. Who headed the party of de Blois?
3. What town did Edward resolve to besiege?
4. Is there any honourable anecdote recorded of Sir Walter Manny?
5. To what calamities were the citizens of Calais exposed?
6. How did they describe their distressed situation?
7. Were they relieved by Philip?
8. How did they behave when they saw the French king retreat?
9. On what conditions did Edward offer to spare the town?
10. Who offered to devote themselves for their fellow-citizens?
11. How were the lives of these heroes saved?
12. Did any thing remarkable occur at this time in Flanders?
13. Were the Flemings very submissive to their rulers?
14. Was France visited by any calamities in addition to the war?
15. What new sect appeared?
16. Did the French attempt to recover Calais?
17. What addition was made to the dominions of France in the close of this reign?
18. Did John commit any imprudence on his accession?
19. What remarkable quarrel was left to the arbitration of Edward?

---

his tent than he sent for his nearest friends, and in their presence made over the entire grant on his four esquires, to whose valour and fidelity he declared himself indebted both for life and honour. When Edward was informed of this generosity he not only confirmed the former, but settled a new pension of greater amount on Audley, and afterwards spoke of him as the most perfect example of what a true knight should be.

20. Where was the duel fought?
21. How did the count of Marche obtain the victory?
22. In what manner did he act towards Visconti?
23. What evil consequence resulted?
24. What assassination was committed by Charles the Bad?
25. Of what treachery was John guilty?
26. Was it attended by any unfortunate result?
27. What English prince invaded France?
28. To what danger was he exposed?
29. Where did the two armies come to an engagement?
30. How were they arranged?
31. In what manner did the English archers behave?
32. How was the first line of the French thrown into confusion?
33. Why did not the third division of the French retrieve the day?
34. To whom did John surrender?
35. How was the captive monarch treated by the Black Prince?



King John riding into London.



King John.

## CHAPTER XVI.

## JOHN.—THE REGENCY.

Within that land was many a malcontent,  
 Who curs'd the tyranny to which he bent;  
 That soil full many a wringing despot saw,  
 Who work'd his wantonness in form of law;  
 Long war without, and frequent broil within,  
 Had made a path for blood and giant sin,  
 That wanted but a signal to begin  
 New havock, such as civil discord blends,  
 Which knows no neuter, owns but foes or friends.

BYRON.

1. THE situation of France after its monarch had  
 been taken prisoner, was the most miserable that can  
 be conceived; the dauphin was young and inexperi-  
 enced, the officers of the crown destitute both of wisdom and  
 patriotism, the nobility intent on serving themselves, the  
 generals robbing friend and foe under pretence of supporting  
 their troops, and the lower classes of the population, maddened  
 by oppression, ready to break out into open rebellion  
 When the dauphin assembled the States-general to consult

A. D.  
1356.

about the state of the kingdom, he heard nothing of the complaints of the administration; they refused to entrust him with the regency, and elected a council of fifty to take charge of the finances. 2. The rapacity of the new government surpassed all that had preceded it; the taxes were levied almost at discretion; those who refused to pay were cruelly tortured, and the nation became hostile to the States-general, which had sanctioned these exactions, and which protected the tax-gatherers in hopes of sharing their plunder. This afforded prince Charles an opportunity of shaking off the yoke of parliamentary control, which he eagerly embraced; aided by a numerous body of the nobility, he expelled the council and assumed the reins of government. 3. But his authority was only nominal, every noble acted as if he were a sovereign in his own domains, every city became a little republic; the citizens of Paris armed themselves, chose as their leader a merchant named Marcel, and assumed hoods of mixed red and blue as the badge of those who defended the privileges of the city. The escape of the king of Navarre from prison made matters still worse; once at liberty, he recovered all his former dominions, and became so formidable that the dauphin was obliged to submit to whatever terms he thought proper to impose. 4. He was invited to Paris, and on his arrival there he made a long speech to the citizens on the hardships which he had suffered during his imprisonment, his zeal for the benefit of the state, and above all his great affection for the city of Paris. His flatteries had so great an effect on the citizens, that the dauphin found himself totally destitute of authority, and was obliged to submit to the insults offered by the wearers of the variegated hoods, who had chosen the king of Navarre as their patron. 5. On one occasion, Marcel, the leader of the mob, rushed into the presence of the dauphin, attended by his partizans, seized on three noblemen, whom he asserted had given bad advice, ordered them to be massacred on the spot, and then, going up to the prince, made him take off his hat and put on the parti-coloured hood.

A. D. 1358. 6. While the city was thus distracted by faction, a terrible insurrection of the peasantry broke out in the country, which threatened the most calamitous results. The nobility, who looked on their serfs as an inferior order of beings, treated them with the most savage cruelty; they also reduced several to slavery who had purchased their freedom from the king, until at length human nature could no



onger submit, and the peasants every where broke out into rebellion. They avowed their determination to exterminate every nobleman and gentleman, and they proceeded to execute their resolution with the sternest ferocity. The castles of their oppressors were stormed, their wives and children ruthlessly slaughtered, every noble who fell into their hands was tortured for their amusement, and in fine, every horror that could be expected from exasperated barbarians, was perpetrated. 7. This rebellion was called the *Jacquerie*, because, when the nobles plundered the peasants, they called in derision any one that complained, *Jacques bon homme* (good man James), not remembering that an injury, sharpened by an insult, is never forgiven or forgotten. At length the nobles of every party combined to check this wide-spreading evil, in the suppression of which, England, France, and Navarre, were equally interested. The *Jacquerie* was suppressed, but the country was left a desert.

8. Marcel was doomed to experience the truth of the assertion, that popular favour is an uncertain support; being suspected of an intention to admit the English into Paris, he was murdered in a popular commotion, and the crowds, who an hour before followed shouting in his train, saw with indifference his body dragged through the streets and suspended from a gibbet. 9. The party of the king of Navarre declined after the death of Marcel, but that monarch was more enraged than discouraged at the event. He assembled a numerous army, and assisted by two of the Black Prince's most celebrated generals, the captal of Busche, and Robert Knowles, an English knight, advanced to the walls of Paris; he closely blockaded the city, which was badly supplied with provisions, and thus brought France to the very brink of ruin. 10. But at this moment, when destruction appeared inevitable, the king of Navarre suddenly offered the most favourable terms of peace to the dauphin, and after this unaccount-  
A.D. 1360.  
 able change of sentiment, quietly retired to his own dominions.

11. During all this time, a nominal truce continued between the French and English, though it was not much regarded by the commanders of independent companies, and negotiations were in progress for concluding a treaty. The terms offered by Edward were sent over by the captive John to be submitted to the States-general, but they were so severe, that the assembly rejected them unanimously. 12. Edward, enraged at

this refusal, prepared for a new invasion of France; passing over to Calais with a numerous army, he advanced through the country without meeting any resistance, and at length pitched his camp at Montlehery, within seven leagues of Paris. But nothing could induce the dauphin to risk a battle, the calamities of Crécy and Poitiers were too fresh in his memory, and he permitted sir Walter Manny and some other daring spirits, to ride with impunity to the very barriers of Paris, and reproach the chivalry of France with cowardice. 13. The legate of the pope in vain solicited Edward to listen to the terms of accommodation, but a dreadful storm, which was believed to be a token of divine anger, proved a more efficacious monitor; and Edward sent to the dauphin a friendly invitation to appoint commissioners for finally terminating these destructive wars.

14. Deputies from the different contending parties soon assembled at Bretigny, and as all were anxious for peace, the articles were settled within a week. It was agreed, that three million crowns of gold should be paid for the ransom of king John, one-third immediately, and the remainder secured by hostages; that Edward should retain Calais and all his conquests in Guienne, that he should resign his claim to the crown of France, and that the allies on both sides should not be molested for the share they had taken in these wars. 15. As soon as the treaty was signed, John was brought over to Calais, and permitted to return to his dominions after an absence of four years. 16. He did not, however, long enjoy his freedom; his two sons, whom he had given as hostages to the English, broke their parole, and as they refused to return, John considered himself bound in honour to go back to his prison. His friends in vain attempted to change his resolution, he declared that, "If honour and truth were banished from the rest of the world, they ought still to be found in the bosom of kings." John returned to his old residence at the palace of the Savoy, then outside the walls of London,

and was received in the most friendly manner by Edward. 17. While he was endeavouring to settle all remaining subjects of dispute with the English monarch, he was suddenly attacked by a disease which proved mortal in a few days. His remains were escorted to the sea-side by a great number of the English nobility, and afterwards conveyed to the cemetery of Saint Denis, the usual burial-place of the French monarchs. 18. A little before

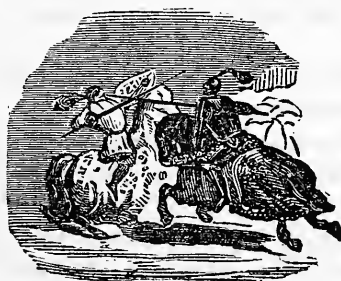
A. D.  
1364.

his return to England, the duchy of Burgundy reverted to the crown by the failure of heirs; and John granted it as a fief to his son Philip, surnamed the Hardy, who had so bravely fought beside his father at the battle of Poitiers; Philip soon after married the heiress of Flanders, and thus acquired so much additional power and influence, that the house of Burgundy soon became formidable rivals of the royal family of France.

---

*Questions.*

1. What was the state of France during John's captivity?
2. How did the government behave?
3. Whose escape from prison increased these evils?
4. In what manner did Charles of Navarre endeavour to conciliate the populace?
5. What insult was offered to the regent by Marcel?
6. By what new calamity was France assailed?
7. Why was this insurrection named the Jacquerie?
8. What became of Marcel?
9. Did his death put an end to the power of Charles the Bad?
10. What saved the state from ruin?
11. How was the war with England carried on?
12. Did Edward again invade France?
13. How was he induced to listen to proposals of accommodation?
14. On what conditions was peace granted?
15. How long was John a prisoner?
16. Why did he return to England?
17. Where did he die?
18. What reward did John give his son Philip for his valour at Poitiers?





Charles V.

## CHAPTER XVII

## CHARLES V., SURNAMED THE WISE.

Ill fated prince! on Crecy's glorious plain,  
Thou shouldst have fallen amid the heaps of slain;  
And not to pale disease a helpless prey,  
Felt lingering life too slowly waste away! CROOK.

1. CHARLES had shown great talents for politics during the regency, and his accession to the throne was hailed with joy by his subjects, who hoped to obtain some respite from the calamities with which they had been hitherto afflicted. Though this king never appeared at the head of his armies, yet it was to his prudent arrangements that they owed their numerous victories. He was also so fortunate as to obtain a general, whose skill and valour made him almost fit to be a rival of the Black Prince; this was the celebrated Bertrand du Guesclin, a knight of Brittany, one of the brightest orna-

ments of chivalry. 2. The king of Navarre and the duke of Brittany, not having been included in the treaty of Bretigny, continued to maintain a desultory warfare; the former principally relied on the valour of the captal of Buche, whom we have before mentioned; but the captal being defeated and made prisoner by du Guesclin, Charles of Navarre found himself no longer able to maintain a war against the king of France. Du Guesclin was next sent to support the cause of de Blois in Brittany, where the count de <sup>A. D.</sup> Montfort, aided by the talents of the English general, <sup>1364</sup> lord Chandos, had recovered most of his paternal possessions. In this expedition du Guesclin was in his turn defeated and made prisoner; but Charles turned even this misfortune to advantage, for when he learned that de Blois was killed in the battle, he put an end to the war by acknowledging Montfort as duke of Brittany, provided that he would hold the duchy as a vassal of France. By thus availing himself equally of victory and defeat, Charles was enabled to make peace with the sovereigns of Navarre and Brittany, and to obtain an opportunity for consolidating the strength of his kingdom, previous to his intended plan of re-conquering the provinces which had been wrested from France by the English.

3. France, however, was still laid waste by other enemies; a great number of military adventurers, whose only trade was war, had formed themselves into troops under different leaders, and supported themselves by levying heavy contributions on those parts of the country which they thought fit to visit. These banditti, whom the English called *free-companies*, and the French *malandrins*, were too numerous and formidable to be subdued by force, when it was attempted by James de Bourbon, a prince of the royal blood; he was defeated with great loss, and the companies be- <sup>A. D.</sup> <sup>1365.</sup> came in consequence worse than ever. 4. But a fortunate circumstance soon enabled Charles to get rid of these robbers, and at the same time to render an essential service to one of his most valuable allies.

Peter I. king of Castile, surnamed the *Cruel*, on his accession to the throne, had treacherously murdered his father's mistress, and by similar tyrannical deeds, had provoked the hostility of all his subjects; Henry, count Transtamora, his natural brother, resolved to avenge the wrongs of his mother and his country. But not being able to compete with his brother unaided, he sought the assistance of the king of

France, already irritated against Peter on account of his cruelty to his queen, a princess of the Bourbon branch of the royal family. On his arrival in France, Henry requested permission to take the *companies* into his pay; his request was cheerfully granted, and du Guesclin undertook to be their leader. He met the commanders of most of the bands, and set before them the great advantages of the expedition, exhorting them by every religious motive to atone for their own sins by punishing the impious Peter, who had been lately put



Bertrand du Guesclin.

under the ban of the church.

5. The free companies had been lately excommunicated themselves, and were eager to obtain absolution; the means, which under the guidance of du Guesclin they took to obtain it, give us a very strange picture of the times. Advancing under his guidance towards Avignon, where the pope resided, they threatened the pontiff and his court, unless they obtained the pardon of their sins, and a large contribution besides. The pope hesitated about complying with the latter part of their requisition, but the *companies* soon showed such a determination to enforce their demands, that his holiness was obliged to comply; and

the adventurers having thus obtained absolution and money, declared themselves ready to follow du Guesclin into Spain.

A. D. 1367. 6. Peter, deserted by his subjects, was unable to meet Henry in the field, and seeing no other means of safety, he fled across the Pyrenees to the prince of Wales, who was then in Guienne, seeking from him protection and assistance. 7. Edward, who envied the glory of Guesclin, unhesitatingly adopted the cause of Peter, and immediately led his army into Castile. At his approach, the "troops of the free companies," who almost adored the Black Prince, at once flocked to his banner; Henry was obliged to confide in the undisciplined forces of his own kingdom, and

these were unable to meet warriors who had been so long inured to battles. 8. At Najara, Henry was totally defeated, and du Guesclin taken prisoner. But the prince of Wales had no reason to rejoice in his victory; Peter refused to pay the expenses of the war, a fearful sickness broke out in the English camp, and Edward was obliged to retrace his steps, after having exhausted his funds, wasted his men, and irretrievably injured his constitution. He liberated du Guesclin, who again joined Henry in an invasion of Castile, when Peter was defeated and slain.

9. The prince of Wales had exhausted all his revenues in the Castilian expedition; on his return, he levied a tax on the provinces, which they refused to pay, and appealed to the king of France as their feudal sovereign. Charles received the appeal, and summoned Edward to appear A. D. 1369. in Paris and answer for his conduct. The prince of Wales refused to obey; in consequence of which, Charles declared that he had forfeited all the provinces that he held under the crown of France. 10. The war on this broke out afresh, and the English were every where unsuccessful. Their armies indeed laid waste the country and ravaged the fields as far as the gates of Paris, but the towns opened their gates to the troops of France; the peasantry concealed their provisions when Edward appeared, but readily yielded up their stores to the soldiers of Charles, and thus every victorious march became a real source of weakness. 11. Du Guesclin, who had been appointed constable of France, had been the first to suggest this harassing mode of warfare, and to him the management of it was entrusted. 12. At length, after having captured Limoges, Edward found himself so completely enervated by disease, that he was compelled to return to England, and though he lived three years longer, the state of his health prevented him from again seeing the theatre of his glory.\*

---

\* The premature decease of the Prince of Wales was looked upon by the English people as the greatest national calamity. His death is thought to have shortened the days of his royal father, and broke the heart of that renowned warrior, John de Grielly, capital de Buche, who refused all nourishment, and was impatient to follow his beloved master to the grave. The parliament, though in no very good humour, discovered the deepest concern for his death, and the highest veneration for his memory, by attending his remains to the cathedral of Canterbury, and by petitioning the king to introduce

13. When the Black Prince returned home, the English in France were overwhelmed by a long succession of misfortunes; the leaders of several companies who had been personally attached to Edward, when he was no longer present joined du Guesclin; their fleet, under the earl of A. D. 1372. Pembroke, was defeated by the Spaniards; the king of Navarre withdrew from their alliance; the capital of Buche fell into the hands of the French; and finally, a fleet which had been prepared for the relief of some towns that were besieged, was prevented from sailing by stormy weather until the towns had surrendered. 14. Du Guesclin died in the midst of his brilliant career, just after he had signed the capitulation of the fortress of Auvergne, which he was besieging. When the garrison heard of his death, they desired the governor to refuse a surrender, but he, faithful to his promise, brought the keys of the garrison, and laid them as a trophy at the feet of the departed hero.

15. During this period, war had been re-kindled in Brittany by the French king's attempt to annex that province completely to the French crown; but de Montfort, supported by the people, was enabled to maintain his duchy, and Charles seemed to be aware of the injustice of his attempt; for after his first vigorous efforts were defeated, he allowed the war to linger for a great length of time. Eventually, de Montfort, by the aid of the English, recovered all his dominions; and Charles directed his attention to the more honourable and useful task of driving the English from their remaining possessions in Guienne.

A. D. 1377. 16. The glories which had adorned the commencement of the reign of Edward III. were now vanished, he was broken down by misfortunes, and grief for the death of his gallant son "brought down his grey hairs with sorrow to the grave." His successor, Richard II., was a minor; the devastation of England by a pestilence, and the incursions of the Scots in the commencement of his reign, so weakened a government already distracted by the jealousies of the king's uncles, that no succour was sent to the English in France. 17. In a very short time Charles so improved his advantages, that out of all their brilliant acquisitions, there only remained in the possession of the English, the prince's only son, Richard, then only ten years old, into their assembly, that they might have the pleasure of beholding this only representative of their beloved prince.



Calais in Artois, Cherburg in Normandy, and Bordeaux in Guienne.

18. Charles of Navarre had attempted to poison the king of France while he was yet dauphin, he renewed the attempt after the expulsion of the English, A. D. 1378. dreading that the increased power of the king would be directed against his dominions. To effect this detestable design, he sent his son with several attendants on an embassy to Paris, but the meditated treachery was discovered; two knights who were charged with its execution were put to death, and the prince of Navarre, who seems not to have participated in his father's treason, was shut up in prison.

19. The king of France had long been wasting away; it was said that he never recovered the effects A. D. 1380. of the poison that had been administered in his youth, however the physicians kept him alive by opening an issue, declaring that when that dried up his case would be hopeless. When it did cease, Charles prepared himself for death with becoming fortitude, and in his last moments employed himself in directing his sons to persevere in the paths of justice and rectitude.

20. Charles appears to have merited the name of Wise, which has been given him by the French writers; the state of France in the beginning and end of his reign is the noblest testimony to his character; on his accession, he found the throne tottering, the people distracted, the best provinces in the possession of the enemy, and the country almost a desert; to his son he bequeathed a peaceful succession, a rich treasure, and, above all, subjects thriving and contented. How few princes merit such an eulogy!

---

### *Questions.*

1. By what excellent general was Charles the Wise assisted?
2. How did Charles equally avail himself of victory and defeat?
3. What class of men still devastated France?
4. How were they removed from the country?
5. In what manner did the free companies obtain absolution?
6. To whom did Peter the Cruel apply for assistance?
7. Why was Edward so ready to comply?
8. How did the expedition terminate?
9. What caused the war to be renewed between the English and French?

10. How did the French manage the war?
11. By whose advice was this plan adopted?
12. Why did the Black Prince return home?
13. What evils overtook the English after his departure?
14. What compliment was paid to du Guesclin after his death?
15. How did the war in Brittany terminate?
16. Why did the English lose their acquisitions in France?
17. What towns did they retain?
18. Did Charles of Navarre succeed in his attempt on the life of the king?
19. How did Charles the Wise die?
20. What was his character?



Citizens of Paris in the Reign of Charles V



Charles VI.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## CHARLES VI.

Unhappy king! even by thy pomp opprest,  
 Like some rude clown for royal pageant drest,  
 Who struts his hour of borrowed state, and then  
 Stripp'd of his robes to nothing sinks again—  
 How poor, how less than little art thou grown,  
 Mean in all eyes, and meanest in thine own.

MISS PORDEN.

1. THE last reign was short and prosperous, that on which we are about to enter was long and calamitous; <sup>A. D.</sup> 1380. the ambition of the young king's uncles, the licentiousness of the nobles, the madness of the king, the criminalities of his wife, and a new invasion of the English, produced a series of miseries, if possible worse than any we have hitherto narrated. Charles VI. was but thirteen years old at the time of his father's death, the regency was entrusted to his uncle the duke of Anjou, but the dukes of Burgundy

and Bourbon were jealous of his authority, and anxiously endeavoured to obtain a share in the government. For this purpose they compelled the regent to consent to the king's coronation, after which the States declared that Charles should himself assume the administration of affairs, and be guided by the counsels of his uncles.

2. Joanna, queen of Naples, having been driven from the throne by her cousin Charles Durazzo, had in revenge adopted the duke of Anjou as her heir, and soon after falling into the hands of her enemies, was strangled in prison. The duke of Anjou then resolved to assert his claim to the Neapolitan crown, and in order to obtain forces, he resolved to seize on the royal treasures which had been collected by the late monarch. These were concealed in the castle of Melun, and the secret of the place where they were deposited entrusted to a confidential servant named Savoisy. The duke prevailed on him to betray his trust, and having thus provided himself with funds, he levied an army, and led them across the Alps into Italy. 3. This expedition was singularly unfortunate, a few successes in the beginning were followed by such a rapid succession of reverses, that in a few months the duke of Anjou saw his baggage lost, his army destroyed, and himself reduced to such poverty, that of all his ill-gotten wealth, only a single silver goblet was left. He died soon after of vexation and disappointment, leaving his son Louis the inheritor of his pretensions.

4. This fruitless attempt proved the source of many calamities to France; a promise had been made to the people that they should be released from some of the severe taxes which had been levied during the last reign; but as the royal treasures were exhausted, instead of decreasing their burdens, the king found himself compelled to redouble the imposts, and thus produced universal dissatisfaction through the country.

5. The Flemings, for similar reasons, had revolted against their count; he appealed to the king of France for assistance

as his feudal sovereign, and through the influence of his son-in-law, the duke of Burgundy, who had succeeded the duke of Anjou in the management of affairs,

his request was readily granted. 6. Charles headed the army in person, a decisive battle was fought at Rosbec, in which the Flemings were defeated, and their leader, Arteveld, son to the former demagogue of the same name, slain. 7. Having triumphed over the insurgents in Flanders, Charles resolved

A. D.  
1382.



Battle of Rosbec.

to punish those in his own dominions, who, oppressed by a load of taxes, had been induced to commit several excesses. On his approach to Paris, the citizens went armed to meet him, hoping by this display of strength to inspire the monarch with fear. But they did at once too much and too little,—they convinced him that they were formidable subjects, but, by dispersing on the first summons, they left themselves and their city totally at his mercy. Charles entered Paris as a place which had been conquered; he dismantled its fortifications, broke down its gates and barriers, disarmed the inhabitants, and, without any form of trial, put to death more than three hundred of the factious by the gibbet, or by tying them up in sacks and throwing them into the river.

8. Having thus filled the city with terror, Charles summoned all the citizens of both sexes to a public assembly in the courts of the palace. There they were received by the king seated on his throne, and addressed on the subject of their manifold treasons by the Chancellor d'Orgemont, in terms so harsh and threatening, that the whole assembly expecting nothing but instant death, threw themselves on their knees, and earnestly supplicated for mercy. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy united in the petition, until at length Charles, as if moved with compassion, declared that he would

substitute civil for criminal punishment; in other words, that he would commit robbery instead of murder. 9. The end of this "tragic farce," as the French call it, was, that the Parisians were obliged to pay more than half their wealth in fines, and that the taxes were levied with greater severity than ever.

10. The duke of Burgundy, on the death of his father-in-law, had become count of Flanders, and endeavoured to conciliate his new subjects, whom commercial wealth had rendered haughty and turbulent. The greater part of the trade of Europe at this time centered in the Low Countries. Bruges especially was the depôt of commerce; the treasures of the east were brought thither from Italy by the Lombard merchants, and exchanged for the less costly, but more useful productions of northern and western Europe. Their manufactures, especially of woollen, were unrivalled; and the wealth which they acquired by their trade had given them a consequence and importance which made them proud and others jealous.

A. D.  
1385. 11. Through the influence of the duke of Burgundy, Charles was married to Isabella of Bavaria, a princess remarkable for her personal qualifications, and for every bad disposition which could render her charms pernicious. She brought innumerable misfortunes on her husband, her family, and the whole kingdom.

12. Under the weak and despicable government of Richard II., England had lost her former eminence, and the French, eager to revenge the calamities that had been inflicted on them by Edward III., resolved to invade that country. A great naval force was collected at Sluys, every vessel that could be purchased or hired between Sweden and Flanders was collected, and a huge wooden castle was constructed to be towed across the channel, an invention from which great advantages were anticipated. 13. But all these mighty preparations were rendered unavailing by the jealousy of the duke of Berry; unwilling that an expedition planned by his rival Burgundy should succeed, he detained the fleet at Sluys until the sea was no longer navigable; the stormy season came on, a great part of the armament was destroyed, and the wooden castle floating out to sea, fell into the hands of the English mariners. The project of an invasion was renewed in each of the two succeeding years, and was similarly defeated by the mutual quarrels of the king's uncles and the great nobles



Philip the Bold, John the Fearless, and Philip the Good, Dukes of Burgundy

14. During this period of ineffectual preparation, an instance occurred of the vengeance that overtakes <sup>A. D.</sup> the guilty even in this life. Charles the Bad, king of <sup>1386.</sup> Navarre, found at length a death worthy of his crimes. Worn out by debauchery, he endeavoured to restore vital heat to his limbs by wrapping himself in sheets soaked in spirits; by some accident these took fire; before any assistance could be obtained, the fire had reached his vitals; he lingered for a few days in the most excruciating agonies, and at length expired, to the great joy of every party by whom his secret treacheries were equally feared and detested.

15. When Charles had arrived at the age of man- <sup>A. D.</sup> hood, he became jealous of the power wielded by his <sup>1388.</sup> uncle, the duke of Burgundy, and determined to take the administration of affairs into his own hands. The duke, with a very bad grace, resigned the delegated authority, and had the mortification to see all his friends at once stripped of their offices, and their places supplied by the creatures of the duke of Orleans, the king's brother and most favoured adviser.

16. Oliver de Clisson, who had worthily succeeded du Guesclin in the office of constable, was the president of the king's council, and under his guidance affairs began to assume an aspect of tranquillity. But de Clisson had, by some ambitious projects, provoked the hostility of the duke of Brittany, a prince long suspected by the French court, on account of

the former connection between the Montforts and the English. A nobleman of infamous character, named de Craon, attempted to assassinate the constable in the streets of Paris, and believing that he had been successful, fled for safety to the count of Brittany. The protection given him by the duke afforded some ground of presumption that he had been the original instigator of the crime. De Clisson, who had been only wounded, called loudly for redress, and Charles, ever rash and impetuous, without waiting to make any inquiries, levied an army, and hastily marched towards Brittany.

A. D. 1392. 17. On a very hot day in the month of August, the king, wearing on his head a heavy cap of scarlet cloth, rode apart from his company, attended only by two pages. Weakened by the debaucheries of youth, and oppressed by a cumbrous dress, he passed slowly on, almost fainting beneath the rays of a sultry sun. Suddenly a tall spectre-like figure in black sprung from a neighbouring thicket, seized the king's bridle, and exclaimed, "Stop, king, whither are you going? you are betrayed." Having said these few words, he again disappeared among the trees. Nearly at the same time, one of the pages, whom the overpowering heat had inclined to slumber, let his lance fall against the helmet of his companion. This sudden clash of arms, combining with the recent warning, was too powerful for the mind of the unhappy monarch; in a moment he became raging mad, and drawing his sword, fell furiously on his servants. 18. With great difficulty he was overpowered and secured; his attendants fastened him with ropes on a cart, and in this piteous state he was conveyed to the nearest town. His uncles had him brought to Paris, and took on themselves the administration of affairs for some months; but on the king's recovery, the duke of Orleans again recovered his power, and thus commenced the hostility between the factions of Orleans and Burgundy, which had nearly caused the utter ruin of the nation.

A. D. 1393. 19. A strange accident soon after caused a return of the king's malady. At the marriage of one of the queen's attendants, the king and five young nobles resolved to appear in the character of savages; for this purpose they prepared dresses of coarse cloth, smeared with pitch, and then sprinkled over with loose flax. When they entered the saloon, the duke of Orleans took a torch to examine their dresses more closely; a spark fell on the flax, it imme



diately burst into flames, and a scene of indescribable confusion ensued ; four of the masques were burnt to death, a fifth escaped by plunging into a cistern of water : the king was saved by the presence of mind of the duchess of Berri, who threw a cloak over him, and kept him in a corner of the apartment until the flames were extinguished. This horrid scene produced a second fit of insanity, which, with a few lucid intervals, lasted during the rest of the king's unfortunate life ; prayers were offered up, and processions made, medicine and magic were both tried, but all the remedies that the wisdom of the age could suggest were equally inefficacious.

20. In one of the king's lucid intervals, a successful attempt was made to reconcile for a time the differences between France and England ; the sovereigns of both met near Calais, and agreed on a truce ; in consequence, Richard married the daughter of Charles, and resigned the towns of Brest and Cherburg. 21. An unfortunate event for the English monarch, as it increased the discontents among his subjects, who justly dreaded that these ports would again become nests of privateers, and harass the English trade.

22. The dukes of Orleans and Burgundy continued to contend for the supreme power, and their contests kept the court and the kingdom in constant agitation. The disputes of their wives aggravated their mutual hatred : the duchess of Burgundy, proud of her illustrious descent and immense wealth, looked down with contempt on Valentina of Orleans ; she, in her turn, confiding in her beauty and accomplishments, ridiculed the person of her haughty rival. The duchess of Orleans was universally esteemed one of the most charming women of the time ; she had so much influence over Charles, even in the most violent of his paroxysms, that her enemies attributed her power to magic. A truce of twenty-eight years had been concluded with the English, when the aid of the French was solicited by Sigismond, king of Hungary, against the redoubtable Bajazet, the Turkish sultan, and the count de Nevers, John sans Peur, (John the Fearless,) son of the duke of Burgundy, led a numerous army to his relief. This force was defeated beneath the walls of Nicopolis, and the flower of the warriors of France were slain or made prisoners on that fatal day. The count de Nevers was ransomed by the people of Burgundy for two hundred thousand crowns. At length the death of the duke of Burgundy, in 1404, seemed to have secured the triumph

A. D.  
1396.

A. D.  
1403.



John the Fearless before Nicopolis.

of Orleans, but he found the son and successor of his rival a still more formidable enemy than the father had been. 23. The queen was a warm partizan of the Orleans' party, she was indeed more than suspected of having carried her attachment to the duke beyond the bounds of innocence, and it is questionable whether she did him more service by the aid she afforded, or injury by the hostility which her crimes provoked. Her conduct as a mother and wife was infamous; the tutor of her children was unable to procure the common necessities of life for his charge, and when complaints were made to the wretched Charles, he replied, "Alas! I am not better treated." In fact, it appeared that he had passed

A. D. 1407. five months without a bed or a change of linen. 24. After the kingdom had been long distracted by the contending factions, an apparent reconciliation was effected between the rivals; the duke of Burgundy feigned a more than ordinary affection for his cousin of Orleans, lamented

the length of time that they had been disunited, and appeared anxious to drown the memory of former hostilities by continued marks of favour and kindness. But all this was preparatory to an act of execrable treachery. While the duke of Orleans was going one night to visit the queen, he was suddenly attacked by assassins, whom his rival had hired, and cruelly murdered.

25. After this horrid deed, the duke of Burgundy fled to his estates, and the widow of the deceased prince came to Paris, accompanied by her three children, to claim vengeance. The duke of Burgundy was, however, a criminal too powerful to be punished. When summoned to take his trial, he appeared at the head of an army; a monk whom he had hired, pleaded his cause before the council, but his soldiers were arguments still more powerful; he was acquitted and restored to all his former authority.

26. The young duke of Orleans had married the daughter of the count d'Armagnac, one of the most powerful nobles of Gascony, and as he gave himself up entirely to the directions of his father-in-law, the partizans of Orleans were for the future called Armagnacs. At first they were reduced to the very brink of ruin by the Burgundians, whose party was warmly embraced by the populace of Paris; the duke of Burgundy, by his immoderate use of victory, provoked the hostility of the nobles, and was compelled to give way in his turn. He fled to his estates, a royal army marched against him, and he was obliged to purchase peace on the most humiliating conditions.

A. D.  
1414.

---

### Questions.

1. Who was appointed to the regency on the death of Charles V.?
2. To what use did the duke of Anjou apply the royal treasures?
3. What was his success?
4. Did this produce any evil consequence in France?
5. Why did the Flemings revolt against their count?
6. Were they successful in their rebellion?
7. Why did Charles march in a hostile manner against Paris?
8. How did he treat the citizens?
9. In what manner was the business terminated?
10. How were the possessions of the house of Burgundy increased at this time?
11. To whom was the king of France married?
12. Did the French make any attempt to invade England?

13. How was it frustrated ?
14. In what misery did Charles of Navarre die ?
15. To what mortification was the duke of Burgundy subjected ?
16. What caused a war between the king and the duke of Brittany ?
17. By what strange accident were the king's senses affected ?
18. What caused the hostility between the houses of Orleans and Burgundy ?
19. How was the king's malady renewed ?
20. On what conditions was peace made between France and England ?
21. Why was the treaty displeasing to the English people ?
22. How was the hostility between the houses of Orleans and Burgundy aggravated ?
23. What was the character of the queen ?
24. Of what great crime was the duke of Burgundy guilty ?
25. Was he punished ?
26. How was the struggle between the factions continued ?



Ladies of the Fifteenth Century



Knight of the Fifteenth Century, in full Armour.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### CHARLES VI.—HENRY V. OF ENGLAND.

Hadst thou seen,  
 Skilful as brave, how Henry's ready eye  
 Lost not a thicket, nor a hillock's aid,  
 From his hensed bowman, how the arrows flew,  
 Thick as the snow flakes, and with lightning force,  
 Thou wouldst have known, such soldiers, such a chier,  
 Could never be subdued. SOUTHEY

1. WHILE the Armagnacs and Burgundians were exhausting themselves and their country by their bloody contests, the English were preparing to renew A. D. 1415

the glories of Edward, and make a second effort for the subjugation of France. The reign of Richard II. had been too weak, and that of the usurper Henry IV. too turbulent, for any attempts at so great an enterprise; but on the accession of Henry V. the whole English nation so passionately clamoured for an invasion of France, that Henry would probably have endangered his throne had he hesitated to comply. With no better excuse than the almost forgotten pretensions of Edward III. he published a declaration of war, and passing over into Normandy, laid siege to Harfleur. 2. The garrison made an obstinate defence for several months, but at length their provisions were exhausted; their supplications for assistance were disregarded by the government, and they were forced to surrender at discretion. 3. From Harfleur, Henry advanced through Normandy towards Calais, meeting with little or no resistance, but the heat of the weather and the quantities of rich fruits eaten by the soldiers, produced a pestilence in his camp, by which numbers of his soldiers were destroyed, and the rest greatly weakened.

Oct. 24, 1415. 4. In this calamitous situation, Henry was overtaken by the constable d'Albret, with an army eight times more numerous than his own, on the plains of Azincourt. It was late in the evening when the two armies came in sight of each other, and the engagement was consequently deferred to the following day. On the side of the French, there was confidence in strength and numbers, "they jested," says an old historian, "at those scarecrows of English who could scarcely sit on their famished horses." 5. Notwithstanding the disparity of forces, two anecdotes will serve to convince us that the English and their gallant sovereign were not totally destitute of hope. Henry sent a Welsh captain named David Gam, to bring him some account of the number of the French, and David returned with the following report, "May it please your majesty, there are enough to be killed, enough to be taken, and enough to run away." When Henry heard his brother wish for more men, he said, "I would not desire another: if we are to fall, I wish not that the loss of our country should be increased; if we are to win, the fewer that share our glory the better." 6. The morning of St. Crispin's day saw both armies prepared for the battle. The fight, though the odds were so unequal, was not long maintained by the French, they were defeated, as at Crécy and Poitiers, by the heavy fire of the archers,



The Duke of Orleans, taken Prisoner at Azincourt.

which drove their cavalry back on the infantry, and mingled both in remediless confusion. 7. The Duke of Orleans was one of the prisoners taken by the English. But the victorious army was unable to maintain its conquests; sickness and the climate were enemies not to be resisted, and Henry having with difficulty brought his shattered bands to Calais, returned home.

8. It would have been naturally supposed, that the presence of a public enemy would have checked the private dissensions of France; but on the contrary, they seem rather to have become worse in consequence. The two eldest sons of the king having died within a very short space, Charles, a sworn enemy to the house of Burgundy, succeeded to the title of Dauphin, and united himself in strict alliance with d'Armagnac, who on the death of d'Albret, had been appointed constable of France. The queen was the only person whose authority could counterbalance the weight of this party, and the constable resolved to remove her from his path. As she lived in the practice of open and avowed licentiousness, it was not difficult to find a pretence for putting her under arrest; one of her paramours was seized, convicted, and drowned, and she was sent as a prisoner to Tours. Thenceforward she was animated with the most implacable hatred against the constable, and against the dauphin her own son, whom, though only sixteen years old, she detested for having assented to her degradation.



Henry V. of England.

9. The imprisonment of the queen, the unhappy death of two dauphins, the deprivation of a great number of officers, the pillage of the open country by the unpaid soldiery, and the depredations of the Armagnacs, who even took the plate out of the churches, afforded the duke of Burgundy pretexts sufficiently specious for renewing the war, under pretence of liberating the king, and tranquillizing the nation. At the request of the queen he came to Tours and rescued her from captivity; thence he proceeded to Troyes, where the queen proclaimed herself regent, summoned an assembly of the states, and had a great seal made, on which her own figure was engraved. 10. In so favourable a conjuncture the English monarch was not remiss, he invaded Normandy a second time, and soon made himself master of the greater part of that province. And yet the constable was contented to see France dismembered by the English, rather than hazard its being governed by his enemy. 11. The citizens of Paris were become weary of a domestic war which



exhausted all their resources ; they had not forgotten their former attachment to the house of Burgundy, and the Armagnacs had on many occasions violated the privileges of the city ; for these reasons when l'Isle Adam, a partisan of the duke, appeared in the streets shouting, "Peace and Burgundy," he was immediately joined by such a numerous body of the citizens, that it was impossible for his enemies to make any resistance. 12. But the cry of peace was treacherous and delusive, a cruel slaughter of the Armagnac party commenced ; nor was it confined to them, every man that had a personal enemy was designated an Armagnac, and the name at once procured him to be murdered. The dauphin was saved with difficulty by a faithful friend ; but the count d'Armagnac, and the ministers of the crown, remained prisoners with an insurmountable mob, who knew not the name of mercy.\* They were all cruelly put to death, and with bitter mockery, the *erect*, or St. George's cross, was cut on their bodies, for that was the symbol of the Armagnacs, as the *oblique*, or St. Andrew's, was of the Burgundians.

13. The flight of the dauphin was the signal for civil war in every part of France ; while the English taking advantage of these dissensions, steadily pursued their career of victory, and subdued town after town without meeting any effective resistance. At length the duke of Burgundy A. D. 1419. made proposals to the dauphin for an accommodation, it was agreed that they should meet on the bridge of Montreuil, and a barrier was erected on it to protect both from the hostility of their mutual followers. Some friends of the murdered duke of Orleans took this opportunity to revenge his death ; leaping over the barrier in the midst of the conference, they fell on the duke of Burgundy and slew him. It is uncertain whether the dauphin had any share in this treacherous transaction, but its consequences nearly proved fatal to him and to his followers. 14. Philip, son of the murdered duke, assembled a numerous army, the queen joined him with her forces, and a peace was concluded with England, by which

---

\* These excesses, we are told by the old historians, were followed by the most brilliant processions ever seen. The murderers sought to palliate their crimes by associating them with religious ceremonies. The scarcity occasioned by the pillage and conflagrations in the environs of Paris, was followed by a contagious disease, which made such dreadful ravages, that, in the space of five weeks, fifty thousand of the citizens died.

it was stipulated that Henry V. should marry Catharine, the daughter of the French king, that he should be appointed regent during the life of Charles VI., that then the crown of France should devolve on Henry and his successors, and that no peace should be made with the dauphin without the consent of the two kings, the duke of Burgundy, and the three estates of the realm.



Catharine, Wife of Henry V. of England.

15. When this treaty had been completed, Henry A. D. 1420. and Charles proceeded together towards Paris, where the duke of Burgundy appeared before the council, and entered an accusation in form against the dauphin for the murder of his father. After the absent prince had been regularly summoned, sentence of confiscation and banishment was pronounced against him, and the succession of Henry formally recognized by the parliament and the council. 16. The following year, during Henry's absence in England, his army, under the command of his brother the duke of Clarence, was attacked by the dauphin's soldiers, under the guidance

of the earl of Buchan, a Scotch nobleman, while besieging Beange in Anjou. In this engagement the English were defeated and their general slain. 17. When the news reached Henry, he passed over into France with a fresh army, and used every exertion in his power to provoke the dauphin to come to an engagement; but that prince was too wise to hazard a battle, and the English monarch, after having exhausted his soldiers by long and fatiguing marches, gave up the pursuit and returned to Paris. 18. A little before this, his queen had been delivered of a son, to whom the name of his father was given. Henry made his triumphant entry into Paris on the day of Pentecost, <sup>A. D.</sup> 1422. but did not long enjoy his tranquillity; having learned that the dauphin meditated some fresh enterprises he marched against him, but on the road was seized with a disease which soon proved mortal: with his dying breath he appointed the cardinal of Winchester guardian of his infant son, the duke of Gloucester regent of England, and the duke of Bedford regent of France; particularly recommending the latter to use every possible means of retaining the friendship of the duke of Burgundy, on whose alliance he justly believed that the security of the English conquests in France depended.

19. In a few months after, died Charles VI. of France, who had been politically dead for several years past. He was buried in the cathedral of St. Denis, unattended to the tomb by any prince of his blood; even the duke of Burgundy was absent, as he did not think it consistent with his dignity to yield precedency to the duke of Bedford.

20. During this troubled reign, Europe was distracted by what is usually called "THE SCHISM OF <sup>A. D.</sup> 1378. THE WEST." The inhabitants of Rome had been long grieved by the continued residence of the popes at Avignon, and on the death of Gregory VI. they surrounded the conclave to demand a pope of their own nation, threatening to exterminate the whole college in case of a refusal. Urban VI. was chosen and consecrated, but soon after, rendering himself odious to a great body of the cardinals, they retired to Fondi, where they elected a second pope, Clement VII., under the pretence that the former election was void, in consequence of the force that had been used.

21. Thus there were two popes, one at Avignon and one at Rome, both claiming infallibility, and both excommunicating each other as heretics and schismatics. This disgrace-

ful exhibition continued for forty years; all Europe was divided as the potentates happened to be led either by prejudice or interest. France embraced the cause of Clement and his successors, but England and Germany asserted the cause of Urban and the popes chosen in Rome; a division that not a little exasperated national animosities.

22. While these two pontiffs thundered curses and anathemas against each other, engaged in a most furious war distracted the consciences of men, and disturbed the government of kingdoms, each of them reckoned a number of saints on their side, of whose revelations and miracles they boasted as proofs of the goodness of their cause. St. Catharine of Sienna wrote every where in favour of Urban, and in her letter to the king of France, called the cardinals who were favourers of Clement, *devils incarnate*. Such a powerful authority required a counterpoise, and some miraculous claims equally strong were opposed to it; but the greatest miracle would have been to act with temper, a miracle which it is scarce necessary to add was not exhibited.

A. D. 1414. 23. At length the sovereigns of Europe combined to put an end to what they justly deemed a scandal on religion; and a council being assembled at Constance, both popes were deposed, and Martin V. elected in their stead. 24. But the council sullied the glory that they obtained by thus putting an end to the schism. They summoned John Huss and Jerome of Prague to appear before them on a charge of having broached heretical doctrines, and notwithstanding the emperor's safe-conduct, condemned them to the flames. They also refused to make any of those reforms in the church which the general wishes of Europe and the increasing knowledge of the age demanded, and thus they prepared a way for the great religious revolution which was about to commence in a succeeding century. 25. Neither were the followers of Huss in Bohemia reduced to submission, they took up arms in defence of their liberties, and maintained a desperate war against their oppressors. Their general, John Trasnow, surnamed Ziska or the One-eyed, defeated his antagonists in several engagements; on his death-bed he gave orders that a drum should be made of his skin, to inspire the soldiers with courage. At length a peace was concluded, by which the privileges of the Bohemians were confirmed, and freedom of religious worship conceded to the Hussites.

26. The reign of Charles VI. is also remarkable for the first

appearance in Europe of that extraordinary people who have been called Zingeys, Bohemians, or Gypsies; <sup>A. D. 1417.</sup> it is not easy to account for their origin, but the most probable opinion appears to be, that they were an Indian tribe expelled from their country by some of the revolutions which have taken place in that country. They certainly were not Egyptians, as has been generally supposed; for in language, dress, and manner of life, they are totally different from any people that ever inhabited Egypt. They were soon treated as a proscribed race, and, like the Jews, persecuted wherever they appeared; but, like that people, they survived persecutions, and their descendants still continue to exist as a distinct people in many parts of Europe.

### *Questions.*

1. Why did Henry V. renew the war with France?
2. What town did he first besiege?
3. Why was it surrendered?
4. In what situation were his soldiers when overtaken by the French army?
5. From what circumstances does it appear that the English army were not dismayed by the superior forces of the enemy?
6. What were the circumstances of the engagement?
7. Why did the English not follow up their victory?
8. How did the faction of the Armagnacs obtain a temporary superiority?
9. Did their rivals, the Burgundians, acquire any advantage?
10. How did the English take advantage of these dissensions?
11. Who headed the Burgundian party in Paris?
12. In what manner did the Burgundians use their victory?
13. How was the duke of Burgundy slain?
14. What was the consequence of this murder?
15. Was Henry's title to the French crown recognised publicly?
16. By whom were the English defeated?
17. How did the dauphin baffle the English monarch?
18. To whom did Henry bequeath the government of his dominions?
19. For what was the funeral of Charles VI. remarkable?
20. How did the schism of the west commence?
21. Where did the rival popes hold their courts?
22. How did they endeavour to obtain partisans?
23. By what council was this schism terminated?
24. Were all the proceedings of the council of Constance equally honourable?
25. Were the Bohemian protestants dispirited by the loss of their pastors?
26. What strange people, during this reign, appeared in Europe?



Charles VII.

## CHAPTER XX.

## CHARLES VII., SURNAMED THE VICTORIOUS.

Thus the French,  
 In bright array, and high in confident hope,  
 Await the signal; whilst with other thoughts,  
 And anxious awe, once more the invading host  
 Prepare them in the field of fight to meet  
 THE MAID OF ORLEANS.

SOUTHEY.

1. NOTHING could be more deplorable than the prospects of Charles VII. when, by his father's death, he became the lawful monarch of France. All the provinces from the Scheld to the Loire and the Saone, were possessed by the Burgundians and the English, the duke of Brittany deserted him, his treasury was so low that a shoemaker refused to give him credit for a pair of shoes, and his favourite general, the earl of Buchan, had fallen into the hands of his enemies. His infant rival, Henry VI., was peace-

A. D.  
 1422.

ably crowned at Paris, most of the great cities sent their deputies to swear allegiance to the English, and the wise administration of the duke of Bedford seemed to have reconciled the French to an English government. 2. Charles himself appeared to have lost all hope, for, neglecting public affairs, he gave himself up to indolence and dissipation; his friends in vain endeavoured to inspire him with better thoughts, and one of them, when asked his opinion of some festival which engaged the attention of Charles, replied, "Sire, I do not believe it possible for any one to lose a kingdom with greater gaiety."

3. This state of affairs was first disturbed by the mad ambition of the duke of Gloucester, who had married Isabella, countess of Hainault, while her husband, the duke of Brabant, was alive, and had taken up arms to obtain possession of her dominions. Such a proceeding greatly displeased the duke of Burgundy, who was cousin-german to the injured husband, and the war which took place between him and Gloucester inspired the Burgundian with a distaste for the English, which all the skill of the duke of Bedford was unable to remove. The war terminated when the pope declared Jacqueline's second marriage null and void, but the jealousies to which it had given rise were never effaced. 4. Orleans was now the only town of im-

A. D.  
1429.

portance which Charles possessed, and it was closely besieged by the Earl of Salisbury. Charles, unable to relieve the town, was preparing to yield to his unhappy fate, and retire into Dauphiny, but he was diverted from this disgraceful course by the exhortations of his mistress, the celebrated Agnes Sorel, a woman whose many virtues in some degree atone for her single crime. 5. The garrison of Orleans proposed to surrender the town to the duke of Burgundy, to be held in trust for their duke, who had been a prisoner in England ever since the fatal battle of Agincourt; but this proposal was rejected by the besiegers, and thus a new cause of jealousy arose between the dukes of Burgundy and Bedford. The earl of Salisbury was killed by a cannon-shot while directing the siege, but this loss was compensated by the total defeat of the French army while endeavouring to intercept a convoy of herrings that were being conveyed to the English camp. 6. When Orleans almost approached its ruin, and no hope seemed to appear in any quarter, the town was saved, and the fortunes of Charles restored by one of the most ex-

traordinary revolutions recorded in history. A young girl, about eighteen years of age, called Joan of Arc, declared herself commissioned by heaven to rescue Orleans, and have Charles crowned at Rheims. It is not easy to determine whether she was an enthusiast or an impostor; it is probable that, like Mohammed and many others, she united both characters. Her pretensions were at first derided, but Charles, in the unfortunate posture of his affairs, eagerly caught at the first glimpse of hope, and summoned her to his presence. 7. On this occasion she is said to have given miraculous proofs of her vocation; she discovered the king, though disguised, amidst a crowd of courtiers; she pointed out a place in a church where a sword, ornamented with the cross and the arms of France, had been concealed for time beyond human memory, and the king declared that she had discovered to him a secret known to himself alone. In short, as the delusion or imposture was likely to be of service, no means were left untried to confirm its authority.

8. Armed with the miraculous sword, and displaying a consecrated banner, the Maid of Orleans, as she is usually called, advanced against the English with an army whom enthusiasm had made irresistible. The siege of Orleans was raised, and the English, who believed that they had to contend against a supernatural enemy, began to lose their conquests with greater rapidity than they had been gained. 9. Her next exploit was one of equal difficulty and importance; she escorted Charles safely to Rheims almost through the very midst of his enemies, and personally assisted at his coronation. As a reward for these services, Joan and her family were ennobled; she now declared, that as the objects of her mission were accomplished, she would again return to private life, but allowed herself to be persuaded that it was her duty to remain until the English were totally banished from France. Ere long she had cause to repent this change in her resolution; Compeigne being besieged by the Burgundians, the heroine threw herself into the place with some of her devoted followers, and by her means the town was enabled to make a successful defence. 10. But the governor, jealous that his honours should be shared with a woman, closed the barriers against her as she was returning from a successful sally, and thus Joan fell into the hands of the Burgundians, who sold their prisoner to her inveterate enemies the English.





Coronation of Charles VII.

11. The duke of Bedford, enraged that the wise plans and labours of himself and his deceased brother <sup>A. D.</sup> should have been baffled by a female, refused to treat <sup>1431.</sup> the Maid of Orleans as a prisoner of war; a species of ecclesiastical tribunal was appointed for her trial at Rouen, and there she was accused of sorcery, heresy, and unchastity. 12. The only charge proved against her was that she had worn the dress of a man, and consequently her judges could not with any appearance of justice condemn her to death; they sentenced her to perpetual imprisonment—in their own expressive words—“to drink the cup of sorrow and eat the bread of affliction,” adding, that if she were to be again detected wearing the dress of a man, death would be the certain consequence. 13. The latter part of the sentence suggested to her enemies a piece of execrable cruelty; they left in her prison several articles of male attire, and watched for the moment when she would be tempted to try them on. The event answered their expectation; in an unguarded moment the maid put on some portion of a warrior’s dress, she was

dragged a second time before the barbarous tribunal, condemned, and burned to death in the streets of Rouen. 14. In her last moments she protested her innocence, and appealed to Heaven for vengeance on her persecutors. She is said by some to have prophesied that God would punish the nation

which had thus murdered the innocent; if so, the expulsion of the English from France, and their subsequent sufferings in the civil wars between the houses of York and Lancaster, were an ample fulfilment of her prediction.

15. Twenty-five years after her death, tardy justice was done to her memory; Charles directed the proceedings on her trial to be subjected to the higher courts in Paris, by whom they were unanimously set aside as illegal and unjust.

16. \*The forces and treasures of both na-  
A. D. 1435.  
 tions being exhausted by the length of the war, little of importance was attempted on either side for

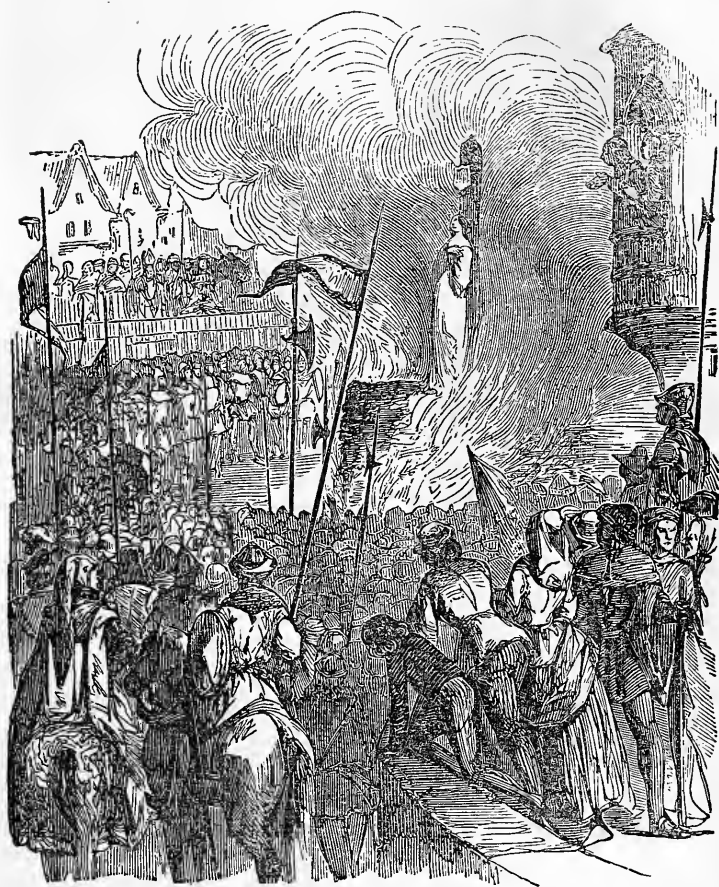


Monument of Joan of Arc.

some years. But the English power at length met two unexpected misfortunes, which soon destroyed all the effects of their former victories. The first of these was a reconciliation between the king of France and the duke of Burgundy, the second was the death of the duke of Bedford, whom vexation and grief for this unexpected event hurried to his

---

\* The wars had so depopulated the country, that wolves and other beasts of prey infested even the city of Paris. In 1437 they entered the city by the river, and devoured fourteen or fifteen persons. In the following year they appeared again, killed four women and severely bit seventeen other individuals, of whom eleven died of their wounds. There was one formidable wolf in particular, called *Courtand*, because he had no tail, that became an object of universal dread. When any person was leaving the city, it was said, "*gardez vous de Courtand*," which afterwards passed into a proverb.



Death of Joan of Arc.



grave. Paris opened her gates to Charles, city after city followed the example of the capital, England became distracted by civil war, and in a few years nought remained of all their boasted conquests but Calais.

17. The kingdom had been scarcely freed from the evils of a foreign enemy, when Charles found his quiet disturbed by the artifices and cabals of his eldest son Louis. This prince, who was a monster of depravity, had employed assassins to murder a nobleman against whom he had conceived some personal dislike. When the attempt was discovered, Charles reproved the treachery of his son in severe terms, and Louis, impatient of control, retired from the court with a firm resolution never again to be subject to his father's power. He is accused, but rather from his general character than from any definite proofs, of having poisoned Agnes Sorel, the beloved mistress of his father; but his character is sufficiently blackened by undeniable crimes, without those which at best have no foundation but suspicion.

18. The people of Guienne, and especially the citizens of Bordeaux, had been always remarkable for their attachment to the English; after they had remained for some time subject to Charles, they became wearied of a government which disregarded their privileges and loaded them with oppressive taxes. Deputies were sent to England, entreating Henry VI. to receive them again under his protection, and to send them a body of forces to assist in the expulsion of the French. 19. Talbot, the most celebrated general of the period, was sent to Guienne with a strong body of forces. At first he obtained several victories, and reduced the greater part of the province, but Charles having assembled all the forces of the kingdom, overpowered the little army of the English near Castillon. Talbot and his gallant son were slain, the greater part of their soldiers either killed or made prisoners, and no means of resisting the power of Charles remained. Bourdeaux surrendered after a short siege, several of its inhabitants were banished, two castles called the Chateau Trompette, and the Chateau-Ha, were erected to control the rest, and thus Guienne and Aquitaine were irrevocably united to the crown of France.

20. When Louis the dauphin had withdrawn from his father's court, he retired to his own province, Dauphiny; but there his cruelties and exactions were so intolerable, that his subjects were compelled to appeal to the king. Charles sent Dammartin to arrest his disobedient son,

A. D.  
1445.A. D.  
1452.A. D.  
1456.

but Louis, having obtained notice of his approach, fled to the territories of the duke of Burgundy, who received him with all the respect due to the son of his sovereign. Charles sent frequent embassies to the duke, requiring him to withdraw his protection from the dauphin, warning him that "he nourished a serpent who would repay his hospitality by attempting his life." The Burgundian would not listen to these remonstrances, although he knew that Louis had excited his own son, the count of Charolois, to acts of rebellion. Charles was

A. D.  
1461. so exasperated against Louis, that he was with difficulty prevented from disinheriting him, and transferring the right of succession to his second son. 21. But in the midst of his deliberations, he received positive intelligence that his domestics had been bribed to poison him by his unnatural son. His apprehensions became so great, that not knowing from whose hand he could receive food with safety, he abstained from eating for several days; at the end of that time it was no longer in his power to swallow, and thus his death was accelerated by his precautions. He died in the 59th year of his age, and 39th of his reign; having, by a series of favourable chances, overcome so many dangers and difficulties, that he would have deserved the epithet of Fortunate, had he been blessed with a different father and a different son.

22. The wars in this reign show us that the spirit of chivalry was fast declining. We meet no traces of that individual heroism which throws such a romantic interest over the history of Edward's invasion, and Azincourt was the last great battle in which the superiority of the English archers was made available. Fire-arms were gradually superseding the use of the bow, and cavalry, which had been hitherto the most important part of an army, was, by the new system of warfare, considerably diminished in value. These changes in the art of war had a considerable influence on the political condition of society: for the knights and small proprietors, who had hitherto possessed great influence by the importance of their services, sunk all at once when these were performed by hired soldiers. The authority of the feudal aristocracy was thus destroyed: in England it was transferred to the members of the house of commons, and thus secured for that country the blessings of a free constitution; but in France it centered in the crown, and thus the government became an absolute monarchy.

*Questions.*

1. What was the situation of Charles VII. at the time of his father's death?
2. In what manner did Charles behave?
3. How was the misconduct of the duke of Gloucester injurious to the English?
4. By whom was Charles instigated to defend his kingdom?
5. What occurred at the siege of Orleans?
6. By whom was the town saved?
7. What proofs of a divine mission did the Maid of Orleans pretend to give?
8. Did the French derive any advantage from this deception?
9. Were the services of the Maid of Orleans limited to raising the siege?
10. How was Joan of Arc betrayed?
11. In what manner was she betrayed by the English?
12. Of what crimes was she accused?
13. How was sentence of death procured?
14. Did any thing remarkable occur at her execution?
15. Was justice ever done to her memory?
16. What misfortunes did the English soon after experience?
17. How did Louis the Dauphin conduct himself?
18. What part of France was anxious to remain under the government of the English?
19. How did the expedition in their favour terminate?
20. Where did the Dauphin reside when he left his father's court?
21. What caused the death of Charles?
22. Does there appear to have been any change in the mode of warfare introduced about this time?



Robert, Count of Clermont, Son of St. Louis, and Ancestor of Henry IV., with the Lady of Bourbon, Wife of Robert.



Louis XI.

## CHAPTER XXI.

## LOUIS XI.

Not serve two masters? here's a man will try it;  
 Will still serve God, yet give the devil his due;  
 Says grace before he does a deed of villany,  
 And returns thanks devoutly when 'tis acted.

SCOTT.

**A. D.**  
**1461.** 1. THE conduct of Louis XI., while dauphin, towards his father and his subjects in Dauphiny, sufficiently proved to the people of France, that his accession to the throne would be any thing but desirable. He seemed to have some misgivings on the subject himself, for when he heard the news of his father's death, he came to Paris escorted by the duke of Burgundy and his son, with about fourteen thousand horse. He treated his subjects as if they were a conquered people; he deprived of their situations every officer that his father had appointed, took a malicious pleasure in undoing every thing that had been done in



the former reign, limited the provision made for his brother, loaded the people with taxes, plundered the nobles, and insulted the clergy.

2. These proceedings naturally provoked the hostility of his subjects; an alliance was formed against Louis, called the *league of the public good*, but in which every leader sought merely his own private advantage. The duke of Berri, brother to the king, looked for a larger *appanage*,\* the dukes of Bourbon and Brittany wished for an enlargement of their dominions, the count of Saint Paul desired the office of constable, and the counts of Armagnac and Damartin sought the restitution of their estates. At the head of this confederacy was Charles, count of Charolois, the former friend and future rival of Louis; the friendship that they had professed in the court of Burgundy while Louis was an exile, had changed into the most bitter enmity, and indeed mutual hatred appears to have been the necessary consequence of the character of both. 3. Charles was headstrong, impetuous, and self-willed, unable to disguise or control his violent passions, ambitious of glory, regardless of consequences, but possessing many redeeming qualities of the soldier, for he was frank, sincere, candid, and generous. Louis, on the other hand, was a consummate master of hypocrisy; his manners were gentle, kind, and insinuating; he never forgave, but he could dissemble his hostility until a moment favourable for its display had arrived; he felt more pride in having overreached an enemy than in winning a battle; fraud and perjury were his favourite weapons, and few have ever wielded them with equal dexterity; he had no confidence in men, for he believed that all were hypocrites like himself. Both the rivals were harsh, cruel, and unprincipled, but the unthinking Charles broadly exhibited his faults to the public, while Louis disguised them under an affected appearance of humility, which rendered him less suspected but more dangerous. It is a strange part of this monarch's character, that he was the most credulous as well as the most crafty of mankind, he devoutly believed in all the absurdities of judicial astrology, and usually had several professors of this pretended science in his train; he was a complete devotee in all the forms of worship, frequently confessing himself to his chaplain, and addressing prayers to the leaden images of the saints with which he had adorned his dress. His favourite companions were selected from the lowest

---

\* Property assigned for the support of a younger son.

grade of society ; indeed the character of Louis and his court may be sufficiently determined by the fact, that his principal favourites were Oliver Dain his barber, and Tristan l'Hermite, the public executioner.

4. The count of Charolois without waiting for his allies advanced towards Paris, and Louis eager to save his capital, hastened to reach it before his rival. The two armies met at Mont l'Hery ; both were anxious to avoid an engagement, but the seneschal of Normandy, one of the leaguers, precipitated a battle, and was himself one of the first that fell. From the description given us of this fight, it appears to have been the most extraordinary that ever took place, the greater part of both armies ran away, and when night separated the combatants, each believed himself defeated. It was proposed in the Burgundian camp to take advantage of the night in order to make good their retreat, and they were not a little surprised in the morning to find themselves masters of the field. 5. "This unexpected victory," says Philip de Comines, "was the source of all the calamities which the count of Charolois afterwards experienced, for it inspired him with so much confidence in his own skill and prowess, that he disregarded all advice." 6. Louis retired to Paris, and there began to practise the counsel given him by his ally, Sforza, duke of Milan ; the crafty Italian had recommended him to promise the leaguers all that they demanded, and then, after they had disbanded their troops, to sow causes of dissension among them, and attack them in detail. This was just the plan which Louis was calculated to execute, he made a truce with the leaguers, went into the hostile camp, and pretended to feel a wonderful revival of affection for the count of Charolois ; he made similar demonstrations of esteem to all the principal leaguers, and expressed the utmost anxiety to regain their friendship on any terms short of resigning his crown. 7. The treaty was accelerated by an unexpected event, which made Louis consent to the article which he had hitherto most pertinaciously refused. The leaguers insisted on the duchy of Normandy as an *appanage* for the king's brother, and Louis dreading that the possession of such an important province might prove a step to the crown, had rejected the proposal ; but while the matter was still a subject of negotiation, the Normans, eager to obtain provincial independence, everywhere opened their gates to the forces of the league. When the news reached the king, he resolved to make a merit of granting what he could no longer withhold, and immediately signed the treaty.

8. The policy of Sforza's advice soon appeared: the duke of Brittany wished to rule over Normandy in the name of its new duke; Berri was unwilling to permit him, and this quarrel nearly caused the ruin of both. Louis marched his forces towards Caen, and summoned the duke of Brittany to appear before him: that prince, terrified and surprised, consented at the conference to resign into the king's hands all the towns that his soldiers garrisoned in Lower Normandy. The remainder of the province yielded either to threats or violence, and the duke of Berri, destitute of friends, money, spirit, or counsel, thought himself happy in escaping with his life to the court of Brittany. Normandy enjoyed its qualified independence only two months, but the desire shown to obtain it cost the life of several of its nobles, whom Louis put to death without any of the formalities of justice. 9. The count of Charolois was very indignant when the news of these proceedings reached him, but Louis had provided employment for him at home, by stirring up the factious citizens of Liege and Ghent to rebellion. While the count was reducing the insurgents to obedience, his father died, and he succeeded to the immense riches and resources of the duchy of Burgundy. The citizens of Ghent and Liege were forced to submit to very severe terms, and the young duke having increased his treasury, by exacting from them heavy pecuniary punishments, prepared to turn his attention to France, where Louis was rapidly recovering all that he had resigned at the peace.

10. The king had made a furious irruption into Brittany: several of the frontier towns had submitted A. D. 1468. to his arms, when news reached his camp, that Charles of Burgundy with a gallant army was rapidly advancing towards the Somme. Before his arrival, the leaguers, unable to make any effective resistance, had made terms with the king; a piece of news which so surprised and enraged Charles, that he was with difficulty prevented from hanging the herald who brought him the intelligence. 11. Louis was naturally anxious to get rid of his vigorous rival, whose presence at the head of an army gave encouragement to all the discontented spirits of the kingdom. For this purpose, by the advice of the cardinal Baluë, he took the most extraordinary step that can be imagined. Relying on his own superior address, he resolved to pay a personal visit to Charles in Peronne, attended only by four or five followers, hoping that he would thus be enabled to divert his attention to other objects, or to excite jealousy between him and the confederates. 12. But, a few

days before his journey, Louis had sent emissaries to excite another rebellion in Liege, and in his hurry either forgot to countermand them, or persuaded himself that the insurrection would not break out during his visit. On his arrival at Peronne, he was alarmed at meeting in the court of Charles several nobles whom his tyranny had banished from France ; to save himself from their vengeance, he entreated to be lodged in the citadel, and thus voluntarily threw himself into prison.

13. Meantime the people of Liege had broken out into a fierce rebellion, murdering the Burgundian officers and several of the clergy, whom they deemed hostile to their civic privileges. When this news reached Peronne, Charles became furious with indignation ; he shut the gates of the town, thus making Louis a close prisoner, and was with difficulty prevented from proceeding to farther outrages. 14. For three days Louis remained in terrible suspense, but he did not forget his accustomed arts ; he bribed with large sums and larger promises, all those courtiers whom he supposed likely to have any influence over the mind of Charles, and amongst the rest, Philip de Comines, to whom we are indebted for this narrative. At length Charles consented to be pacified ; a new treaty was made, by which several counties were annexed to Burgundy, and it was further stipulated, that Louis should personally assist the duke in the reduction of Liege. 15. The anger and disappointment both of the king and Charles were vented on that unfortunate place ; it was taken by storm, the greater part of its inhabitants were put to the sword, and of those that escaped, many subsequently perished by cold and famine.

16. The people of Paris were infinitely amused at the manner in which Louis had outwitted himself by too much artifice, and taught all their magpies to cry out *Peronne, Peronne*. But the king punished them for their jest, by ordering all the tame animals which were kept as pets through the city to be put to death. The cardinal Baluë, who was suspected of secret intelligence with the duke of Burgundy, was arrested and confined in an iron cage, a punishment that he well merited, as he was the original inventor of such a barbarous torture.

A. D. 1472. 17. The king persuaded his brother to take the duchy of Guienne instead of the provinces bordering on Burgundy, that had been agreed on at Peronne. The inhabitants of Guienne and Gascony still remembered their national independence with regret, and intrigued with

their new duke to throw off the yoke of France. But the duke of Guienne was taken off by poison as soon as the king, his brother, perceived that he was listening to these suggestions; and a French army came and besieged, in Lectoure, count John of Armagnac, who evinced the most activity in the old Gascon interest. The town was taken by assault and given up to fire and sword, the count perished in the massacre; and his wife, in the seventh month of her pregnancy, was compelled to take a beverage to produce abortion, of which she died herself in two days. Finally, James d'Armagnac, duke of Nemours, who harboured, or was supposed to harbour similar designs, was decapitated at Paris; and his children were placed under the scaffold, that their father's blood, dropping on their heads, might warn them never again to attempt war against the king of France.

18. The impetuous duke of Burgundy frequently renewed the war with Louis, and as frequently was bribed to grant fresh truces; the constable Saint Paul, who had possessed himself of some towns on the confines of Burgundy, exasperated the animosities of both parties, foreseeing that their agreement would prove his destruction. Equally distrusted by the king and the duke, he dealt out impartial treachery to both, and made his eventual destruction certain, though, by his artifices, it was for some time deferred. The insatiable ambition of Charles involved him in wars with the German princes and with the Swiss, but his hatred of Louis was the principal guide of his actions. Though he mortally hated the house of York, yet he accepted the "order of the garter" from Edward IV., and invited him to invade France, promising that he would aid him with all his forces. 19. Edward, glad of such a pretence for levying money on his subjects, with whom a French war was always popular, passed over to Calais. The duke of Burgundy failed to appear at the rendezvous, and when he arrived after a long delay, he was unable to furnish his quota of troops. 20. The constable had promised that he would surrender Saint Quentin to the duke's allies, but when the forces of Edward came before the town, they were fired on and compelled to retire. These circumstances furnished Edward with an honourable excuse for putting an end to the war, of which he was already weary, and the liberal offers of Louis were not less influential motives. In fact, the French king literally bribed Edward and his principal nobility, who for several years after disgracefully continued the pensioners of France. 21. The two monarchs

A. D.  
1475.

had an interview at Pequigni, in which the terms of a treaty were soon arranged; but the duke of Burgundy was so indignant that he refused to be comprehended in it, yet afterwards being eager to continue his unjust war on the Swiss and the princes of Lorraine, he concluded a truce with Louis.

22. The constable St. Paul saw now that his ruin was inevitable, he fled as a last resource to the court of Burgundy, but Charles delivered him up to the king, who instantly ordered him to be executed.

23. The success of the war that Charles waged against the Swiss was proportioned to its injustice, he was defeated  
 A. D. at the battle of Granson with great loss, and the follow-  
 1477. ing year he lost his army and his life together at the still more fatal field of Morat, by the treachery of an Italian officer, the count of Campobasso. This traitor had been long attached to the house of Lorraine, of whom Charles was a bitter enemy; he had sworn the destruction of his unhappy master, and had almost openly bargained for his assassination. Charles, with almost inconceivable credulity, continued to trust him, though warned of his treachery; and when Louis sent him word to beware of the Italian, the unhappy duke declared the letter to be the strongest proof of Campobasso's fidelity: for, said he, "if evil were designed, Louis would be the last to send me warning." Scarcely had the armies of Lorraine and Burgundy met on the field of Morat, when Campobasso deserted with his followers, leaving behind him fourteen desperadoes to assassinate the duke in the confusion. Dismayed by this unexpected defection, the Burgundians gave way at the first onset; after the slaughter, rather than the battle, was over, Charles was found lying under a heap of slain, so disfigured with wounds that he could scarcely be recognised. 24. His generous enemy, the young duke of Lorraine, when shown the dead body, took hold of his once formidable right hand, and pronounced these simple words, "God rest thy soul! thou hast caused us much evil and sorrow." He then ordered his body to receive an honourable interment. The Swiss were so little accustomed to articles of luxury, that they did not know the value of the rich plunder found in the Burgundian camp, and it is said that they sold the silver vessels found there as pewter.

25. The death of his rival left Louis without a competitor, he at once seized on several towns of Burgundy, though at the same time honourable means were offered to him of obtaining the whole; for the princess Mary, daughter and heiress

of the unfortunate Charles, offered to unite her dominions to those of France by a marriage with the dauphin. But Louis seemed to despise possessions acquired honestly; he was even base enough to betray the letters of the young princess to the factious citizens of Ghent, who were her masters rather than her subjects. In consequence of this perfidy, the people of Ghent seized several of the princess's most favoured servants, and murdered them almost in her presence. She was afterwards married to Maximilian, son of the emperor Frederic II., but died in a few years by a fall from her horse. The people of Ghent chose her infant son and daughter for their sovereigns, and betrothed the girl to the dauphin.



An Archer of the Guard of Louis XI.

26. Louis had now overcome all his enemies, but the vengeance of Heaven would not permit him to enjoy prosperity purchased by crimes; while sitting at dinner, he was suddenly seized with a species of apopleptic fit, which at once deprived him of sense and speech. Though he partly recovered from the attack, his health was never perfectly restored; day after day he visibly declined, and the nearer death came, the more did he show that he dreaded its approach. Every thing seemed to inspire him with jealous fear, he removed his queen from the court, kept his son a close prisoner in the castle of Amboise, and always retained in his suite Louis, duke of Orleans, the first prince of the blood, whom, with barbarous policy, he had deprived of the advantages of education. He forced him to marry the princess Jane, who possessed, indeed, an amiable disposition, but was deformed and barren. 27. There is a kind of gloomy satisfaction in contemplating the miseries which this cruel tyrant suffered from the dread of death. Shut up in his castle of Plessis les Tours, which could only be entered by a single wicket, and which was fortified with the most extraordinary care, the wicked monarch employed every means to prolong life that superstition and quackery could suggest, for his disease was beyond the reach of medical art. The companions of

A. D.  
1480.

his solitude were his barber, his hangman, and his physician; the latter, named Coctiers, was an artful quack, and had persuaded Louis that, according to the decrees of fate, he should die exactly four days before the king. 28. Louis, therefore, took care of a life with which he believed his own so intimately connected, and submitted to all the insolence which the impostor chose to exhibit.

While thus lingering at the point of death, the tyrant endeavoured to persuade the world that his health was perfectly re-established, sending embassies to foreign princes, wearing the richest robes instead of the plain, not to say shabby, dress that he had hitherto worn, and adding, while he lived, fresh victims to his suspicious cruelty and undying revenge. He had placed his principal hope in the efficacy of the prayers of Francis de Paule, a pious hermit whom he sent for out of Calabria; before this man he prostrated himself, supplicated, flattered, entreated; but the hermit, with unusual honesty, declared to him that his case was hopeless, and recommended him to prepare for another world. Thus deprived of his last hope, and finding himself grow weaker every day, Louis sent for his son, and exhorted him not to govern without the aid and counsel of the princess and nobles, not to change the great officers of state at his accession, not to continue

A. D. 1483. the oppressive taxes, and in fine to make his administration as unlike his father's as possible. Soon after this he died, in the 61st year of his age and 22d of his reign.

29. There are few princes whose memory has been held in more universal execration than that of Louis XI.; more than four thousand persons perished for state offences by the hand of the executioner during his reign, and he took a diabolical pleasure in witnessing their torments. It is but fair, however, to state, that he diligently attended to the administration of justice, and made several judicious regulations in the law courts; he was the first who established posts through the kingdom, in order to gratify his restless anxiety for news, and finally, in his reign, the first printing-press was erected in Paris.

---

### Questions.

1. How did Louis behave at the beginning of his reign?
2. Who were the leaders of the league formed against him?
3. What were the characters of Louis and Charles?
4. For what is the battle of Mont l'Hery remarkable?



5. How was victory ruinous to Charles of Burgundy?
6. What artful plan did Louis pursue?
7. What circumstance led to the speedy conclusion of a treaty?
8. Did any disputes arise among the leaguers, of which Louis took advantage?
9. Why did not the count of Charolois march to the relief of his allies?
10. How did he behave when he heard of the peace?
11. What extraordinary resolution was formed by Louis?
12. Was the visit to Charles inconsistent with any previous plot formed by the king?
13. To what danger did this expose the king?
14. On what conditions was peace made?
15. How was the town of Liege treated?
16. In what manner did Louis punish the ridicule of the Parisians?
17. What cruelty was exhibited at the execution of d'Armagnac?
18. How did the duke of Burgundy show his inveterate hostility to Louis?
19. Why did Edward IV. invade France?
20. How did the constable St. Paul behave?
21. By what means did Louis obtain peace from Edward?
22. What became of the constable St. Paul?
23. In what manner did the duke of Burgundy fall a victim to ambition?
24. How did the conquerors behave?
25. In what way did Louis behave towards the family of the deceased duke of Burgundy?
26. By what calamities was Louis overtaken?
27. How did he show his attachment to life?
28. What was the manner of his death?
29. Notwithstanding his bad character, was not France indebted to him for some useful institutions?



Louis XI. and Francis de Paule.



Charles VIII.

## CHAPTER XXII.

CHARLES VIII., SURNAMED THE AFFABLE AND  
COURTEOUS.

The king of France, with twenty thousand men,  
Marched up the hill, and then marched down again.

OLD PROVERB.

**A. D. 1483.** 1. CHARLES had reached his fourteenth year, the legal age of majority, at the time of his father's death, but the weakness of his constitution, and the ignorance in which he had been brought up, rendered him unfit to undertake the management of affairs. Louis had by will appointed Anne, princess of Beaujeu, guardian to her brother, a woman of excellent understanding, high spirit, and vigorous resolution, possessing much of her father's craft, without any share of his cruelty and perfidy. 2. The princes of the blood especially the dukes of Bourbon and Orleans, thought it beneath their dignity to submit to the control of a woman; they

declared that since the Salic law excluded females from the crown, by similar reasoning it made them incapable of exercising regal functions, and the states general were summoned to decide on this important point. Contrary to the expectation of the princes, the states confirmed the will of the late king, and acknowledged the lady of Beaujeu as regent, but they appointed a council of twelve, selected from the highest ranks of the nobility, to aid her in the administration. The dukes of Bourbon and Orleans took up arms, but the promptitude of the regent disconcerted their plans; the former was obliged to submit to whatever terms she pleased to dictate, and the latter was compelled to seek a refuge in Brittany.

3. We have already seen on several occasions the strong love of independence by which the inhabitants of Brittany were animated, and their unwillingness to become incorporated with either Normandy or France; but the discontent of a large portion of that people induced them to solicit the aid of the king of France against their duke, and they found too late that a powerful ally soon becomes a master. Charles sent them an army far surpassing the number that had been stipulated; he garrisoned the towns with French troops, and laid claim to the duchy in right of the family of Blois, the former rivals of the Montforts, who had bequeathed their pretensions to the king. 4. The Bretons discovering their error when too late, submitted to their duke and joined him with all their forces; but the allied forces were totally defeated A. D.  
1488. by the French at Saint Aubin, their bravest leaders either slain or made prisoners, and the whole country placed at the mercy of their victorious enemies. Amongst the prisoners were the duke of Orleans and the prince of Orange; the lady of Beaujeu shut up the former, whom she mortally detested, in close prison, but liberated the latter.

5. In consequence of this decisive overthrow, the duke of Brittany was compelled to make peace on very disadvantageous terms; but grief shortened his days, he died soon after, leaving behind him two daughters, one of whom quickly followed her father to the grave. Anne, the heiress of Brittany, though only in her fourteenth year, conducted herself with great wisdom under all the difficulties of her situation. Her subjects were divided into several parties concerning her marriage; she herself selected the archduke Maximilian, and the nuptials were celebrated by proxy; but that prince, either from indolence or inability, never came to her assistance, though he knew that she was attacked by all the power of France. 6.

Under these circumstances, the duke of Orleans, whom the king had released from prison, contrived an interview between Charles and Anne at Rennes; both were so well  
A. D. 1492. pleased with each other, that a marriage was the consequence, and thus Brittany became completely united to France. 7. This was a double insult to Maximilian, for Charles had been long contracted to his daughter, and she was actually at the time residing in France, whither she had been sent by the people of Flanders in the former reign, waiting for the completion of the marriage, but as the archduke was powerless, and had in some degree caused his own misfortunes by his neglect and irresolution, he could only show his indignation by vain complaints and idle menaces, which nobody regarded.

8. Charles when advanced in life became sensible of the defects of his early education, and made some attempts to supply them by study; but with the unsteadiness of purpose, which was his most distinguishing characteristic, he gave up the attempt, and gave himself up to folly and dissipation. 9. As heir to the house of Lorraine, he had some slight pretensions to the kingdom of Naples, which would probably have remained for ever buried in oblivion, but for the artifices of Ludovico Sforza, a man remarkable even in that depraved age, for his pre-eminence in every base quality that can disgrace humanity. Anxious to wrest the duchy of Milan from his nephew Galeazzo, he had been long restrained by his fear of Ferdinand, king of Naples, to whose grand-daughter Galeazzo was married; and in order to remove this impediment, he incessantly solicited Charles to invade Italy. 10. All the old advisers of the king endeavoured to dissuade him from this expedition, but his resolution was fixed: he wasted however two years in making preparations, and at length set out with an army in which the regular troops did not exceed 18,000 men; but there were besides great numbers of the young nobility serving as volunteers; soldiers, whose valour might be serviceable in the field of battle, but quite unfit for a long and tedious enterprise, as they could not endure either fatigue or discipline.

11. The state of Italy at this time presents a frightful picture of crime; Ferdinand, king of Naples, and his son Alphonso, duke of Calabria, were universally execrated by their subjects for their oppressive exactions and sanguinary cruelties. Alexander VI. possessed the see of Rome; his character is thus emphatically described by a Roman Catholic

historian: "The abominations and crimes of this monster would have been unparalleled, but for the still greater atrocities of his natural son, Cæsar Borgia." The Venetians had made perfidy a law of their state. Peter de Medicis was labouring to establish the supremacy of his family at Florence, without being very scrupulous about the means. Finally, to use the words of Mezeray, "all the Italian princes of the period were destitute of religion, displaying a brutal atheism in their words and actions, but priding themselves on their profound wisdom and crafty policy." But they certainly did not show much of the latter quality on this occasion, for during the two years employed in making preparations for the invasion, not a single step was taken to dissuade an unsteady prince, or to resist a weak army directed by a brainless council.

12. Charles crossed the Alps, and after some delay at Asti, where he was seized by the small-pox, advanced to Turin. Here he found his resources already so exhausted, that he was obliged to borrow the jewels of the duchess of Savoy, and marchioness of Montferrat, which he pledged in order to raise money for the payment of his troops. He then marched to Pavia, where he found his cousin Galeazzo, duke of Milan, dying of poison, which had been administered to him by the perfidious Sforza; when he reached Placentia, he learned the death of this unfortunate prince, and was at the same time deserted by Sforza, who hastened back to Milan to reap the fruit of his crimes. The French were indignant at being thus made in some degree participators in the murder of a prince who was the cousin-german of their sovereign; they would gladly have stopped to exact vengeance, but Charles hurried on to complete his conquests, and equally disregarded the claims of his relative and the anger of his soldiers. 13. His success was indeed sufficient to intoxicate a young monarch possessed of a stronger mind than Charles; his progress resembled a triumphal procession, for no enemy appeared to impede his march; Pisa, Florence, and even Rome itself, submitted to his forces; Ferdinand died at Naples of sheer terror, Peter de Medicis fled into exile, and Alexander submitted to the king's pleasure, giving his son Cæsar Borgia, and the Turkish prince, Zizim,\* as hostages.

---

\* This young prince was the brother of the sultan Bajazet, and having been engaged in an unsuccessful insurrection, was compelled to consult his safety by flight. Alexander treated him as

14. The conquest of Naples was effected with as much facility as the march through Italy. Alphonso A. D. 1495. resigned his crown to his son Ferdinand, and fled across the Sicilian strait to Messina. His terror was so great, that although his enemies were still 180 miles off, "he imagined that he saw them in the streets of Naples, and that the walls, trees, and stones were shouting the war-cry of France. His wife entreated him to remain at least three days longer, in order that he might complete a year in his kingdom, but he refused to give her this satisfaction, and threatened to throw himself out of the window if further attempts were made to detain him." His son Ferdinand, who merited a better father and a better fate, in vain endeavoured to resist the invaders; his troops deserted, his cities opened their gates to the French, he was compelled to seek refuge in the island of Ischia, and thus in fifteen days Charles obtained the possession of all the Neapolitan territories, with the exception of Brindisi, Reggio, and Gallipoli.

15. Success produced its natural effects on weak minds: the king and his followers neglecting every kind of business, gave themselves up to riot and debauchery; the soldiers lived at discretion, the public treasures were squandered, the inhabitants plundered and insulted, until at length the Neapolitans found reason to regret even the tyrants whom they had so lately hated. But, in the mean time, a powerful league was formed against Charles, at the head of which were his old enemy Maximilian, now become emperor of Germany, and the pope. 16. Having entrusted the care of the newly-acquired kingdom to the count d'Aubigny and the duke de Montpelier, with whom he left about 4000 soldiers, Charles proceeded to return homewards at the head of an army diminished to about 9000 men. He delayed some time at Pisa, vainly expecting to be joined by the duke of Orleans with a reinforcement: but that prince having some claim to the duchy of Milan, had attacked Sforza on his own account, and after some trifling successes, was closely blockaded in Novarra.

---

a prisoner, and even entered into a negociation for delivering up the hapless fugitive to his cruel brother. This meditated treachery was prevented by the king of France, but before the pope gave Zizim up to Charles, he is said to have poisoned him. It is not easy to discover whether there is just ground for this accusation, but any charge against pope Alexander is credible. He was a monster that disgraced not merely the church but human nature.

17. This delay gave the confederates time to concentrate their forces; they assembled an army of 40,000 men, and posted them in a valley near Fornova, through which the French would necessarily pass. The folly of the confederates in posting themselves in a space so very narrow, that their numbers served only to create confusion; the avarice of some who hurried to plunder the baggage, instead of facing the enemy, and the terror which the previous triumphs of the French inspired, combined to give Charles an easy victory. With the loss of only eighty men, Charles routed the confederates, and forced them to take flight, leaving 3000 dead upon the field. 18. But notwithstanding this success, the French suffered almost as much as if they had been defeated, for their provision waggons were destroyed, and they had to endure all the extremities of famine before they reached the friendly town of Asti. 19. Here a new treaty was concluded with Sforza, but Charles, scarcely waiting for its conclusion, re-passed the Alps, and hastened to Lyons, where he soon forgot his love of military enterprise in riotous excesses and dissipation.

20. The kingdom of Naples was lost almost as easily as it had been won: all the Italian princes assisted Ferdinand; but his most effective ally was the king of Arragon, who sent him a body of Spanish troops under the command of Gonsalvo de Cordova, surnamed "the Great Captain." The French made a courageous resistance, but their enemies being masters of the sea, cut off all reinforcements; victory itself became a source of weakness, since they could not replace those who fell; the generals were therefore compelled to surrender, and in a few months the only trace of the conquests of Charles was the memory of the evils they had caused. A. D.  
1496.

21. The French were naturally indignant at this termination of their brilliant exploits, but many causes combined to prevent them from recovering what they had lost. The king had destroyed his constitution by debauchery; he was jealous of the duke of Orleans, the presumptive heir of the crown, and he was naturally of a fickle and wavering disposition. He roused himself, however, so far as to assemble an army, but when part of them had already crossed the Alps, the expedition was suspended and finally laid aside. 22. Charles finding his health beginning to decay, resolved to adopt a new course of life; he dismissed the companions of his guilty

pleasures, and began to apply himself diligently to the reformation of the kingdom; but before his subjects could derive much advantage from this beneficial change, he was suddenly attacked by a fit of apoplexy, of which he died, in the 28th year of his age and 15th of his reign.

23. Charles appears to have been a monarch of good natural dispositions: he was so dearly beloved by his domestics that some of them died of grief for his loss; but the barbarous policy of his father in depriving him of the advantages of education, and shutting him up in the company of menials, produced the most destructive effects on his character; it gave him a taste for sensual pleasures, because he knew no other, and led to that mixture of obstinacy and indecision in his character which is commonly observable in men of vigorous minds and little information. His courtesy and kindness of manner endeared him to all who knew him; and it is said, that during his whole life, he never made use of an expression which could hurt the feelings of a single individual.

24. Charles died without issue, and the crown consequently came to the duke of Orleans, his cousin in the third degree; this was the second time that the succession in the Capetian family devolved on a collateral branch.

---

### *Questions.*

1. By whom was Charles aided in the government of France?
2. With what success was the princess Anne opposed?
3. What war took place in Brittany?
4. How was the independence of Brittany overthrown?
5. To whom was the heiress of Brittany at first contracted?
6. Why was the marriage broken off?
7. Was there any additional insult offered to Maximilian?
8. Did Charles endeavour to remedy the deficiencies of his early education?
9. How was he involved in an Italian war?
10. Did he evince any military skill in his preparations?
11. What was the state of Italy at this time?
12. How did Sforza behave?
13. What success had Charles in Italy?
14. Did the king of Naples make a vigorous resistance?
15. What enemies rose up against the French?



16. What errors were committed by the French generals on their return ?
17. For what is the battle of Fornova remarkable ?
18. From what cause did the French suffer severely ?
19. How was the war ended ?
20. In what manner were the French driven from Naples ?
21. Did they make any effort for its recovery ?
22. How did Charles pass the latter part of his life ?
23. What was the character of this monarch ?
24. Had he any lineal successors ?



**Maximilian, Emperor of Germany. Husband of Mary of Burgundy.**



Louis XII.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

## LOUIS XII., SURNAMED THE FATHER OF HIS PEOPLE.

Seek not to govern by the lust of power ;  
 Make not thy will thy law ; believe thy people  
 Thy children all ; so shalt thou kindly mix  
 Their interest with thy own, and fix the basis  
 Of future happiness in godlike justice.

C. JOHNSON.

**A. D.**  
**1498.** 1. THE calamities which Louis had suffered in the early part of his life produced a beneficial effect on his character ; “ he had suffered persecution, and had learned mercy ; he was a good king, because he had long been a faithful subject, and he had learned to moderate the rigours of despotism, because he had personally experienced their effects.” On his accession to the throne, he declared that he would not punish any of those by whom he had been injured or offended in the former reigns, declaring, “ that the king of France would not revenge the injuries of the duke of Orleans.”

2. Unfortunately for his subjects, he was like his predecessor infatuated with the desire of Italian conquests, and duped by

the artifices of the perfidious potentates who then ruled that ill-fated land. Pope Alexander had taken an invincible dislike to Ferdinand of Naples, because he had refused to give his daughter to Cæsar Borgia, the pontiff's natural son; the Venetians were anxious to ruin Sforza, whom they found a powerful and dangerous foe; the Florentines were eager to recover Pisa; and all were dissatisfied with their present condition. 3. The pope had it in his power to oblige the king; he had been married in his early youth much against his will, to Jane, the daughter of Louis XI., and he now sought a divorce on the ground of the force that had been put on his inclinations. To obtain this favour, Louis created Cæsar Borgia duke of Valentinois, and entered into a close alliance with Alexander; the pope, on his part, sent Borgia with a bull, constituting a court to try the validity of the king's marriage. The form of a trial was gone through, the divorce was formally pronounced, and Louis immediately after was married to the queen dowager, a choice probably dictated by his anxiety to keep the province of Brittany united to the crown of France.

4. The invasion of Italy was crowned with success; the character of Sforza was so infamous that no one A. D.  
1499. would venture to support his cause; his subjects deserted him, and the governors of his cities, emulating their master's treachery, sold themselves to the enemy. Louis, on the news of this success, passed the Alps, made his public entry into Milan, clothed in the ducal robes, and was acknowledged as its legitimate sovereign by all the Italian princes. On the king's return to France, Sforza, by a new revolution, regained the greater part of the Milanese territories, but was soon after defeated and made prisoner by La Trimouille, Louis's bravest general. Sforza, on account of his crimes, was imprisoned for life in the castle of Loches.

5. Though Louis was sufficiently powerful to attempt the conquest of Naples without foreign aid, he was unfortunately induced to engage the assistance of Ferdinand of Arragon, whose general, Gonsalvo, already had possession of several of the principal fortresses. Frederic, king of Naples, unable to resist so powerful a coalition, surrendered himself a prisoner to Louis, by whom he was generously treated, and presented with a pension, which was continued even after the expulsion of the French from Naples. The Spaniards and French, after having subdued the Neapolitan dominions, quarrelled about their shares of the prize; a furious war commenced between

them, which ended with the total defeat of the French, and their complete expulsion from all their conquests.

**A. D.**  
**1503.** 6. The death of pope Alexander produced an entire change in the politics of Italy; he had prepared poisoned wine to destroy a rich cardinal whose inheritance he desired, but through a mistake of the servants, the poison was given to the pontiff himself and his son; Cæsar Borgia escaped, because he had only taken a small quantity, but Alexander perished miserably. He was succeeded by Pius II., who survived his election only twenty-six days; Julius II. was elected in his room, a pontiff remarkable for his crafty policy, restless ambition, and intense hatred of the court of France. 7. Louis made vigorous attempts to punish the Spaniards for their perfidy, but the death of La Trimouille caused the ruin of the expedition sent against Naples; two armies which had been sent to invade Spain were defeated, from the incapacity or treachery of the leaders, and Louis was so mortified by these repeated disappointments, that he fell into a dangerous illness, which nearly proved fatal.

8. In the reign of Louis XI. we mentioned that the people of Flanders had undertaken the guardianship of the son and daughter of their count the duke of Burgundy, whom their unfortunate mother had left at her death in helpless infancy. The son, on reaching the years of maturity, found himself in peaceable possession of Flanders and its riches, his father elevated to the empire, and his wife presumptive heiress to the throne of Castile. The kingdoms of Castile and Arragon had been united by the marriage of Ferdinand and Isabella, during whose reign the power of the Moors was destroyed in Spain, and the new world discovered. 9. But the happiness of Isabella was not unmixed; her only son and eldest daughter, whom she passionately loved, died in the prime of life, and grief for their loss hurried her to the grave. The crown of Castile descended to the archduchess Joanna, who proceeded to Spain, accompanied by her husband and her infant son, afterwards the celebrated Charles V. Soon after Philip died, and grief for his loss produced such an effect on the

**A. D.**  
**1507.** mind of Joanna, that she became incapable of managing the affairs of state; in consequence of this, Ferdinand of Arragon took upon himself the office of regent, acting in the name of his grandson Charles, then only seven years old. 10. Charles had been contracted to the princess royal of France, who, in default of male heirs, had succeeded to her mother's right over the duchy of Brittany; but the states-

general, unwilling that this province should be disunited from the kingdom, protested against this union, and caused the princess to be married to her cousin Francis, duke of Valois, the presumptive heir to the crown. This was the third insult which Maximilian had received in a similar manner, and he ardently longed for opportunities of revenge.

11. The Venetians, enriched by a long monopoly of eastern commerce, which, notwithstanding the discovery of the passage round the cape of Good Hope, continued to flow for some years in its accustomed channels, had, by their haughtiness and ambition, offended all the princes of southern Europe. Their most dangerous enemy was pope Julius, who formed against them the powerful league of Cambray; by which the emperor, the pope, the kings of France and Spain, with the duke of Savoy, were united against the republic. 12. Louis was the first to take the field; he almost annihilated the Venetian forces at the battle of Agnadello, and Venice would have been utterly ruined but for a new change in the policy of Julius. The senate conciliated the pontiff by the cession of all the towns that he demanded; upon which the pope, breaking his engagement with the allies, detached the king of Spain from their league by giving him the full and entire investiture of the kingdom of Naples, and turned all the activity of his hatred against the king of France. 13. Louis, before entering on a war with the pope, consulted the clergy as to the lawfulness of a war with the head of the church, and having received a favourable answer, prepared to carry on the contest with vigour. The French gained many victories, especially one at Ravenna, where their favourite hero, Gaston de Foix, was slain; but they obtained no permanent advantage, partly from the king's unwillingness to reduce Julius to extremities, and the scruples of his queen, who believed a war with the pope impious; but still more from the hatred of the inhabitants, who were wearied of the French. 14. The Swiss, who had been long the faithful allies of Louis, were induced to join the papal side, because Louis had spoken of them slightly, and refused to increase their pay, while the monarchs of England and Germany were silently preparing to dismember his dominions.

15. In the midst of the struggles Julius died, a victim to a violent fit of passion, and was succeeded by Leo X.; a prelate conspicuous for his talents and patronage of literature, but whose vices rendered him unfit to be the head of the Christian Church; he continued the war

A. D.  
1508.

A. D.  
1510.

A. D.  
1513.

against France, but was not so virulent an adversary as his predecessor.

16. Henry VIII. of England, eager to prove both his valour and his devotion to the cause of the church, invaded the province of Picardy in conjunction with the emperor Maximilian. The French, advancing to prevent him from besieging Terouenne, commenced an engagement at Guinnegate, where they were totally defeated, and the duke de Longueville with the celebrated chevalier Bayard, were among the prisoners. This is usually called *the battle of the spurs*, because the French made more use of them than of their swords on that day. In consequence of this victory Terouenne surrendered, but the two princes not being able to agree about its possession, terminated their dispute by burning it to the ground. Tournay shortly after submitted, and was garrisoned by the English. 17. But Henry soon became wearied of the war, especially when his father-in-law, Ferdinand of Arragon, by whose means he had been chiefly induced to engage in it, refused to perform any of his promises. The death of the French queen suggested to the duke of Longueville a plan for effecting a peace; he proposed that Louis should marry the princess Mary,\* Henry's sister, and that a large sum of money should be paid to defray the expenses of the war. 18. On these conditions the treaty was concluded, but the rejoicings on account of the marriage so weakened the constitution of Louis, already broken down by the vexations  
 1515. resulting from fifteen years of unsuccessful warfare, that he died shortly after in the 53d year of his age, and the 17th of his reign.

19. The memory of Louis XII. was deservedly venerated by his subjects, because he diminished the old taxes one half and never imposed any new, notwithstanding his long wars and numerous reverses. In vindication of his economy, he frequently said, "I had rather see the courtiers laugh at my avarice, than my people weep on account of my expenses." Had he spared the blood of his subjects as well as their money, he would have better merited the applause of posterity; but the desire of acquiring dominions in Italy seems to have been

---

\* This marriage was negotiated by de Longueville, who had been a prisoner in England since *the battle of the spurs*. She had been previously contracted to the Spanish prince Don Carlos, and had even taken the title; but the object of her affections was the beautiful and accomplished Charles Brandon, duke of Suffolk, to whom she was married after the death of Louis.

long a *mania* of the French princes, of which they could not be cured, even by misfortune. When on his death-bed, Louis sent for his heir, the duke of Valois, and embracing him said, "I am dying, I commend my subjects to your care." Thus showing that anxiety for the welfare of his people occupied his last moments.

---

*Questions.*

1. How did Louis behave on his accession ?
2. What caused a new war in Italy ?
3. Why was Louis anxious to conciliate the pope ?
4. Did the French succeed in this new invasion of Italy ?
5. What results followed from the alliance of the French and Spaniards against Naples ?
6. What remarkable revolution took place in Italy ?
7. Did the French meet any reverses ?
8. What change took place in the fortunes of the house of Burgundy ?
9. Did they suffer any calamities ?
10. What third insult was offered to Maximilian ?
11. Who formed the league of Cambray ?
12. Did the Venetians conciliate any of their adversaries ?
13. Why did not the French reap the fruit of their victories ?
14. What new alliance was formed against France ?
15. What was the character of pope Julius ?
16. Was any remarkable victory obtained by the English ?
17. On what condition was peace concluded ?
18. When did Louis die ?
19. What was his character ?



A Courtier of the Fifteenth Century.



Francis I.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## FRANCIS I.

Hold, good sword, but this day,  
And bite hard, where I hound thee; and hereafter  
I'll make a relique of thee, for young soldiers  
To come like pilgrims to, and kiss for conquest.

BEAUMONT.

**A. D. 1515.** 1. FRANCIS, count d'Angouleme and duke of Valois, was in the twenty-first year of his age at the time of his accession; he was brave, generous, and open-hearted, but at the same time rash and daring, ambitious of military glory, but destitute of the wisdom and steadiness necessary for the completion of great enterprises. Like his predecessor he made the acquisition of the duchy of Milan his principal object, and like him he was destined to meet with great triumphs followed by signal disappointment. Maximilian Sforza, who was at that time duke of Milan, seeing the storm ready to burst over his head, applied to the different princes of Europe for protection, and a confederacy



was formed, consisting of the emperor, the pope, the Swiss cantons, and Ferdinand of Arragon, to prevent the French from re-establishing themselves in Italy. 2. The Swiss having secured the principal passes of the Alps, it was thought that Francis would be compelled to resign the contest; but Trevulzio, an old Milanese general in the service of France, led the army through the mountains of Piedmont, and at the same time the advanced guard having entered Italy by a different route, surprised the papal forces, and made their general, Prosper Colonna, prisoner. So little was the appearance of the enemy expected, that Colonna was preparing to sit down to dinner at the moment he was taken.

3. On the news of this success, Francis hastened to join his army, which had already advanced within sight of Milan. The confederates, terrified at his rapid success, and not very closely united amongst themselves, proposed terms of peace; the treaty was on the point of being completed, when the arrival of 10,000 Swiss auxiliaries at once interrupted the negotiations. Eager for plunder they demanded to be led immediately to battle; their leaders were obliged to comply, and about four in the evening a furious attack was made on the French camp at Marignano. 4. The advanced guard of the French, after some resistance, were compelled to give ground, but the king coming up with some of his choicest troops, prevented the enemy from pursuing their advantage. Never was there so well contested a fight. Trevulzio said that the twenty-five battles in which he had been before, were but children's play compared with this, which was a battle of giants. The combat continued through a great part of the night, until both armies were so exhausted as to be compelled to desist by mutual consent. The soldiers on both sides were intermingled, but so complete was their lassitude, that they lay down to sleep in the order, or rather disorder, in which they found themselves. Francis spent the night on the carriage of a gun, and was compelled to quench his thirst with a little water mingled with mud and blood, which a soldier brought him in his cap; but fatigue and heat made even this draught a luxury. Before dawn Francis was on the alert, disposing his artillery, musketry, and Gascon cross-bows in the most favourable positions. The Swiss renewed the attack at daylight, but the artillery and musketry placed on their flanks, threw their battalions into confusion, their lines began to waver; at this decisive moment the cavalry charged, and cut to pieces the disordered ranks by which they were opposed.

The Swiss commanders made an effort to rally their forces, in which they were partially successful, but the appearance of Venetian troops advancing to the assistance of the French, convinced them that their case was hopeless; they retired in good order, but ten thousand of their best troops were left dead upon the plain.

5. In consequence of this victory, Francis obtained possession of Milan; Maximilian Sforza resigned his claim to the duchy, in exchange for a pension; the Swiss cantons agreed to a cessation of hostilities; and the pope paid him a visit at Bologna, in order to treat with him in person. Having thus, as he believed, firmly established his power in Italy, the king returned to Lyons, where his mother and wife awaited him, so elated by his victory that he thought himself irresistible.

6. In the following year died Ferdinand of Arragon, who had been the principal cause of all the wars that devastated the south of Europe; one of his panegyrists observes, that "*the only thing* for which he deserves blame was his habit of always breaking his word;" a crime which the Italian historians seem to think very pardonable. On his death, Francis made some preparations for the invasion of Naples, but the determination of the emperor, the Swiss, and all the Italian powers to check his further progress, prevented him from putting his intentions into execution. 7. Charles V. succeeded to the crowns of Arragon and Castile, as his mother was now sunk into confirmed insanity, and one of the first acts of his government was to make peace with France.

8. The death of the emperor Maximilian, the most extraordinary character of all his cotemporaries, was  
A. D. 1519. destined to produce a great change in the politics of Europe. 9. This prince had been equally distracted by avarice and ambition; his marriage with the heiress of Flanders and Burgundy, gave him a claim to the extensive dominions of Charles the Bold, but his efforts to recover them were weak and desultory; on the death of his wife, the Flemings deprived him of all authority, and took upon themselves the guardianship of his children, an arrangement to which he submitted with a very bad grace. A new opportunity of acquiring power was presented to him by Anne of Brittany, who chose him for her husband; but Maximilian, instead of affording her any assistance, deserted her in the midst of her enemies; she in consequence broke the contract and married the king of France. Maximilian in revenge made several confederacies against the French power, but as he always deserted his allies

in the time of action, all the preparations ended in nothing. One of his schemes was to have himself elected pope, on the death of Julius II.; but his unwillingness to part with money, was probably the cause of his not coming forward as a candidate at the election. 10. His reign will ever be memorable for the commencement of the Reformation in Germany. Pope Leo X. had exhausted the papal treasury by the magnificent buildings which he erected in Rome, and in order to replenish his funds, issued bulls for the sale of indulgences; Tzetzal, the papal agent in Germany, conducted the infamous traffic with such indecent vehemence, that he provoked Martin Luther, an Augustinian monk, to oppose the sale. The pope sided with Tzetzal, and in the progress of the dispute, Luther was led to oppose not only indulgences, but several other gross corruptions which had crept into the Christian Church. The Romish clergy instead of making any concessions, which the increasing spread of knowledge imperatively required, clung to the corruptions as if they were the essentials of Christianity, and thus closed the door against all accommodation. Luther and his followers in Germany, Zuinglius in Switzerland, the remnant of Wickliffe's followers in England, and the descendants of the Albigenses, called Hugonots, in France, made almost a simultaneous attack on the papal power, and finally succeeded in withdrawing a great part of Europe from its allegiance to the holy see.

11. On the death of Maximilian, Francis and Charles became candidates for the empire, protesting at the same time, that their rivalry would make no change in their mutual friendship. Charles was the successful candidate, partly by the exertions of the duke of Saxony, who refused the empire himself, and partly by the influence of a large sum of money, which had been sent from Spain to be distributed among the electors. In spite of his professions, Francis could not but feel disappointed at his defeat; besides, he was justly alarmed at the increase of power obtained by his rival, who being the legal representative of the dukes of Burgundy, he feared might attempt to recover the possessions and avenge the wrongs of his family. 12. To secure himself from these threatening dangers, he courted an alliance with Henry VIII. of England, who was equally jealous of the increased power of Charles; an interview was arranged between the monarchs, and in June they met near Ardres, in a plain, called from the magnificence displayed there, *the field of the cloth of gold*. After the young monarchs had met, they alighted

A. D.  
1520

and entered into a pavilion prepared for their reception, each attended by two or three ministers, where they held a brief conference on public affairs. They soon became wearied of business, and spent the following fourteen days in festivals and tournaments. Before separating, they confirmed their treaty by a solemn oath on the sacrament, which they received together. 13. Francis did not derive any advantages from this alliance, for Charles V. soon after took an opportunity of landing in England, and prevailed upon Wolsey by bribes and flatteries, to persuade his vacillating master to hold himself neuter, and to be ready to act as an umpire if required.

14. A war soon commenced between Charles and Francis, each accusing the other of having been the first to commence hostilities. The two rivals somewhat resembled Louis IX. and Charles the Bold in their character and conduct. The emperor was cautious, prudent, and calculating, never hazarding any enterprise until he had taken every precaution to ensure its success; careful in his selection of ministers and generals, and more proud of skill in negotiations than of glory in the field. The king, on the other hand, was hasty, rash, and improvident, ready to undertake the most dangerous expeditions, but utterly regardless of his means; extravagant in his pleasures, the slave of his mother; a bold unprincipled woman, the dupe of corrupt ministers and unskilful generals. 15. The war first commenced in Flanders, where Francis had an opportunity of crushing the power of his rival by a single blow, but neglected to avail himself of it, in order to annoy the constable, Charles of Bourbon, against whom he had conceived a fatal dislike. The constable had affronted the king's mother by some harsh remarks on her glaring vices, and had displeased the king by the stern severity of his morals, but he was the only general then in France capable of managing an army. 16. In Italy the French were everywhere defeated, notwithstanding all the exertions of their leader, Lautrec; and before the first year of the war had ended, they had been driven from all their conquests in the Milanese. This event gave so much pleasure to Leo X. that he died of joy.

17. Francis, who was the real author of this calamity, as he had wasted the money required for the payment of the troops in luxury and debauchery, severely reproached Lautrec for having suffered such a loss. The general threw the blame on Semblançai, the minister of finance, for not having furnished him with the means of satisfying the soldiers. Semblançai declared that he had paid the money to the queen-dowager

and offered to produce her receipt; but that princess dreading an exposure, had bribed a clerk in the treasury to steal the receipt, and the venerable minister was sentenced to be executed. The chancellor du Prat is said to have participated in this crime, from envy of the influence that Semblançai had with the king, who always called him "his father." Du Prat



The Chancellor du Prat and his Wife.

was then employed to raise money, which was effected by the most illegal and scandalous methods: the royal domains were alienated, the offices of state publicly sold to the highest bidder, and the taxes, already oppressive, were doubled.

18. The artifices of Wolsey, who expected to be raised to the papacy by the influence of Charles, had induced Henry to join in the war against Francis, but the king's folly and his mother's iniquity raised up a more dangerous enemy in the bosom of his kingdom. We have already seen that the constable of Bourbon had been treated with neglect, but the king's mother, not satisfied with this, resolved to rob him of his property. For this purpose she laid claim to the duchy of Bourbon, and as she had the selection of the judges by whom her claims were to be tried, it was not difficult to foresee how the matter would be decided. At the same time the admiral Bonivet, who looked upon the constable as his rival, laboured to widen the breach between him and the king, and succeeded so completely, that Bourbon was

A. D.  
1523.

reduced to despair. In his distress, he adopted the unfortunate resolution of deserting to Charles. Francis was on the point of setting out for Italy when the defection of Bourbon alarmed him with the danger of an insurrection at home; but notwithstanding this peril, and though an English army had actually invaded France, he sent Bonivet across the Alps to make another effort for the recovery of the Milanese.

19. Bonivet was by no means a match for Launoy, Pescara, and Bourbon, the generals of Charles; after an infinite number of errors, which he was unable to repair, he found himself compelled to retreat, hotly pursued by his justly exasperated enemy the constable of Bourbon. The French did not, however, suffer much during the retreat, owing to the admirable arrangements of the chevalier Bayard, who commanded the rear. This favourite hero of the age was the last model of chivalry that appeared in Europe; he was usually called the knight without fear and without reproach, (*le chevalier sans peur et sans reproche*); though he held only the rank of captain, he really possessed more influence than any general, from the universal respect and admiration inspired by his high character. 20. Unfortunately, while engaged in repelling an attack on the rear-guard, he was mortally wounded; unwilling that the army should be delayed by his misfortune, he ordered himself to be placed against a tree with his face toward the enemy. In this condition he was found by the constable, who began to lament the chance of war that had reduced so noble a knight to such a miserable condition; but Bayard declared, "I am not an object of pity, sir duke; I die happy in having performed my duty to my king and country; it is you who deserve pity, who are bearing arms against your native land, forgetting that the death of every traitor is violent, and his memory detested."

21. France was now on every side encompassed with dangers; Charles, Henry, and the Bourbon, had entered into a treaty of partition for dividing it between them; Henry was to have the provinces which formerly belonged to England, the Bourbon was to receive the ancient kingdom of Provence, and all the rest was to be given to Charles. But it was necessary to conquer France before dividing it, and in this the confederates totally failed; Bourbon invaded the country, but not one of his former partizans would take up arms in his behalf; the English king did not send the promised subsidies, the emperor withheld the auxiliaries necessary to recruit the invading army, and on the approach of

A. D.  
1524.

Francis with a numerous train, the constable was obliged to raise the siege of Marseilles, and retreat precipitately into Italy. 22. Thither, with his characteristic imprudence, Francis resolved to follow him. He was at first very successful, Milan surrendered without any resistance, the imperial generals fled before him, and had Francis pursued their dispirited forces, he would probably have put a glorious end to the war; but yielding to the injudicious advice of Bonivet, he laid siege to Pavia, a well-fortified town, defended by a numerous garrison under the command of Antonio de Leyva, a general of great abilities. At the same time Francis weakened his army by sending one detachment to invade the kingdom of Naples, and another to take possession of Savona.

23. The siege of Pavia went on but slowly; so great was the improvidence of the king, that his attacks A. D. 1525. were frequently suspended from want of ammunition, and his schemes disconcerted by want of wisdom in his officers and discipline in his soldiers. Meantime, Launoy and Bourbon having recovered from their panic, advanced with a numerous army to raise the siege. Had Francis retreated on their approach, he might easily have entrenched himself in Milan, and set the imperialists at defiance, but he had made a promise not to stir from before Pavia until it had submitted, and all persuasions to the contrary were useless. 24. On the night of the 23d of February, the imperialists attacked the camp of the French, but were repulsed from the entrenchments with some loss; Francis, believing that victory was now in his hands, imprudently sallied out, and by the impetuosity of his charge, threw the hostile cavalry into confusion; but Bourbon coming up, rallied his forces, and introducing some bodies of musketry between the troops of horse, compelled the French to give ground in turn. At this moment, Leyva, making a sally from the town, fell on the rear of the French; the effect of this manœuvre was decisive; placed between two fires, the lines were everywhere broken. The duke d'Alençon, first prince of the blood, seized with a disgraceful panic, set the example of a shameful flight, and never halted until he arrived at Lyons, where he soon after died of shame and vexation; several of the nobility followed him, and Francis was left almost alone in the midst of his enemies. Yet, even in this distress, the king showed a courage worthy of his fame; he fought gallantly against the fearful odds by which he was opposed, and when all hope was gone, he refused to yield himself to the traitor Bourbon, but surrendered

himself a prisoner to Launoy. The French had not met with so great a calamity since the battle of Poitiers, their king was a captive, the flower of their nobility and the best of their soldiers were slain. Bonivet fell amongst the rest, and when Bourbon saw his dead body, he exclaimed, "Unfortunate man, you have ruined France, yourself, and me."

25. The battle of Pavia produced terror in France, joy in Spain, jealousy in England, and dissatisfaction in Italy. Louisa of Savoy, the king's mother, took upon herself the regency, and by her prudent conduct, restored order and confidence to France. Wolsey, finding that he had been duped by Charles inspired his capricious master with so much distrust of the emperor, that Henry entered into a league with the regent to preserve the integrity of France. The Italian states, dreading to be overwhelmed by the victorious Charles, entered into a confederacy for their mutual protection, while the emperor himself affected to conceal his joy under an appearance of moderation, but rejected the counsels of those who advised him to immortalize himself by an act of generosity, and set Francis at liberty without ransom. 26. Launoy did not know in what manner to secure his illustrious captive; if he kept him in Italy, he had reason to dread that the Swiss or the Italian princes would rescue him in hopes of obtaining a reward; the number and strength of the French galleys rendered it dangerous to send him by sea to Spain, and the journey to Germany was equally hazardous. In this dilemma, Launoy craftily suggested to Francis that every thing might be arranged by a personal interview with Charles; weary of his imprisonment, the king eagerly caught at the proposal, and issuing orders to his naval forces, not to intercept him on the voyage, allowed himself to be quietly transmitted to Spain.

27. On his arrival there, he was not received by the emperor as he expected, but was shut up a close prisoner in the tower of Madrid. Vexation for his losses, and that delay of hope which makes the heart sick, soon produced a violent fit of illness that brought the royal captive to the verge of dissolution; Charles dreading that his prisoner would thus escape, and deprive him of his expected advantages, paid him a visit, and held out expectations of a speedy and honourable accommodation. This gleam of hope restored the health of Francis, but his captivity was prolonged for several months. 28. At length it was agreed that he should be liberated on condition of paying a large ransom, resigning to Charles the duchy of Burgundy, and all the provinces claimed by the French in



Italy, giving his two sons as hostages, and plighting his kingly word, that if the conditions of the treaty were not observed, he would return to prison.

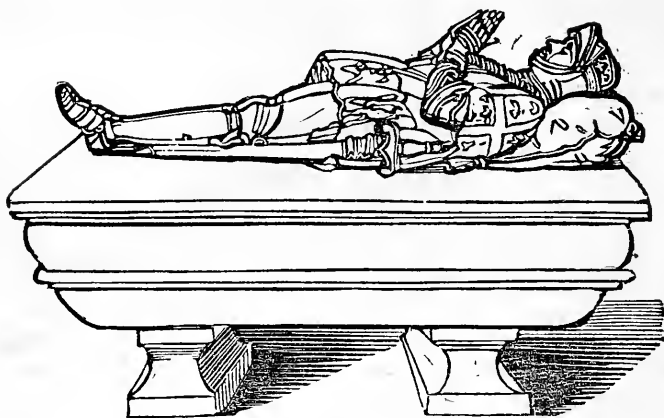
29. But Francis had no intention of dismembering his kingdom; under the pretence that the states of Burgundy would not consent to the proposed arrangement, he refused to give Charles that province, and at the same time entered into an alliance with the king of England, the pope, and the princes of Italy, to check the alarming power of the emperor. Nothing could equal the indignation of Charles when he learned this news; he saw that he had lost an opportunity which he could scarcely hope to regain, and that he had been guilty of a harsh ungenerous action without obtaining any advantage. He vented his indignation on the unfortunate young princes who had been left to him as hostages, conduct which served only to increase the hostility of Francis, and to excite the indignation of all the European princes.

---

### Questions.

1. In what war did Francis I. engage?
2. What success had his forces?
3. How was a treaty of peace prevented?
4. What were the circumstances of the battle of Marignano?
5. What were the consequences of this victory?
6. What was the character of Ferdinand of Arragon?
7. By whom was he succeeded?
8. What were the consequences of the death of the emperor Maximilian?
9. Are not some strange instances recorded of his avarice and ambition?
10. What remarkable revolution commenced in his reign?
11. Who were the competitors for the empire?
12. Where had Francis a remarkable interview with Henry VIII.?
13. Why was the treaty with England productive of no beneficial result?
14. How are the characters of Francis and his rival Charles contrasted?
15. What error did Francis commit in Flanders?
16. How was the campaign in Italy mismanaged?
17. What innocent person suffered in consequence?
18. Why did the constable Bourbon revolt?
19. How did Bonivet manage the war in Italy?
20. What was remarkable in the death of Bayard?
21. How did the invasion of France succeed?

22. What town did Francis besiege ?
23. How was the siege conducted ?
24. What were the events of the battle of Pavia ?
25. What were its consequences ?
26. Whither was Francis sent as a prisoner ?
27. How was he treated ?
28. On what conditions was he liberated ?
29. Were they fulfilled ?



Monument of Montmorency.



French Knight of the Sixteenth Century.

## CHAPTER XXV.

### FRANCIS I. CONTINUED.

Fight like your first sire, each Roman,  
 Alaric was a gentle foeman,  
 Match'd with Bourbon's black banditti!  
 Rouse thee, thou eternal city!

BYRON.

1. CHARLES, anxious to regain his Italian acquisitions, sent the constable Bourbon to seize the Milanese territory, promising him the investiture of the duchy, to the exclusion of Sforza. Bourbon having soon subdued the Milanese, prepared to march against Rome, in order to satisfy with its plunder his soldiers, who were mutinous for want of

A. D.  
 1527.

pay On the evening of the 5th of May, the imperialists arrived before the walls of Rome, and on the following morning the orders for the assault were given. 2. The constable was slain by a musket-shot at the very first onset, but his death being concealed from the soldiers, they advanced as if animated by his spirit, and "the immortal city" fell into the hands of barbarians, as savage and as merciless as those hordes whose ravages had before levelled her beauties to the earth. For several months the city remained in the possession of the imperialists, and was the theatre of every crime which the worst passions of the heart could dictate, or the fiercest violence execute. The pope was taken prisoner, and was long in great danger of his life from those who pretended to be his most devoted adherents; for it is a strange circumstance, that the Catholic Spaniards evinced more hostility on this occasion to the city and the pope than was shown by the Germans, who were for the most part Lutherans. 3. This event occasioned two other strange proceedings, which may well be styled solemn farces. The imperialists gravely proclaimed Martin Luther pope! The emperor, upon receiving news of the captivity of his holiness, instead of sending orders to set him at liberty, ordered prayers to be offered up, and processions to be made for his deliverance, after which he compelled him to purchase his freedom with a large ransom. The conquerors of Rome, by their excesses, soon destroyed themselves; a pestilence broke out among them, and out of all their forces scarcely five hundred survived when the city was liberated by the French general Lautrec, ten months after its capture.

4. The war between Francis and Charles was now renewed, but it was not productive of any very important events; the rival sovereigns mutually gave each other the lie, and sent challenges to decide their disputes by single combat, but these indecent bravadoes served only to make both contemptible. 5. Meantime, Italy was a prey to the ravages of war. The French at first had the advantage, and Pavia was sacked with the utmost cruelty in memory of the battle that had been lost before it. But Andrew Doria, a Genoese of distinction, who had essentially aided the French with the galleys of his republic, became suddenly discontented with the conduct of Francis; he went over to the emperor, and fortune changed with him. The same errors which had produced former calamities were repeated; the money raised for the support of the army was lavished by the king and his court in luxury, the supplies were delayed until they were no longer useful;

the siege of Naples, undertaken by the French general Lautrec, was protracted with obstinacy as blind and fatal as that which Francis had displayed at Pavia; and at length the entire army was obliged to surrender to the imperialists, almost at discretion. 6. This contest, as well as many others, was attended with no other fruit than the spilling of human blood; but at length the course of these numerous calamities was suspended by the treaty of Cambray, concluded for the two monarchs by two women, the duchess of Angouleme and Margaret of Austria, governess of the Low Countries. 7. Francis I. abandoned his allies, gave up his claim on Milan, his lordship of Artois and Flanders, and engaged to pay two millions of gold crowns for the ransom of his children; Charles V., besides these advantages, reserving to himself the power of prosecuting at law his pretensions to Burgundy. Sforza had the Milanese, and by an article of a treaty before concluded between the pope and the emperor, the Medicis were to be reinstated in the government of Florence. The ransoming of the two French princes was found a difficult task in the exhausted state of the finances, and could not have been effected but for the generous assistance of Henry VIII., who presented Francis with a considerable sum of money. A. D.  
1529.

8. The followers of Luther, about this time, took the name of *protestants*, because they *protested* against an edict issued at Spire, prohibiting innovations in religion. They also published an authentic statement of their principles, drawn up by Philip Melancthon, the most moderate of Luther's followers; this important document is usually called the *confession of Augsburg*, from the place where it was written. Soon after, perceiving that their ruin was determined upon, the protestant princes entered into an alliance called the league of Smalkald, and applied for assistance to Francis, the inveterate enemy of the emperor, and Henry VIII., who was now in open hostility with the pope.

9. Charles V. did not, however, immediately proceed to extremities with his protestant subjects; the necessity of checking the increasing power of the Turks, and his anxiety to secure his superiority in Italy, compelled him to temporize; and by the aid of those persons on whose destruction he was resolved, the emperor obtained several triumphs over the Turks in Hungary and the Moors in Africa. Francis, during the peace, employed himself in improving the city of Paris, and indulging his taste for the fine arts, but he had not laid aside

his ambition and thirst for revenge. From the time that he had signed the humiliating treaty of Cambray, he meditated new projects of war, and used every effort to stir up all the powers of Europe, but his measures did not succeed. Pope Clement VII., whose niece he had married to his second son Henry, died before any advantage could be derived from the alliance. Henry VIII. was too much embarrassed with the consequences of his divorce to engage in any hazardous enterprise, and the members of the league of Smalkald; irritated by Francis's conduct to the French protestants, refused him the least assistance.

10 Francis had indeed acted with a violence sufficient to stir up the professors of the new religion against him. Some fanatics having posted up libels against the clergy and the eucharist, he ordered a solemn procession, in order to efface the scandal, and assisted at it himself with a torch in his hand; he afterwards pronounced a vehement speech before the bishop of Paris, in which he said, "that if one of his limbs was infected with heresy, he would cut it off, and would sacrifice his own son if he found him guilty of that crime." To conclude the scene, six Lutherans were burned alive in the most cruel manner, being alternately let down and drawn up from the flames by means of a machine, until they expired.

11. The war between Charles and Francis was soon renewed with all its former violence; the emperor invaded Provence, but by the judicious measures of the constable Montmorency, was compelled to retreat with precipitation. The French king summoned Charles to appear before the parliament as his vassal for Flanders and Artois; no notice of course was taken of the summons, and the two fiefs were declared legally confiscated. After two years of desultory warfare, a truce was concluded. 12. The inhabitants of Ghent, dissatisfied with the heavy taxes imposed upon them by Charles, broke out into open rebellion and offered to aid Francis in the subjugation of Flanders, if he would grant them his protection; but he was infatuated with the desire of the duchy of Milan, the investiture of which he ardently desired, and in hopes to obtain it, he betrayed the whole negociation to the emperor. Charles, perfectly acquainted with the character of his rival, engaged to grant him the object of his desires, provided that he would permit the emperor and his train to pass through France in his way to the Low Countries; Francis readily assented; Charles was re-



Charles V. and Francis I. Visiting the Tomb of St. Denis.

ceived with the greatest pomp, remained seven days at Paris, where he was loaded with marks of friendship and confidence, and after visiting the Tomb of St. Denis in company with Francis, he was permitted to depart without even leaving any authentic testimony of his promises. Ghent was soon reduced, the rebels in Flanders forced to yield themselves to the mercy of the emperor, but the promises made to Francis were forgotten.

13. War again recommenced, Henry VIII. a second time embraced the cause of Charles, and France was invaded by their united armies. Inevitable destruction would have overtaken the kingdom had the invaders acted in concert, but their mutual jealousies prevented them from undertaking any thing of importance; on the other hand, the army of the empire might have perished by famine but for the treachery of the king's mistress, who betrayed the councils of her lover to Charles. A new treaty was concluded at Cressy, by which it was stipulated that the investiture of the Milanese should be given to the duke of Orleans on his marriage with the daughter or niece of the emperor. The death

A. D.  
1542.

of this prince soon after nullified this article, and the Milanese remained in the possession of Charles. The war with Henry VIII. continued for some time longer, but at length terms of accommodation were agreed to, and Henry retained possession of Boulogne as a security for an annuity of 800,000 crowns, to be paid him during eight years, by Francis.

14. Neither of these princes long survived the treaty. A. D. 1547. Henry VIII. died in January; and Francis in the March following. His funeral procession was the most imposing ceremony that had been hitherto witnessed in France. The follies and errors of Francis were pardoned for the sake of his magnificence and generosity; the tears of his people watered his hearse, and his memory was consecrated by the eulogiums of the literary men, of whom he had been ever a generous patron. But the bigotry of which Francis afforded an example, and the persecutions which he not merely tolerated but encouraged, were the deepest stains on his character. One instance will suffice. The parliament at Aix had issued an arret against the Protestants so very atrocious, that its execution was for some years suspended by the court. They had condemned to the flames as heretics, all the masters of families of Merindol, at the same time giving orders to raze all the houses of that large market-town, and even to root up the trees of the neighbouring forests. The cardinal de Tournon persuaded Francis to have this barbarous decree put in execution. As soon as the court had granted its permission, two magistrates, more deserving the name of executioners, at the head of a body of troops, proceeded to commit the most horrid cruelties. They massacred three thousand persons without distinction of age or sex. Merindol, with twenty-two other towns and villages, fell a prey to the flames. An act of barbarity so calculated to bring odium on the religion in support of which it was perpetrated, that it may be looked on as the signal for those dreadful wars, which bigotry and fanaticism soon after kindled in the kingdom.

15. Francis died in the fifty-third year of his age and the thirty-second of his reign; he was succeeded by his second son, Henry; Francis, the eldest, having died by poison several years before his father. The poison was administered by an Italian physician named Montecuculi, at the instigation, as some say, of the emperor, but as others, with more probability, assert, at the command of Catherine de Medicis, the wife of prince Henry.



*Questions.*

1. What enterprise was undertaken by the Bourbon ?
2. How were the Romans treated by the victors ?
3. What absurd scenes were acted ?
4. In what foolish manner did the rival monarchs behave ?
5. How was the war carried on in Italy ?
6. By whom was a treaty of peace negotiated ?
7. What were the conditions of the treaty ?
8. How did the followers of Luther act at this time ?
9. In what manner were Charles and Francis employed during the interval of peace ?
10. How did Francis show his bigotry ?
11. With what piece of absurdity did he commence the war against Charles V. ?
12. What great opportunity did Francis neglect ?
13. How was the war terminated ?
14. What was the character of Francis ?
15. Why did not his eldest son succeed him ?



Catherine de Medicis.



Henry II.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

## HENRY II.—FRANCIS II.

What trivial influences hold dominion  
 O'er wise men's counsels, and the fate of empire!  
 The greatest schemes that human wit can forge,  
 Or bold ambition dares to put in practice,  
 Depend upon our husbanding a moment,  
 And the light lasting of a woman's will!

Rowe.

**A. D.** 1547. 1. FRANCIS on his death-bed had given his son a great deal of good counsel, and amongst other matters, had advised him to beware of the ambition of "the house of Lorraine," and not to recal the constable de Montmorenci, whom he had sent into banishment; the tomb had scarcely closed over him, when Francis, duke d'Aumale, the son of Claude, duke of Guise, the most powerful of the Lorraine family, was loaded with favours, and Montmorenci summoned to court. 2. Henry, like his father, was devotedly attached to his favourites; the person by whom he was most

influenced was Diana of Poitiers, a lady neither very young nor very handsome, yet whose arts and accomplishments enabled her to maintain a complete supremacy over the king's affections. This had, however, one beneficial effect, it checked the influence of the queen, Catherine de Medicis, a woman capable of every crime, and not possessed of a single virtue. 3. The situation of Europe was at the moment of Henry's accession very critical; the Protestants in Germany, weakened by the defection of Maurice of Saxony, were placed almost at the mercy of the emperor; the council of Trent, which had been for some time assembled, were strenuously labouring to restore the papal supremacy; in England, the guardians of young Edward were employed in endeavouring to aggrandize themselves, regardless of the honour or good of the country; the neighbouring state of Scotland was similarly distracted during the minority of its infant sovereign, the unfortunate Mary, and there seemed to be no means left by which the exorbitant power of the house of Austria could be checked.

4. But at the very moment when every thing seemed to promise Charles the quiet possession of all his acquisitions, a sudden and unexpected revolution overthrew the fabric which he had spent so many years in erecting. Maurice of Saxony, foreseeing the utter ruin which impended over the Protestant religion and the liberties of Germany, secretly prepared a league against the emperor, and secured the assistance of the French king. So well were all his proceedings concealed, that he was commissioned by the emperor to conduct the siege of Magdeburg, at the very time that he was making preparations for the war. Magdeburg surrendered on conditions apparently the most favourable to the interests and wishes of Charles, but measures were at the same time privately taken to make all these stipulations ineffectual. At length when every thing was ripe for action, Maurice published a manifesto calculated to gain men of every party. He declared that his design was to secure the Protestant religion, to maintain the liberties of Germany, and to deliver the landgrave of Hesse from his unjust confinement. So rapid were his movements, that the emperor narrowly escaped being made a prisoner at Inspruck, and was obliged, notwithstanding his illness, to be conveyed across the Alps in a litter during a heavy storm of wind and rain. Henry, on the other side, assumed the title of *Protector of the Germanic liberties*, and marched his troops into Lorraine, where he scarcely met with

A. D.  
1552.

any resistance. Toul, Verdun, and Metz, which had been long considered the bulwarks of the empire on that side, surrendered, and have ever since remained in possession of the French.

5. Charles finding himself destitute of men and money, was obliged to submit to the demands of the German princes; a treaty was concluded at Passaw, by which the religious liberty of the Protestants, and the independence of the German states was secured; but no mention was made of the king of France, who experienced the treatment that foreign princes generally meet when they interfere in a civil war. 6. The emperor, eager to regain the frontier towns from the French, hastened to lay siege to Mentz, whose dilapidated fortifications made him expect an easy conquest. But the duke of Guise, assisted by several of the young nobility, who came as volunteers from every part of France, made such an excellent defence, that Charles was obliged to raise the siege. So much had his troops suffered from cold and famine, that several entire battalions surrendered to the duke of Guise, who harassed the retreat, without firing a shot. With humanity the more creditable as it was unusual at the period, the duke of Guise treated his prisoners with the greatest humanity. The next year Charles was more successful at the siege of Tourenne, but having taken the place by assault, he put the entire garrison to the sword, and so effectually destroyed the town, that its very ruins have perished.

7. The fatigues and disappointments which Charles had undergone, produced an injurious effect both on his mental and bodily health; the death of his mother, to whom he was ardently attached, increased his weariness of the world; he resolved to retire from the busy stage of life, where he had so long played a conspicuous part, and spend the remainder of his life in seclusion. He resigned the crown of Spain to his son, Philip II., an ambitious, hypocritical bigot, who had been lately married to the English queen, Mary, a princess every way worthy of him. In the following year, Charles gave up the empire to his brother Ferdinand, and retired into a monastery in Spain. 8. His last public act was the conclusion of a truce with the French, in order to secure the peaceable commencement of his son's reign. But this suspension of arms did not long continue; pope Paul IV., anxious to extend the dominions of the holy see, entreated Henry to aid him in expelling the Spaniards from Italy, promising that he would give him the investiture of the king-

dom of Naples as a reward. The experience of the last century ought to have convinced the French of the perfidy of the Italian princes, and the uncertainty of any possessions in that country; but the monarchs were infatuated with the desire of dominions beyond the Alps, and to obtain transitory glory, neglected permanent advantages. 9. The duke of Guise led an army into Italy, but his success did not answer his expectations; pride and presumption prompted him to efforts which produced nothing but reverses, and he would have entirely lost his brilliant reputation, had not greater disasters at home recalled him to a new scene.

10. While the duke of Guise was making fruitless attacks on the kingdom of Naples, Philip, aided by the English, had sent a numerous army, commanded by the duke of Savoy, to invade France. The invaders laid siege to St. Quentin, which was gallantly defended by the admiral Coligny, nephew to the constable Montmorenci. But as the garrison was inadequate to the defence of the place, the constable, conscious of its importance, advanced to its relief, and after experiencing considerable difficulties, succeeded in throwing a small garrison into the town. Having performed this duty, he would gladly have retreated without coming to an engagement, but the Spaniards pursued him with so much celerity, that he was obliged to fight without having time to put his men in order of battle. The valour of the French kept the fate of the day undecided for four hours, but they were finally defeated with the loss of their baggage, artillery, and the greater part of their army. Four thousand men, of whom six hundred were gentlemen, fell; the constable with a great number of the nobility were made prisoners; France had not experienced so calamitous a defeat since the days of Crécy and Azincourt.

11. The ignorance and obstinacy of Philip prevented him from obtaining any decisive advantages from this splendid victory. Instead of advancing against Paris, he ordered the duke of Savoy to continue the siege of St. Quentin. Its governor, Coligny, maintained the town against the victorious army for three weeks longer, and during that time, Henry had made such preparations as enabled him to set the Spaniards at defiance. 12. Never did France exhibit a more patriotic spirit; the nobility assembled from every quarter to defend the kingdom; the cities and towns subscribed large sums to pay the troops, and the peasants hastily formed themselves into a rude militia to check the advance of the invaders. 13. The return of the duke of Guise still further tended to

elevate the spirits of the French ; his popularity does not appear to have been destroyed by his misconduct in Italy ; and his first enterprise after his return completely effaced the memory of his former errors. Calais, the last remnant of the conquests of Edward III., had remained in the possession of the English during more than two centuries. Its garrison was always diminished during the winter, when it was supposed to be secure from the dangers of a siege. The duke of Guise

Jan. 8, came before it while thus unprepared, and after a weak defence of only eight days, the town was surrendered. The popularity of this success added greatly to the power of the duke of Guise, which was still further strengthened in the following year, by the marriage of the dauphin to his niece Mary, the young queen of Scotland.

14. In the following year a treaty was concluded at Chateau-Cambresis, between Philip and Henry, in which the English queen Elizabeth was included. To strengthen the union it was agreed that Philip should marry the eldest daughter of Henry, and that his sister should be united to the duke of Savoy. 15. The most brilliant preparations were made for the celebration of these nuptials, and tournaments (which were not yet out of fashion) were celebrated at Paris. The king, who excelled in these chivalrous exercises, ran several courses with great success ; but at length, while tilting with the count of Montgomery, a splinter of the lance entered his eye, and he fell without sense or motion to the ground. He survived in a state of insensibility for eleven days, and then expired, in the forty-first year of his age and the thirteenth of his reign.

16. The persecution of the protestants was rigorously continued during this entire reign. They were burned alive without mercy, the judges were prohibited from alleviating the severity of the sentence ; those who petitioned in their favour, were themselves subjected to the penalties of heresy ; and some members of the parliament were sent to prison for remonstrating against the severity of these edicts. The family of Lorraine, with the duke of Guise at their head, were the principal patrons of persecution ; but in spite of their efforts the number of protestants increased every day.

A. D. 1559. 17. Francis II. was but sixteen years old at the time of his father's death ; feeble both in body and mind, he was incapable of managing the affairs of the state, the administration of the government devolved in consequence on the duke of Guise and the cardinal of Lorraine, uncles to

the queen. Catherine de Medicis, the king's mother, anxious to obtain the management of affairs, adroitly increased the jealousies that subsisted between the families of Lorraine and Bourbon, while the constable Montmorenci sought to recover the authority which he had possessed in the former reign. 18.

Religion was another source of discord, Coligni and d'Andelot, nephews of the constable, and the prince of Condé, the youngest of the Bourbon princes, were steady protestants; but the queen, the constable, and the entire Lorraine family, were bitter persecutors of all who professed the principles of the reformation. The head of the house of Bourbon was first prince

of the blood, and king of Navarre, but the latter was little more than a nominal title, as the greater part of Navarre had been seized by the Spaniards in 1512, and nothing left to its former possessors but a few districts east of the Pyrenees. The party of the duke of Guise, supported by the queen and the clergy, triumphed over the friends of the Bourbons; they renewed the persecutions of the former reign with greater severity, and established tribunals called *Les chambres ardent*, because they condemned protestants to flames.

19. These atrocities roused the persecuted to resistance, a conspiracy was formed to destroy the family of Guise, and place all the authority of the state in the hands of the Bourbons; but all who shared in the plot were sworn to attempt nothing against the king, the two queens, and the princes. By the imprudence of La Renaudie, one of the leaders, the whole plot was discovered; the court retired to Amboise on the Loire, the duke of Guise was appointed lieutenant-general of the kingdom, and detachments of soldiers stationed on the several roads, arrested the parties of conspirators who were proceeding to the appointed place of rendezvous. 20. These unfortunate men were mercilessly butchered, twelve hundred were put to death in Amboise by the most cruel tortures, while Catherine de Medicis and the ladies of the court witnessed their sufferings as a most gratifying spectacle. The prince of



Francis II.

Condé was more than suspected of having had a share in this conspiracy, but he defended himself with so much eloquence and ability before the council that he was set at liberty.

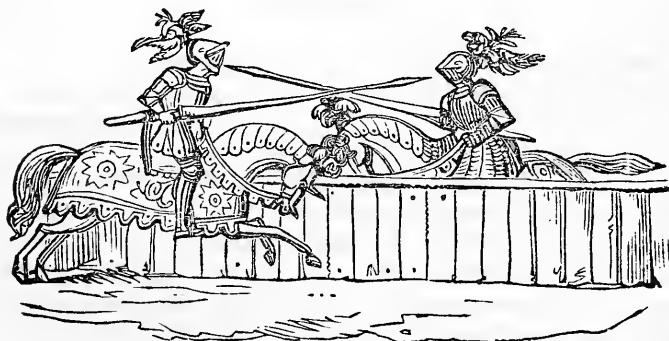
21. Soon after these transactions, the admiral Coligny had the courage to present a memorial in favour of the protestants, to the king in council. A debate ensued, in which two bishops, John de Montluc and Charles de Marsillac, strenuously advocated the cause of the petitioners, asserting that the religious schism was not so much attributable to the preaching of the reformers as to the tyranny of the pontiffs and ignorance of the clergy. The result of this council was a convocation of the states-general at Orleans. 22. The king of Navarre and the prince of Condé were summoned to attend, and a solemn pledge for their safety was given. They had, however, scarcely arrived when they were arrested and thrown into prison. They had formed a new conspiracy against the Guises, which had been betrayed by one of their agents, and their destruction was fully determined. The prince of Condé refused to plead before the commissioners appointed to conduct his trial, and appealed to the court of peers. Sentence of death was passed against him, but the chancellor de l'Hôpital, the only honest minister in the court of France, exerted himself to save the prince, and interposed so many delays that he eventually succeeded; for while Condé was thus on the brink of destruction, the king was suddenly seized with an abscess in the head, and died after an illness of a few days. This unexpected event caused an immediate change in the politics of all parties; Catherine de Medicis set the prince of Condé at liberty, because she wished to secure the aid of the Bourbons in checking the power of the house of Lorraine.

23. Francis was not quite eighteen months upon the throne, and had just attained his seventeenth year at the time of his death. His remains were treated with the greatest neglect, so intent were the queen-mother and the rival princes to secure their own power. His unfortunate consort, Mary, queen of Scots, was compelled to quit the brilliant court of France and return to her native country. As if foreseeing the calamities which awaited her at home, she gazed on the receding coast of France with tearful eyes, nor could she be persuaded to quit the deck of the vessel until night interrupted her view. It is said that Elizabeth, irritated with Mary for having claimed the crown of England, intended to intercept her return, and that she only escaped by accident.



*Questions.*

1. Did Henry observe the advice given him by his father?
2. By whose influence was the authority of Catherine de Medicis controlled?
3. What was the state of Europe at this time?
4. What great revolution was effected in Germany?
5. How was the war terminated?
6. How did Charles succeed in his war with France?
7. What induced him to resign his crown?
8. Where did the war next break out?
9. How did the duke of Guise conduct affairs in Italy?
10. Describe the causes and results of the battle of St. Quentin.
11. Did the Spaniards improve their victory?
12. How did the French nation behave on this occasion?
13. What important conquest was made by the duke of Guise?
14. On what conditions was peace made?
15. By what accident was Henry killed?
16. How were the Protestants treated during this reign?
17. By what dissensions was the reign of Francis II. disturbed?
18. How did religion increase the evil?
19. By whose treachery was the enterprise of the Protestants disconcerted?
20. How were they treated?
21. What remarkable persons advocated the cause of toleration?
22. How was the prince of Condé rescued from death?
23. What were the consequences of the death of Francis?



The Tilting between Henry II. and the Count of Montgomery



Charles IX.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

## CHARLES IX.

Oh shame to religion! when God's holy word  
Is proclaimed by the trump and confirmed by the sword.

CUNNINGHAM.

1. THE hopes entertained by the French people that  
A. D. 1560. the late king, on attaining the years of discretion,  
would have put an end to the factions by which the  
country was distracted, were frustrated by his premature  
death; and France was now in a worse condition than it had  
been at the decease of Henry II. The houses of Lorraine  
and Bourbon were at the heads of the Catholic and Protestant  
parties: they were bitterly exasperated against each other,  
not merely on account of religious differences, but also in consequence of the late attempts against the life of the prince of Condé. Catharine de Medicis, intent on usurping the power

of the state, intrigued with, and betrayed both parties, dealing out treachery with the most perfect impartiality. The duke of Guise, not having the same claim on power that he possessed during the former reign, entered into alliance with the constable Montmorenci and the marshal St. André, an union which was very aptly designated the *triumvirate*. 2. The prince of Condé and the admiral Coligny were the leaders of the Protestant party, but were weakened by the defection of the king of Navarre, who, with his characteristic weakness, joined the party of his most bitter enemies. Catharine saw that under these circumstances the duke of Guise would be her most formidable opponent, and as a counterpoise she procured a formal acquittal of the prince of Condé from the states, and published an edict in favour of toleration. The zealous catholics of the kingdom took the alarm; they believed that their church was in danger, and every where prepared to defend their faith by force of arms. The protestants on the other side, confiding in the protection of the court, re-opened their churches, and publicly celebrated the reformed worship.

3. When the minds of two parties are thus inflamed, a small spark will suffice to produce a conflagration. A. D. 1562.  
The duke of Guise, while coming to Paris, happened to pass on the road a congregation of Hugonots worshipping their God in a barn. Some of his servants insulted the protestant assembly, a scuffle took place in which many were wounded on both sides, and some of the protestants killed. This event, which both parties misrepresented, was the signal of civil war. 4. The duke of Guise and his friends took possession of the person of the king and brought him by force to Paris, where the citizens were all in their interest. Catherine, who had fallen into the usual error of all intriguing persons, that of using too much dissimulation, was obliged to follow in her son's train. The prince of Condé proceeded to Orleans and put himself at the head of the protestants, a party inferior in number, but possessing that species of sullen enthusiasm which cannot be subdued by defeat, or cooled by misfortune. 5. The first important enterprise was the siege of Rouen, the principal support of the protestant cause in Normandy; after a gallant defence it was taken by assault, and for eight days given up to be plundered at the mercy of a bigoted and savage soldiery. Its governor, the count de Montgomery, whom Catharine hated for having accidentally killed her husband, made his escape with some difficulty to Havre. 6. In the assault, the king of Navarre received a wound which his de-

bauchery rendered fatal; and died as he had lived, "halting between two opinions," for he received the sacrament from a catholic minister, and immediately afterwards declared that if he recovered he would become a champion of protestantism. His dying recommendation to his wife and son was, to keep away from the court, and to be always on their guard against the treachery of Catharine and the Guises.

7. The Hugonots soon after experienced a second calamity; they waited for their enemies at St. Dreux, in Normandy, and in the early part of the engagement, slew St. André, took Montmorenci prisoner, and put an entire wing of the enemy to flight; but the fortune of the day soon changed, the protestants were every where repulsed, the prince of Condé taken prisoner, and their entire army only saved from destruction by the able manner in which the admiral Coligny covered the retreat. 8. Inspired by this victory the duke of Guise laid siege to Orleans, which was on the point of being captured, when the duke received a wound in the shoulder from a pistol fired by a person named Poltrot, who had been lying in wait for him. The assassin was arrested, and being put on the rack, declared that he had been instigated to make the attempt by Coligny. But little credit is due to an accusation obtained by torture, and it is worthy of notice that when Coligny demanded a truce, in order that he might be confronted with Poltrot, he met with a peremptory refusal. 9. The duke only survived six days: before his death he exhorted Catherine to lay aside her schemes of persecution, and make peace with the Hugonots. He left behind him three sons, of whom the eldest became duke of Guise; the second cardinal of Guise, and the third duke of Mayence; his only daughter was married to the duke de Montpensier. He appears to have been a nobleman possessed of many good qualities, which ambition and bigotry perverted to his own destruction and that of his country.

10. During this period, Catharine was diligently employed in strengthening her authority, and, by alternately holding out hopes to the two great parties which divided the kingdom, she rendered both subservient to the purposes of her ambition; under pretence of an interview with her daughter the queen of Spain, she held a conference at Bayonne with the duke of Alva, the most cruel persecutor of the reformed religion, and at the same time pretended to the protestant princes that she was anxious to secure the free toleration of their faith. The subsequent cruelties of Alva, when he assumed the govern-

ment of Flanders, greatly alarmed the protestants ; the prince of Condé and the admiral Coligny, believing that their lives were in danger, formed a plan for surprising the court at Meaux, and would have succeeded, had not their march been unaccountably delayed until Catharine and her son had time to escape.

11. A second civil war began ; the prince of Condé, far from being disconcerted by his failure at Meaux, surprised the town of St. Denys and set fire to twenty-four windmills in sight of the walls of Paris. Though his forces scarcely exceeded three thousand men, he held the city blockaded for six weeks, and then fearlessly gave battle to the constable Montmorenci, who was marching to its relief with about twenty thousand soldiers. The battle lasted three hours ; it ended in the defeat of the Hugonots, but their adversaries had not much reason to boast of their victory, having lost their leader Montmorenci and a great number of their bravest troops. The defeat of the insurgents was not so pleasing to Catharine as the death of the constable ; she had now seen every person removed who could dispute her authority, and she was enabled to gratify the ambition of her favourite son Henry by having him appointed to the command of all the royal forces, with the title of the king's lieutenant-general. But Henry of Anjou was not able to compete with Condé ; the protestants, though abandoned by their allies, made so vigorous a resistance, that the court consented to grant them peace on favourable conditions.

12. An iniquitous attempt to seize the admiral and Condé led to the third civil war ; they narrowly escaped from their pursuers, and fled to Rochelle, whither they were followed by the whole force of the protestants, in spite of the resistance of the royal troops. The queen of Navarre, accompanied by her son the prince of Bearn, afterwards Henry IV. of France, joined the revolters, and they were further strengthened by queen Elizabeth of England, who sent Condé a sum of money and a considerable supply of ammunition and artillery. The duke of Anjou on the other side took the field with a powerful force, commanded by the best generals of the age. An engagement soon took place at Jarnae, in which the protestants were routed, and their leader, Condé, after surrendering himself a prisoner, was murdered in cold blood. The admiral made an excellent retreat, Jane of Navarre encouraged the protestants not to despair, and induced them to choose as their leaders her son the prince of Bearn, and Henry, the son of

their late general Condé. Though again defeated at Moncarnet, the protestants maintained so bold an aspect, that the court again had recourse to negociation, and granted all the demands of the Hugonot leaders.

13. The events which followed have been so fiercely controverted, and so foully misrepresented by rival parties, that it is not easy to determine the truth from the contradictory statements. In the following account, the authorities from which the narrative is deduced, are the contemporary memoirs of persons who were actors in the scenes, and strict attention has been paid to the distinction between the facts which they saw, and the conjectures which they formed. Charles, who was now about twenty years of age, was, or affected to be, weary of the state of pupillage in which he was kept by his mother, and jealous of the preference which she showed for her favourite son, Henry of Anjou. He averred that the merit of the peace was his own, and that he had made it, in spite of the queen-mother, the Spaniards, and the Guises. His directions respecting the execution of the treaty were more favourable to the protestants than the articles themselves; and, finally, he intimated his design of giving his sister in marriage to the prince of Bearn, threatening the duke of Guise with death for daring to aspire to the hand of that princess.

14. The difficulty is to determine whether Charles was sincere in this line of conduct, or whether he was induced by his mother to adopt a course of dissimulation unparalleled in the annals of human wickedness. The memoirs of his brother and sister attest his sincerity, which is rendered still more probable by the weakness of his character and the violence of his passions; qualities quite inconsistent with the astonishing power of hypocrisy ascribed to him by the contrary supposition. He was informed that the admiral was sending some assistance to the oppressed protestants, and Charles not only declared his approbation of the proceeding, but promised to aid the enterprise, and actually commenced preparations for the purpose. He finally invited the admiral to court, and treated him with the greatest confidence and kindness.

15. Henry of Anjou, afterwards Henry III. of France, declares that he and his mother were greatly alarmed by the king's avowed determination to make the admiral Coligny his principal adviser. Nor were these alarms groundless; a project had been formed by some influential persons for changing the succession to the crown, and recognising Francis, duke of Alençon, as heir to Charles, instead of Henry, duke of Anjou.

and several of the protestant leaders openly favoured the project. It would be impossible indeed to describe the various intrigues which agitated the courts both of France and Navarre when they met in Blois to arrange the terms of union between the princess Margaret and Henry of Navarre.

16. Early in the negotiations Jane, queen of Navarre, died ; many suspected that she was poisoned by the agency of Catharine de Medicis, who dreaded a rival possessing so much talent, discretion, and influence, but the examination of the body refuted this suspicion, and the protestants showed that they did not believe the charge by continuing to frequent the court and urge forward the preparations for the marriage. On the 17th of August, Henry of Navarre, <sup>A. D.</sup> 1572. the founder of the Bourbon dynasty, was affianced to the princess Margaret, but she was so disinclined to the match that she refused to sign the contract ; and when the marriage ceremony was performed she would not speak, but the king her brother forced her to nod her head, which was taken as a sign of consent. The marriage took place on a Monday, which, with the three following days, was spent in revelry and rejoicing. 17. On Friday the 22d of August, as the admiral was walking from the court to his lodgings, he received a shot from a window in the street, which wounded him severely in the left arm. He immediately said, "Behold the fruits of my reconciliation with the duke of Guise." In the evening the king visited Coligni and said, "Though it is you who are wounded, it is I who suffer !" At the same time Charles vowed that he would take vengeance on the assassins.

18. The admiral suspected that his murder had been planned by the duke of Guise, but there is abundant evidence to prove that the crime was planned by Henry of Anjou and the queen-mother, who were both afraid of the political influence which the admiral had acquired, and alarmed, lest he should persuade the king to alter the succession in favour of the duke of Alençon. Their failure in the murder increased their peril ; the protestants had gained evidence implicating the duke of Anjou, and they imprudently vented their rage against him and his mother, vaunting that the king was of their party. 19. Catherine de Medicis, under these circumstances, held a cabinet council, which was attended by the following persons : Henry, duke of Anjou, afterwards king of Poland and France ; Gonzagua, duke of Nevers ; Henry of Angoulême, grand prior of France, and natural brother to the king ; the marshal de Tavannes, and the count de Retz. 20.

After a brief debate it was resolved to massacre all the chiefs of the protestant party, and it was with some difficulty that the more merciful or more prudent of the party obtained an exception in favour of the king of Navarre and the prince of Condé. It was further resolved, that the execution of this atrocious plot should be entrusted to the duke of Guise; that the guards should be placed under arms, that the city militia should be assembled by its officers, and that the work of destruction should commence when a signal was given by ringing a bell at the Louvre.

21. These resolutions were adopted late on Saturday, and were communicated to the young king by his mother. The unfortunate Charles shrunk with horror from the atrocity proposed to him, but the persuasions of his mother, the dread of a new civil war, and the hopes of reigning without control prevailed; he passed from one extreme to the other, and exclaimed, "If any are to die, let there not be one left to reproach me with breach of faith." But his mother and brother were still so much afraid of his hesitating or altering his mind, that they gave the signal before midnight, the hour originally appointed.

22. Scarcely had the bell sounded when the duke of Guise, accompanied by some nobles of his party, and a detachment of Swiss guards, attacked the house of the admiral Coligni, and soon forced an entrance. Awakened by the noise, the admiral sprung from his bed, and perceiving that his life was principally sought, commanded his attendants to make their escape while he faced the assassins. These soon rushed into his room; the aged hero fell under a multitude of wounds; and his body, after having been treated with savage indignity by the duke of Guise, was suspended from a gibbet. Coligni's attendants were slaughtered as they attempted to escape over the tops of the houses, and amongst the victims was the gallant Teligny, son-in-law of the murdered admiral. 23. In the Louvre itself the gentlemen in waiting on the king of Navarre and the prince of Condé, were butchered in the king's presence; two of them, wounded and bleeding, sought shelter in the bed-chamber of the young queen of Navarre, and were pursued thither by the assassins. 24. The princess herself had been kept in ignorance of the plot, and was in some danger of falling by the random blows of the pursuers; she hurried to her mother's chamber, followed by other shrieking victims, beseeching her pity and claiming her protection. But she was helpless, and in momentary dread that the lives



of herself and her husband would be sacrificed with the rest.

25. We must now direct our attention to the other incidents of this fearful night. The infuriate populace filled every part of the city with corpses; old and young, male and female, rich and poor, all who were Hugonots, or suspected of favouring their principles, were mercilessly slaughtered. The aged, borne down by the decrepitude of years, were extended on the same pile with the infant that had scarcely seen the light; whole families lay exposed together on the same bloody couch; and the monsters who conducted this butchery, added insults to the dead and dying which will not bear to be recorded. 26. From the palace windows, Catharine beheld with a fiendish joy the progress of the murderers. Her son having recovered from his indecision, had now gone into the opposite extreme, and resolved himself to bear a share in the massacres; he posted himself with a musket at one of the windows facing the Seine, and fired on those who endeavoured to escape by swimming across the river. 27. The protestants in the suburbs hearing the shouts in the city, supposed that their brethren had been attacked by the faction of the duke of Guise, and resolved to go and solicit the protection of the king, whom they still believed their friend. Fortunately, they could not obtain immediate admission at the gates; during the delay, a wounded fugitive acquainted them with the real state of affairs, and they had time to make their escape before the arrival of the soldiers sent for their destruction.

28. The massacre continued eight days with scarce any intermission. Many Catholics were destroyed in the indiscriminate slaughter. "It was heresy to possess wealth, to hold an envied office, to have a personal enemy, or an avaricious heir." At length, when more than five thousand had been slain, the murderers ceased their labours from actual weariness. 29. The young king of Navarre and the prince of Condé were spared, but were compelled to conform to the Catholic religion. The king had the honour of procuring their conversion; his arguments were, it must be confessed, rather difficult to be resisted, since they consisted only of three emphatic words, "*the mass, the bastille, or death.*"

30. Orders were sent to commence a similar massacre in the provinces. Some governors obeyed, but others immortalized their names by a spirited refusal. The viscount d'Orthe, governor of Bayonne, wrote to the court that "the king had many brave soldiers in that garrison, but not a single execu-

sioner." The bishop of Lisieux acted in a manner worthy of his dignity and Christian character. When the commandant had exhibited to him the orders of the court, "You shall not execute them," he replied; "those whom you wish to murder are the sheep entrusted to my charge; they have strayed, indeed, but I am daily endeavouring to bring them back to the fold. The gospel does not command the shepherd to massacre his charge; I read there, on the contrary, that he should lay down his life for theirs."

31. It had been originally the intention of Catharine and Charles to throw the entire blame of this atrocious proceeding on the duke of Guise; but when Guise and his party refused to accept such a tremendous responsibility, they changed their mind, and glorying in their wickedness, ordered a medal to be struck in commemoration of the event, with the motto, *Pietas armavit justitiam*, "Piety has armed justice." 32. At Rome and in Spain, thanksgivings were offered up for this triumph of the faith, and Pope Gregory XIII. ordered it to be celebrated by a jubilee! In every other part of Europe it was regarded with just detestation, and *the massacre of St. Bartholomew*, as it was named from the day of its perpetration, made the name of France odious in every land where the inquisition was not established. 33. In concluding this painful narrative, it may be remarked that every one of the actors in the horrid tragedy seem to have been overtaken by divine vengeance. The duke of Guise was assassinated by the command of his partner in guilt, the duke of Anjou, afterwards Henry III. Henry met the same fate on the very spot where he had first joined in the conspiracy, the cardinal of Lorraine died raving mad, Catharine de Medicis met a worse fate, she lived on to an unhonoured old age, imprisoned by her favourite son, deserted by all her former friends, tormented by the pangs of disappointed ambition, and still more by the consciousness that she was the object of universal scorn.

34. Notwithstanding the share that Charles had in the massacre, his subsequent remorse entitles him to our pity, and renders it probable that he was the involuntary agent of his mother through the entire transaction. Immediately after it, he had boasted that "he should now enjoy peace," but peace was ever after a stranger to his bosom. The visions of a troubled conscience haunted his pillow, a terrible disease that caused blood to issue from every pore of his body, rendered his life miserable, and he had every day more reason to believe that his infamous mother was inclined to hasten his death in order

to procure the crown for her favourite son the duke of Anjou. 35. To these calamities was added a civil war, which burst forth with new violence. The Hugonots, indignant at the massacre of St. Bartholomew, took up arms with a firm resolution never to lay them down until they were secured in the free profession of their religion: they made Rochelle the capital of their league, and chose as their leaders the king of Navarre and the prince of Condé, who had escaped from the Louvre, and again embraced that religion which they had only resigned through terror. The duke of Anjou was appointed by Catharine to conduct the royal army, much against the will of Charles, who viewed his brother with just suspicion. 36. The king's forces being far superior to the Protestants in number, were enabled to undertake the siege of Rochelle. The inhabitants of the town made a gallant resistance, they valiantly repelled the assaults of the besiegers, and endured with patience the severest extremities of famine. 37. Henry of Anjou was at length wearied of the protracted siege, and besides, received an account of his election to the crown of Poland. Under these circumstances, he con-  
A. D.  
1573.
cluded a treaty with the Protestants on the most favourable conditions, and returned to Paris. 38. He did not, however, on his arrival display any great alacrity to visit his new kingdom. Love or ambition made him linger at court, until Charles, becoming hourly more jealous of his designs, threatened to proceed to violence. Catharine then interfered; she desired her son to depart for Poland, adding that his delay there would not be long, and Henry at length set out, to the great gratification of the king.

39. Catharine was now the real sovereign of France, but the use she made of her power provoked the hostility of all parties. Charles was eager to shake off her authority, but his mind and body were so enfeebled by disease, that he was unequal to the exertion. The Hugonots looked on her as an incarnate fiend, and the Catholics suspected her sincerity. To add to the distraction of the kingdom, a third faction now sprung up, who called themselves the *politicians*. They professed themselves indifferent to the religious disputes, but declared that their object was to reform the state, humble the Guises, exclude the queen from the administration, and banish all Italians from the kingdom. The Montmorencis were the first who formed this design, in which they were joined by the duke of Alençon the king's brother, and by all the leaders of the Protestant party. 40. A new war was just commenc-

ing, when Charles concluded his miserable career in  
 A. D. the twenty-fourth year of his age and the fourteenth  
 1574. of his reign. His last act was to appoint his mother  
 regent until the return of his brother from Poland. Catharine  
 is said to have obtained this appointment from him with great  
 difficulty, and to have been bitterly reproached by him for all  
 the crimes that he had committed by her instigation.

41. Nature had gifted Charles with a fine form, talents  
 above mediocrity, and a good disposition; but his mother,  
 intent only on acquiring power, had designedly corrupted his  
 education, and early instructed him in every species of vice.  
 He was so accustomed to the absurd vice of swearing, that  
 oaths formed the ordinary staple of his conversation. His  
 temper was violent and unregulated, his manners coarse and  
 boorish, his amusements disgraceful and infamous. To coin  
 false money, to play such practical jokes as the most riotous  
 school-boy would be ashamed to own, were the favourite pas-  
 times of this sovereign. But as he grew up, he discovered  
 his errors when too late; just as he was about to atone for  
 them by commencing a new mode of life, death arrested him  
 in the midst of his imperfect resolutions. His last hours were  
 disturbed by remorse for the massacre of St. Bartholomew;  
 with his latest breath he declared how agonizing was the re-  
 membrance of the event, and asserted that he had been forced  
 to sanction it by his mother.

---

### *Questions.*

1. Who were the leaders of the parties by which France was  
distracted?
2. What was the origin of the league?
3. How did the civil war originate?
4. In what manner was it commenced?
5. How was the city of Rouen treated?
6. What remarkable person was slain in the assault?
7. Did the Hugonots suffer any other defeat?
8. What remarkable circumstances attended the assassination  
of the duke of Guise?
9. In what manner did he die?
10. How were the years of peace spent?
11. What caused the second civil war?
12. Did the new peace continue?
13. For what was the battle of Jarnac remarkable?
14. Did Charles change his policy towards the protestants?
15. Why were Catharine and Henry alarmed?

16. Did any circumstances create suspicion among the protestants?
17. When was Coligni shot?
18. By whom was the murder of Coligni contrived?
19. Who attended the secret council held by Catharine?
20. What was the resolution of the council?
21. How was the king induced to consent?
22. On whom was the first attack made?
23. Did Coligni's attendants escape?
24. Were any persons murdered in the palace?
25. Were there many other victims?
26. Did the king recover from his indecision?
27. How were the protestants in the suburbs saved?
28. How long did the massacre continue?
29. Were any of the protestant leaders spared?
30. Did any persons of distinction refuse to join in the massacres?
31. How was this atrocity commemorated?
32. In what manner was the account received in other countries?
33. Did the perpetrators of the massacre escape punishment?
34. What calamities did Charles endure?
35. Were the Hugonots totally destroyed by the massacre?
36. To what town did the king's brother lay siege?
37. How was Rochelle saved?
38. Why was the king jealous of his brother?
39. What new party appeared in France?
40. How was a civil war prevented?
41. What was the character of Charles?



The Dukes of Guise.



Henry III. and his Queen.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

## HENRY III.

The baffled prince in honour's flattering bloom  
 Of hasty greatness finds the fatal doom;  
 His foes' derision and his subjects' blame;  
 And steals to death from anguish and from shame.

JOHNSON.

A. D. 1574. 1. THE death of Charles without heirs gave the throne of France to Henry III., the favourite son of Catharine; he had joined in all her plots and persecutions, had been the commander of forces against the Hugonots in the field of battle, and their virulent persecutor in the time of peace. But in his progress to Poland, the coolness with which he was treated by the princes of Germany, had served to show him the horror with which the massacre of St. Bartholomew was viewed by all but the slaves of Rome, and he never after amidst his many crimes and follies showed himself a persecutor. 2. On learning the news of his brother's

death fearing to be detained by the Polish nobles, he abandoned his kingdom secretly; some of the nobility followed him beyond the boundaries, and to them he gave an indefinite promise of returning at some future period, which he had no intention to perform. The Poles eventually elected another king, and Henry and his former subjects seem speedily to have forgotten the existence of each other.

3. In his earlier years, Henry had shown some traits of a manly and energetic spirit, but all traces of it seemed to have disappeared at his accession. He showed from the very beginning a dislike of serious occupations, a devotion to trifles and debauchery, and a total abandonment of all the cares of government to his mother and his favourites. 4. Catherine encouraged these dispositions, which allowed her to gratify her insatiable thirst of dominion. The two great parties by which the kingdom was divided, had now acquired so much strength and consistency, that impartiality was scarcely possible; the royal council was similarly divided; the president, de Thou, treading in the steps of the chancellor de l'Hôpital, recommended that peace should be established on the basis of an amnesty for the past, and a toleration of the protestants for the future; the partisans of the duke of Guise would be contented with nothing short of a total extirpation of heresy. The queen, as usual, endeavoured to make both parties subservient to her purposes; but her arts had been too often practised to be any longer available, and both parties prepared to recommence the war, if indeed they can be said ever to have laid it aside.

5. The duke of Alençon, who afterwards obtained the title of duke of Anjou, and the king of Navarre, had been restored to liberty by Henry immediately after his arrival in France; but finding themselves exposed to suspicion, and deprived of all interest in the state, they quitted the court to place themselves at the head of the politicians and the protestants. 6. The war was distinguished by no great exploit on either side, and was terminated by a peace, in which more favourable conditions were granted to the Hugonots than they had hitherto obtained. The violent catholics, headed by the duke of Guise, loudly protested against this treaty, which they deemed subversive of the established religion, and entered into an alliance called the *Holy League*, in defence of what they called *true Catholicity*. The declared objects of his union were to defend the church, the king, and the state; its effects were the dishonouring of religion, the murder of the

A. D.  
1576.

king, and almost the utter ruin of the nation. As soon as the Hugonots had learned the news of this powerful combination for their destruction, they prepared to defend themselves, and stood to their arms in every part of the provinces. 7. Henry III., after some vain attempts to remain neutral, embraced the party of the league, and recalled the edicts of toleration which he had lately issued ; but there is some reason to doubt his sincerity in this transaction ; in fact, he seems to have placed himself at the head of the league, merely to exclude the duke of Guise from being appointed its leader.

8. For five years the history of France presents nothing to our view but a series of petty combats, enterprises badly planned and worse executed, treaties hastily made, and as hastily broken ; treachery, disunion, and discontent in every part of the kingdom. The protestants were broken into as many parties as there were leaders ; the king of Navarre, who was nominally their head, suffered full as much from the jealousy of his followers, as from the malice of his enemies ; on the other hand, the king mortally detested the duke of Guise, whose popularity with the clergy and people made him a rival rather than a subject, and the duke despised the king, to whose incapacity he attributed the continued existence of heresy. 9. An unexpected event produced a new change of parties, by compelling the queen-mother and the duke of Guise to remove the veil which had hitherto concealed the objects of their ambition. The duke of Anjou having

A. D.  
1578. deserted the king of Navarre, became apparently reconciled to his brother, and even led an army against those Hugonots of whom he had been once the leader. 10. But not being able to continue at the court of his brother, where he found himself equally detested and despised, he secretly fled into Flanders, and placed himself at the head of the provinces which had revolted from the crown of Spain. The states of Holland chose him for their prince, partly influenced by a belief that he was likely to become the husband of queen Elizabeth, and that they would thus obtain the assistance both of England and France. But Elizabeth had no intention of marrying any body, she coquetted with the duke of Anjou as she had done with many others, and broke off the negotiation when it seemed on the point of being completed. 11. The report was, however, serviceable to the duke, as it facilitated his reception by the Flemings, and gave him some authority with his new subjects. But the prince soon lost these advantages ; he displayed incapacity in the field



and treachery in the cabinet, until at length being detected in an attempt to make himself king, he was compelled to fly into France, where he died overwhelmed with shame and vexation.

12. The death of the duke of Anjou, and the improbability of Henry's ever having any children, soon A. D.  
1584. made the members of the league develop their real designs. Henry of Navarre, according to the fundamental laws of the kingdom, was the next heir to the crown; but as he was only related to the king in the fourteenth degree, and was besides a protestant, Catharine and the duke of Guise severally laboured to prevent his succession. Catharine resolved, in defiance of the Salic law, to procure the crown for the descendants of her favourite daughter, the duchess of Lorraine; the duke of Guise, with duplicity equal to her own, pretended to join in her design, but strenuously laboured to procure the rich inheritance for himself. 13. The clergy were the foremost in exciting a new war; every pulpit resounded with declamations on the dangers of the church if the throne were possessed by a protestant, every confession-box became the means of secretly whispering treason into the ears of the populace, and the press, which was almost totally in the hands of the ecclesiastics, produced daily the most inflammatory appeals to the prejudices and bigotry of the nation. In these invectives the king was not spared; his severe edicts for raising new taxes, his lavish profusion to unworthy favourites, his disgraceful debaucheries, and the hypocritical grimace which he substituted for devotion, furnished ample scope for satire; and it was said in addition, that he had formed a secret alliance with the king of Navarre for the protection of the Hugonots. 14. The duke of Guise was the main-spring of all these complicated movements; as he could not openly claim the crown for himself, he persuaded the old cardinal of Bourbon, uncle to the king of Navarre, that he was the right heir to the crown in consequence of his nephew's heresy. The cardinal, whom contemporary historians briefly but emphatically designate an *old fool*, was easily persuaded to assert his chimerical claim, and published a manifesto declaring himself chief of the league. Henry, however, could not be persuaded to set aside the claims of his cousin, the king of Navarre, even though that prince had refused to come near the court after he had been frequently invited, and had firmly resisted every attempt made to persuade him to change his religion.

15. The accession of the king of Spain to the league A. D. 1585. became the signal for renewing the war; the Protestants fought no longer for their privileges but for their existence; the duke of Guise scarcely concealed his designs upon the throne, the king of France was exposed to the attacks of both factions, and was in equal danger from the success of either. This is generally called the war of the three Henrys, viz. the king of France, the king of Navarre, and the duke of Guise. 16. The most extraordinary of all the matters connected with this tedious conflict was the conduct of the pope; though the league was professedly intended to exalt the power of the holy see, Sextus V. looked upon it as a rebellious alliance, equally dangerous to the interests of royalty and religion. Possessed of as proud and ambitious a spirit as any pontiff that had ever held the papal throne, he revered in others any manifestations of that courage and vigour which formed so conspicuous a part of his own character. He excommunicated Henry of Navarre and queen Elizabeth; the former made a spirited appeal to a general council, and had his defiance posted on the gates of the Vatican; Elizabeth excommunicated the pope in her turn. When Sextus heard of those instances of intrepidity, he declared, that though heretics, these were the only sovereigns in Europe that deserved to wear a crown.

17. But whatever may have been the private sentiments of the pope, his bull afforded a pretext to the leaguers, of which the duke of Guise was not slow in availing himself. The leaders of the sixteen departments into which Paris was divided, the entire mob of that city, all the clergy, regular and secular, were on his side; and the deposition of Henry III. was an object openly avowed by his partisans. The duke's brother, the cardinal of Guise, declared publicly that the king should be sent into a monastery: his sister, the duchess of Montpensier, whom Henry had insulted by some remarks on her want of personal beauty, exhibited the scissors which were to give him the clerical tonsure.

18. Henry of Navarre began now to show some proofs of those noble qualities, which have since deservedly procured for him the title of *Great*. The weakness and indecision of his father had shaken the confidence of the protestants in the house of Bourbon; but his mother had redeemed the errors of her husband; she was adored by her subjects, with whom she loved to reside, far from the intrigues and vices of the court. In the remote and wild districts of Bearne, Henry re-

ceived the education of a hardy mountaineer, and was early taught to encounter difficulties and dangers. When brought to court, he was not proof against the seductive arts by which Catharine de Medicis endeavoured to bring him over to her party. Indifferent as to the means by which her ends were accomplished, Catharine laboured with some success to lead the young prince into habits of debauchery, in order that she might rule his actions by means of the artful mistresses with which she had supplied him. But the impending dangers of the league woke him from his dream of guilty pleasure; he placed himself at the head of the protestant party when its fortunes were at the lowest ebb; often defeated but never conquered, he maintained his ground amidst the violence of enemies and the insincerity of friends, until he finally triumphed, as much by the admiration inspired by his moral character, as by the terror of his arms.

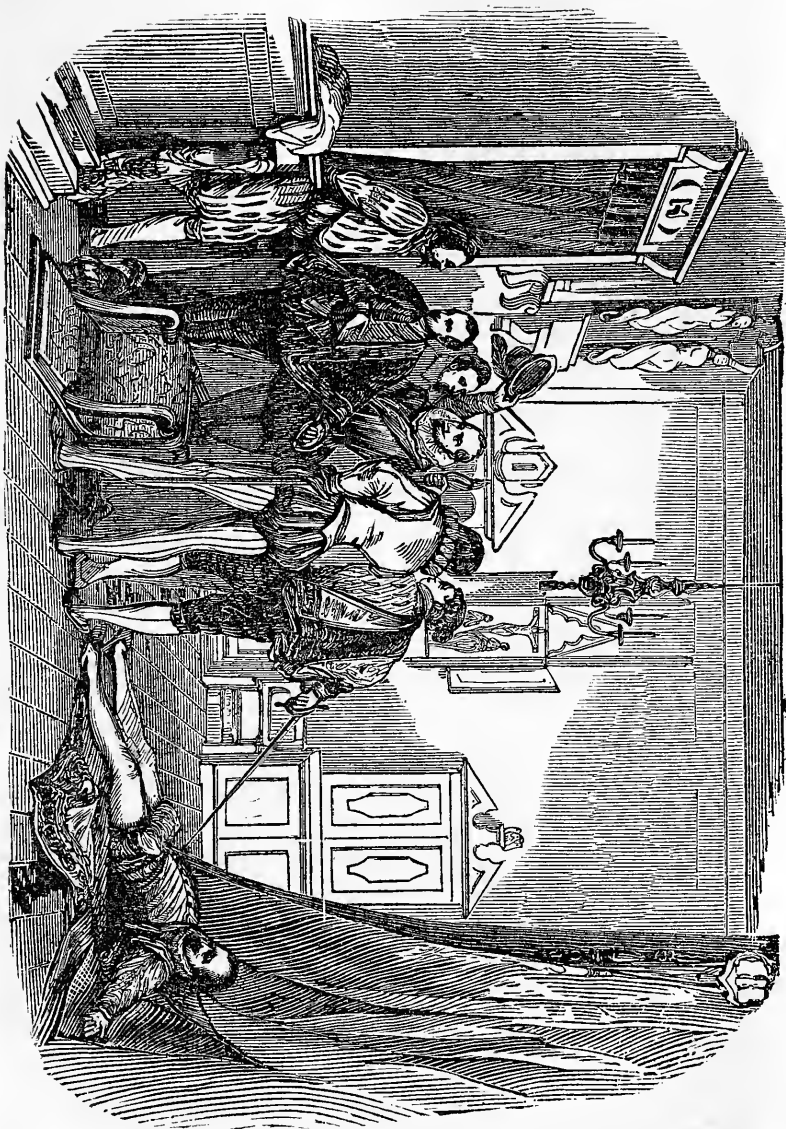
19. Catharine made some ineffectual efforts to prevent this war by negociation, but being distrusted by <sup>A. D.</sup> 1587. both parties, she completely failed. The royal army, under the duke of Joyeuse, an unworthy favourite of Henry's, was totally defeated at Contras by the king of Navarre. On the other hand, the duke of Guise cut to pieces an army of Germans, who had invaded France to make a diversion in favour of the Hugonots. The populace of Paris were so intoxicated with joy at the news of the victory obtained by their idol, that Henry, who had appeared for some time to have resigned all care of the state, was roused from his lethargy by the imminent peril that threatened his crown and life. 20. He sent an express to Guise, forbidding him to approach Paris; but the duke, pretending not to have received <sup>A. D.</sup> 1588. the royal mandate, hastened his approach to the city, and was received there with all the honours of a triumph. In order to reduce the power of the *Sixteen*, Henry introduced a body of his Swiss guards into Paris, but the citizens, instigated by the partisans of Guise, immediately took up arms; the shops were shut, the alarm bells rung, barricades and chains were drawn across the streets, and the soldiers driven back from post to post, until the king found himself and his attendants closely penned up in the Louvre. Henry escaped during the night, leaving the duke of Guise in full possession of the capital, but Catharine remained behind to exert her arts of intrigue in bringing about an accommodation. 21. A treaty was concluded, which neither party intended to observe, and in consequence of one of its stipulations, an assembly of the

states was ordered to be held at Blois. The debates and votes in this assembly sufficiently showed the dangerous designs entertained by the duke of Guise, and the great resources that he possessed for their accomplishment. To proceed against him for high treason would have been absurd, when all the states of the realm were in his favour; open war would certainly terminate in the king's defeat; nothing then remained but the detestable means of assassination, and this Henry determined to adopt. 22. A letter from pope Sextus greatly contributed to confirm his resolution; his holiness advised the king "to render himself master of his rebellious subjects by any means in his power." Having armed nine of his most rusty followers with daggers, Henry sent to invite the duke of Guise to a speedy conference on matters of the utmost importance. The duke hastened to obey, but just as he was about to enter the room in which the king was, the assassins fell on him altogether, and he was instantly slain. His brother, the cardinal, shared the same fate on the following day. Thus fell, in the prime of life, two men whom nature had endowed with abilities that might have made them the brightest ornaments of France, but which bigotry and ambition had rendered useless to themselves and pernicious to the nation.

23. Henry proceeded from the scene of blood to his mother's apartments, and announcing to her the news, said, "Now, madam, I am indeed a king;" she heard the account with the utmost indifference, but advised him to take advantage of the confusion which the event would cause in the league, and secure Paris. But Henry, believing all danger removed by the death of his greatest enemy, relapsed into his ordinary indolence. Soon after, Catharine, overwhelmed with sorrow at the disappointment of all her schemes, and broken down by witnessing the ruin which her profligate ambition had brought on her children, felt herself sinking into an unhonoured grave. Her last advice to Henry was to establish liberty of conscience, and to enter into close alliance with Henry of Navarre. She died unlamented and almost forgotten: the dissolution of one who had played so prominent a part was regarded everywhere as an ordinary incident of trifling importance.

24. Instead of "finding himself indeed a king," Henry, in consequence of his crime, was on the brink of ruin. The members of the league openly threw off their allegiance, and choosing as their leader the duke de Mayenne, the brother of the murdered duke, gave him the pompous title of "lieutenant-general of the royal state and crown of France," which was

Assassination of the Duke of Guise.





in fact giving him the authority of a sovereign without the name. 25. Most of the provinces and large cities of France declared in favour of the league, and Henry saw no hopes of preserving his authority unless he obtained the assistance of his cousin of Navarre. That prince suspected the king's sincerity, for once, unjustly, and remembered too well the share that Henry had taken in the massacre of St. Bartholomew to trust him too readily. But their natural necessities compelled both to bury their former animosities in oblivion; the two Henrys had an interview at the castle of Plessis <sup>A. D.</sup> 1589. les Tours, and entered into a close alliance which was never afterwards violated. 26. Henry III. was now superior to his enemies; he advanced to Paris and laid close siege to the city; the inhabitants were unprepared for his attacks, they had but a small stock of provisions and an inadequate garrison; the duke de Mayenne was unable to collect an army for their relief; every thing seemed to promise a speedy surrender, when an unexpected event produced a new and total revolution.

27. A monk, named James Clement, was persuaded by his own fanaticism, aided by the artful suggestions of some of the leaguers, that he would perform a meritorious action by killing a monarch who was an enemy to the church. For this purpose he resolved to go on to St. Cloud, where the king resided, and under the pretence of giving him a letter, stab him in the midst of his guards. Never did an assassin display so much intrepidity; on his road he met La Guesle and his brother, who were going to join the royal army; he was by them conveyed to the camp, and spent the night of his arrival in their tent. He supped gaily with La Guesle's followers, retorted with considerable humour the jokes passed on his monkish habit, readily answered every question put to him, and after leaving the table, spent the night in a profound sleep. On the following morning he was introduced to the king, and presented his letters; while Henry was engaged in looking at them, Clement stabbed him with a knife which he had concealed in his sleeve; the king immediately called out that he was murdered, and drawing out the knife from the wound, struck the assassin in the face; at the same time the attendants despatched him with their swords. The death of Clement prevented any discovery of those by whom he had been instigated to the atrocious deed, but it appears very probable that the family of Lorraine were those who had most share in the contrivance, in revenge for the murder of the duke of Guise

When Henry found that his wound was mortal, he prepared for death with much apparent resignation. He took an affectionate farewell of the king of Navarre, whom he declared his successor, after having strenuously exhorted him to conciliate his future subjects by embracing the Catholic religion. Having then confessed himself with much apparent devotion, he expired in the 38th year of his age and the 15th of his reign. 28. With him ended the house of Valois, which had held the throne of France for 261 years. During their dynasty, the several independent principalities into which Gaul had been so long divided, were consolidated into the single compact kingdom of France; but this advantage was more than counterbalanced by the establishment of arbitrary principles of government, and the continual weakening of the influence previously possessed by the assemblies of the states.

---

### *Questions.*

1. What made Henry sensible of the folly of persecution?
2. How did he part from the Poles?
3. In what way did he behave on his accession?
4. What was the state of parties at this time?
5. Who placed themselves at the head of the malcontents?
6. What party was opposed to peace?
7. Why did Henry place himself at the head of the league?
8. How did the several parties conduct themselves during the war?
9. In what manner did the duke of Anjou behave to the protestants?
10. What circumstances favoured his enterprise against Flanders?
11. What caused his death?
12. What intrigues were formed about the succession to the crown?
13. By what means did the clergy inflame the nation?
14. Whom did the duke of Guise use as a cover for his own ambition?
15. Why was the war renewed?
16. How did pope Sextus behave?
17. Were the leaguers personally hostile to the king?
18. What was the character of Henry of Navarre?
19. How was the war conducted?
20. To what danger was the king exposed from the partisans of the duke of Guise?
21. Why could not the king punish the duke by course of law?
22. To what means did he resort?





Assassination of Henry III.



23. What remarkable person died about this time?
24. Did Henry derive any advantage from the murder of Guise?
25. With whom did the king of France reconcile himself?
26. What siege did he undertake?
27. By whom was Henry III. assassinated?
28. How long did the house of Valois possess the throne of France?



Valet and Footman of Henry III.



Henry IV., his Queen, and the Dauphin.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

### HENRY IV.

But be thy failings cover'd by thy tomb,  
And guardian laurels o'er thy ashes bloom!

HAYLEY.

**A. D. 1589.** 1. THE death of Henry III. relieved Paris from the imminent dangers to which it had been exposed; the title of Henry IV. was indeed acknowledged by the principal leaders of the besieging army, but his religion prevented them from warmly espousing his cause; the greater part drew off their forces, and Henry was compelled to raise the siege, which his diminished forces could no longer continue. The duke of Mayenne, who might have assumed the title of king, chose rather to proclaim the cardinal of Bourbon, though he remained a prisoner; and having collected a numerous band of leaguers, he pursued Henry on his retreat to Normandy. 2. The royalists, though inferior in numbers, gained two brilliant victories at Arques and Ivry, over the partizans of the league; but though these triumphs served to

raise the character of Henry, they were not sufficient to crush a party bound together by their own bigotry, the gold of Spain, and the spiritual authority of the pope. 3. His own followers gave the king nearly as much trouble as his enemies; the catholic royalists detested the Hugonots; the protestants returned the hatred, and were, besides, divided amongst themselves; the princes of the blood were either too young to exert any influence, or had ranged themselves under the banners of the league, and Henry found himself engaged in this dangerous war almost solely dependent on his own personal resources. 4. The king of Spain was anxious to obtain the crown of France for his daughter, Clara Eugenia; the protestant princes of Europe, dreading the additional power that would thus be added to the Spanish monarchy, already formidable, resolved to support the cause of Henry, the queen Elizabeth, especially, assisted him with money and warlike stores.

5. These aids, and the confidence inspired by several successive triumphs, soon enabled Henry to under-  
A. D.  
1590.
take the siege of Paris, where the hatred of the leaguers displayed itself with more violence, in proportion as the king showed himself more worthy of affection. Though their shadow of a king, the cardinal de Bourbon, had lately died, and they had not selected any other in his place, so far were they from thinking of submitting to their rightful sovereign, that the doctors of the Sorbonne declared that Henry, being a relapsed heretic, could not receive the crown *even though he should obtain absolution*, and this shameful decree was confirmed by the parliament. 6. In the meantime, Paris being closely blockaded and ill supplied with provisions, was attacked by all the horrors of a severe famine. Bread was made of bones ground into powder, food the most revolting was eagerly sought after, multitudes dropped daily dead in the street from extreme starvation, but no one spoke of yielding. The clergy had promised a crown of martyrdom to all who died in the cause of the church, and their deluded followers submitted to every privation without a murmur. Still, had Henry not been moved with a paternal pity for his frantic subjects, he might have taken Paris by assault; but when urged to give orders for the purpose, he replied—"I had rather lose Paris, than get possession of it when ruined by the death of so many persons." He gave the fugitives from the city a safe passage through his camp, and permitted his officers and soldiers to send in refreshments to their friends. By this lenity he indeed lost the fruit of his labours for the present, but he

gained the approbation of his own conscience and the admiration of posterity. 7. The prince of Parma, who commanded the Spanish army in Flanders, advanced to the relief of Paris when the citizens were at the very point of despair; by a series of masterly movements, he disconcerted the efforts made by Henry to bring on an engagement, relieved the garrison, and returned to continue his wars with the Dutch; after having performed this essential service to the league with scarcely the loss of a man. 8. The following year, Henry met a similar disappointment at the siege of Rouen, where the escape of the prince of Parma was effected under such difficult circumstances, that Henry could scarcely believe the evidence of his senses when he found that the hostile troops were beyond his reach. 9. Death soon after delivered the king from this formidable rival; the prince died in Flanders at the age of forty-seven; his military talents and great virtues would have brought the United Provinces again under the yoke of Spain, had it been possible to find a remedy for despotism and persecution.

10. The conduct of the Sixteen at Paris, contributed much to weaken the influence of the league; these hot-headed rebels pretended to give the law both to the duke de Mayenne and the parliament. When a man whom they wished to destroy was acquitted, they suddenly broke out into the most furious excesses, and actually hanged three of the magistrates who had been judges at the trial, amongst whom was Brisson, the first president of the parliament. The duke de Mayenne acted on this occasion with a promptitude and decision foreign to his character; he marched to Paris at the head of his most trusty followers, delivered the most violent of the murderers to the executioner, deprived the Sixteen of the Bastille, which had been their principal stronghold, and thus finally crushed a detestable faction, which derived its whole strength from the madness of fanaticism. 11. But these favourable events were not sufficient to put Henry in possession of the kingdom, while he professed a religion odious to the majority of his subjects; his most faithful followers, protestant as well as catholic, recommended him to change his religion, and Henry only delayed through fear of offending Elizabeth and the protestant princes of Germany. At length, finding that the states-general had proceeded so far as to offer the crown to the Spanish infant, on condition of her marrying a French prince, Henry saw that further delay might bring ruin on his cause, and publicly abjured protestantism in the church of St. Denis. 12. Though this conversion was any thing

but sincere, it was followed by the most beneficial effects. The nobility, in general, hastened to reconcile themselves to a king whose character they respected, and most of those who still held out, only did so in hopes of receiving some reward for returning to their allegiance. 13. The duke de Mayenne and some few of the more violent leaguers, however, obstinately refused to acknowledge the king, until he had received absolution from the pope ; the bigoted clergy preached with their accustomed vehemence against *the man of Bearn*, as they still called their sovereign ; but the efforts of some men of genius who had joined the royal cause, weakened the force of their invectives. 14. Several ingenious writings against the follies and absurdities of these ignorant bigots, especially the *Menippean satire*, covered them with such merited ridicule, that they found their declamations unheeded and neglected. At length Paris opened its gates to Henry, and found in him not a vindictive conqueror, but a paternal sovereign. 15. While he was employed in giving the

A. D.  
1594.



Henry IV. Entering Paris.

most remarkable proofs of his beneficence and zeal for the public good, his life was attempted by a young fanatic, named John Chatal. When the assassin was interrogated, he pleaded in excuse the doctrine of tyrannicide, which he had learned among his masters, the Jesuits, and had heard preached by the

Capuchins. The parliament having witnessed so forcible a proof of the dangerous tendency of the doctrines preached by these monastic orders, commanded them to be banished from the kingdom.

16. At length the long expected bull of absolution  
A. D. arrived from the pope ; and the leaguers having no  
1595. further grounds of resistance, prepared everywhere for submission. The duke de Mayenne set the example, and during the remainder of his life was one of Henry's most faithful and devoted subjects ; the other chiefs followed his example, but exacted a high price for the purchase of their loyalty, which Henry, notwithstanding the disordered state of his finances, faithfully paid. 17. Philip, king of Spain, was now Henry's only enemy ; and even he, notwithstanding his blind and brutal obstinacy of character, saw that the league was irretrievably ruined. He still continued the war, captured Calais, and soon after added to his conquests the city of Amiens, which his forces surprised. 18. But Henry soon recovered the latter, and forced the Spanish army to retreat. The protestants were naturally displeased with the king for having

deserted their religion, and were inclined to create disturbances in the provinces. Henry, therefore, to conciliate this portion of his subjects, issued the celebrated  
A. D. edict of Nantes, by which they were granted a perfect toleration  
1598. of their religion, and full security both in person and property. 19. Soon afterwards the war with Spain was terminated by the treaty of Vervins, which Henry, by the tacit consent of his allies, the Dutch and English, concluded separately with Philip. 20. The death of the Spanish king followed in a short time after the conclusion of this pacification, and with him the power of Spain seems to have terminated. His efforts to crush protestantism in Europe, dictated by bigotry rather than by policy, were eminently unsuccessful, and served in the end to ruin the country which was cursed with him as a sovereign. England defeated the armada arrogantly named *invincible*, and crushed the naval power of Spain ; Holland succeeded in throwing off Philip's yoke, and acquiring independence ; the league perished in France ; his only successful project was the establishment of the inquisition in Spain, which long continued to degrade that unhappy country.

21. The return of peace and tranquillity produced a period of comparative happiness in France, to which its inhabitants had been long unaccustomed. The protestants, indeed, thought that Henry was not sufficiently grateful to his oldest and most



faithful friends, but the nation in general were delighted with a monarch, whose greatest anxiety was to prove himself the father of his subjects, and who, unlike all his predecessors, extended his care to the peasantry, who had been hitherto treated as an inferior class of beings. 22. But though the dispositions of the king were noble and generous, it is doubtful whether they would have proved so beneficial, had they not been directed by his faithful friend and able minister, the marquis de Rosny, afterwards duke of Sully. Under him the



Sully.

finances, which were in a frightful state of disorder, were, by a series of judicious measures, made available for the services of the kingdom; commerce, which had been oppressed by a load of monopolies and absurd restrictions, was unfettered; industry was every where encouraged, useful public works undertaken, and the administration of justice purified from the corruptions which had long made it a system of legalized iniquity. Henry, too sensible to the allurements of pleasure, was frequently made the dupe of his mistresses, and the beautiful Gabrielle d'Estrees had so much power over him, that he designed to marry her if he could obtain permission from Rome to divorce his wife, Margaret of Valois, with whom he had not lived for several years. On the death of Gabrielle, Henry took as his second mistress Henrietta d'Entraques, an artful woman, who very nearly succeeded in becoming his queen. Henry showed his promise ready signed to Sully, when the virtuous minister, transported with indignation, in-

stantly tore it to pieces. "I believe you are mad," cried Henry in a rage. "It is true, I am mad," replied Sully, "and I wish I were the only madman in France." Henry was finally divorced from Margaret, and soon after married Mary de Medicis; by her he had a son who afterwards succeeded him, but in every other respect the match was unfortunate.

23. During the wars of the league, the duke of  
 A. D. Savoy had made several encroachments on the territory  
 1600. of France; the exertions of Sully had supplied the king with the means of punishing these usurpations, and he accordingly commenced a vigorous war against that prince. It began and ended in one campaign; the duke was compelled to beg a peace, which he could only obtain by the cession of a considerable portion of his dominions. 24. But the duke had left the seeds of rebellion in the kingdom, and even seduced the marechal de Biron, who had been one of Henry's best and earliest friends, to obliterate the remembrance of his former services, by joining in a treasonable conspiracy against his country and his king. Henry, who had the most unquestionable proofs of his guilt, offered him a pardon if he would candidly confess his crime; but Biron obstinately refusing to make any acknowledgment, he was delivered over to justice. It is remarkable that this nobleman, who had always exhibited great personal bravery in the field of battle, betrayed the most womanish weakness on the scaffold; so much does heroism consist in a consciousness of moral rectitude.

25. The kingdom of France for several years continued to enjoy the fruits of an excellent administration, and saw her strength revive with her happiness; but plots were daily contrived against the king, principally fomented by his perfidious mistress d'Entragues. So infatuated was Henry, that he continued his affection to this perfidious woman even after he had received the most unequivocal proofs of her guilt. The duke de Bouillon, who had received the greatest marks of kindness, endeavoured to excite a new civil war, by working on the discontents and disappointments of the Hugonots. Henry having in vain tried gentler methods, at length marched against the duke, and deprived him of his principality, Sedan, but restored it again on his repentant submission.

26. These disturbances did not, however, produce  
 A. D. any serious effect on the general tranquillity of France;  
 1606. under the prudent administration of Sully, that country was fast recovering from the evils that had been inflicted

by the civil wars ; and Henry being left at liberty to direct his attention to foreign affairs, endeavoured to merit the name of the *Pacifier of Europe*, a title more honourable than that of the most illustrious conqueror. The republic of Venice had provoked the hostility of the court of Rome, by sentencing to capital punishment an Augustine monk, who had been guilty of the most enormous crimes, and prohibiting the alienation of lands to the clergy, who had become a burden to the state, from their numbers, their extensive possessions, and their exemption from taxation. Paul V., who was then pope, excommunicated the republic, and not trusting entirely to the efficacy of ecclesiastical censures, levied an army in order to compel the Venetians to submission. Henry, perceiving the scandal that this war was likely to bring on religion, successfully offered himself as a mediator, and notwithstanding the vehement opposition of the Spanish court, effected a reconciliation. The states of Holland, though virtually independent, were not as yet acknowledged as a separate state by their former masters, the Spaniards ; the war had now lasted forty years, and the Dutch had not only driven their oppressors out of the country, but also obtained several important settlements in the extremity of Asia. 27. Henry mediated a peace between the new states and their former rulers ; a labour of no small difficulty, for the Spanish court, with the same obstinate pride by which it is distinguished at the present day, preferred a nominal title over their former subjects, to the solid advantages of a beneficial peace. A. D. 1609.

28. We are told by Sully, that Henry meditated the formation of a *Christian republic* in Europe ; it was proposed to divide Europe between fifteen sovereigns, none of whom should be permitted to make any new acquisition, but should form altogether an association for maintaining a mutual balance and preserving peace. This project was one of very questionable utility, and at all events could never be realized ; his second object, to set bounds to the ambition of the house of Austria, both in Germany and Italy, was more practicable, and more immediately useful. 29. He had already made the necessary preparations for this enterprise, when the emperor, Rodolph II., furnished him with a pretence for commencing the war, by sequestrating the duchies of Cleves, Juliers, and Bergue, after the death of the last duke. Henry entered into a league with the elector of Brandenburg and the count Palatine of Neuburg, who both pretended to the succession. The protestants of Germany, always justly suspicious of Austrian

treachery, formed a new alliance for the protection of their civil and religious liberties, of which Henry was privately the contriver, and publicly the chief support. The pope, the republic of Venice, and the confederacy of the Swiss cantons, all led by separate interests, were united in the common resolution of checking the imperial power.

30. Never was any enterprise better concerted. Henry was to march into Germany at the head of forty thousand excellent soldiers. Sully had provided ample resources for the expenses of the army; the allies were all eager to perform their several stipulations. On the other side, the emperor was immersed in the study of astrology, and a vain search after the philosopher's stone; his only supporter, the king of Spain, was the slave of bigotted inquisitors and avaricious favourites; both were destitute of wisdom, confidence, and resources. 31. Henry was impatient to join the army, but was detained much against his will to gratify the queen with the vain ceremony of a coronation, which she insisted on with the most eager violence. During the festivities which took place on this occasion, the mind of Henry was distracted by the most gloomy forebodings, and he more than once felt that "coming events cast their shadows before," in fearful anticipations of a sudden and violent death. 32. His apprehensions were fatally fulfilled. Passing along a street, his coach was entangled in a crowd, and a desperate fanatic, named Ravailiac, took that opportunity of stabbing him. The assassin mounted on the hind wheel of the coach, and plunged a knife into the king's bosom, who was so intent on the perusal of a letter, that he did not even see his murderer. The courtiers who were in the coach drew up the windows, and ordered the driver to return to the Louvre, but life was extinct before they reached the palace. 33. Thus died at the age of fifty-seven a prince worthy of immortality, against whom more than fifty conspiracies were formed by his contemporaries, but whose memory has been hallowed by the admiration of posterity, and whose reign might serve as a model to all princes who love their subjects. Let us bury in oblivion a few spots which stain his private life, weaknesses which are unhappily too common to heroic minds, and honour him for the clemency which he showed to his inveterate enemies, the wisdom with which he tranquillized a land distracted by civil wars for nearly half a century, and the enlightened toleration of which he gave a bright example himself, and recommended the practice to his successors. 34. Much of the glory both of the public works that Henry ex-

cuted, and those still greater which he had projected, undoubtedly belongs to Sully ; but it is no small praise to have selected such an adviser, and to have borne with patience the reproofs which Sully frequently gave him with a boldness almost republican. The king was happy in possessing such a minister, and the minister was as happy in having such a king. The nation was still more fortunate in enjoying such a rare combination as a virtuous sovereign and a patriotic administration.

### Questions.

1. Why was Henry IV. compelled to raise the siege of Paris ?
2. Did he obtain any victories ?
3. What was the state of parties at this time ?
4. How were foreign powers divided ?
5. In what manner did the clergy show their inveterate hostility to Henry ?
6. How did Henry's generosity prevent the capture of Paris ?
7. By whom was the siege raised ?
8. Did the king subsequently meet with a similar disappointment ?
9. What was the character of the prince of Parma ?
10. By whom was the power of the *Sixteen* overthrown ?
11. What change was necessary to secure Henry's final success ?
12. Was this attended by any beneficial result ?
13. Did any party still hold out ?
14. How were the hostile exertions of the clergy made ineffectual ?
15. Why were the Jesuits expelled from France ?
16. How was the civil war terminated ?
17. Were there any remarkable events in the Spanish war ?
18. What was the edict of Nantes ?
19. Where was peace concluded with Spain ?
20. What was the character of Philip of Spain ?
21. How did Henry treat his subjects ?
22. What benefits resulted to France from the administration of Sully ?
23. How did the war with the duke of Savoy terminate ?
24. What former favourite of Henry proved a traitor ?
25. Whose intrigues still disturbed France ?
26. How did Henry obtain the title of the Pacifier of Europe ?
27. Why was it difficult to mediate a peace between Spain and Holland ?
28. What curious project is Henry said to have meditated ?
29. Aided by what states did Henry resolve to attack the empire ?
30. Why was this a favourable opportunity ?
31. How was the king's march delayed ?
32. What misfortune was the consequence ?
33. Was Henry a good sovereign ?
34. Who shares the glory of this reign ?



Louis XIII.

## CHAPTER XXX.

## LOUIS XIII.

Talents angel bright

If wanting worth are shining instruments,  
 In false ambition's hands, to furnish faults  
 Illustrious, and give infamy renown.

YOUNG.

A. D. 1610. 1. THE assassination of Henry IV. overthrew the whole structure which his wise conduct had raised, dispelled all the hopes that lovers of their country had formed, and plunged the kingdom into every species of misfortune. In the midst of the public sorrow, the queen and several of the courtiers could scarcely conceal their joy at the removal of the restraint which had hitherto checked their ambition and rapacity. Louis XIII. was but nine years old, and the appointment to the regency was a natural source of all the artifices of political intrigue. 2. The queen dowager, Mary de Medicis, was like her predecessor Catharine in desire of power, but was not quite so unscrupulous in the use of ini

quitous means for its attainment. Her great friend and assistant, the duke d'Ep̄ernon, went to the parliament which was then sitting, and threatened violence if the queen were not immediately invested with the sole authority of the regency. That body, partly moved by his threats, and partly anxious to annex the legislative authority of the states-general to their judicial functions, complied with his request.

3. Nothing could equal the vices and follies of the new government. The Florentine Concini, Marquis d'Ancre, and his wife Eleanor, obtained a complete ascendancy over the mind of the queen, who was as weak in intellect as she was ardent in ambition. These two foreigners, equally rapacious and subtle, raised themselves from a condition below mediocrity to the summit of fortune. With them were joined the pope's nuncio, the Spanish ambassador, and a Jesuit named Cotton, the whole forming a secret conclave by which all the important measures of the state were directed, whilst the deliberations of the council of state were rendered an absolute nullity.

4. The objects that engaged their attention were to cement an union between France and Spain, by the marriage of Anne of Austria with the king, and his sister Elizabeth with the son of Philip III., to dissolve all the alliances formed in the last reign, to exterminate the Hugonots, and to dissipate all the treasures that had been collected by the economy of the former reign. 5. Sully soon became wearied of witnessing crimes that he could not check, and profusion that he could not control; he demanded and obtained permission to retire to his country-seat, where he passed the remainder of his life in literary retirement, engaged in composing those interesting memoirs of his own times, which have proved almost as useful to succeeding generations as his public life was to France. Once again he returned to court, when Louis XIII. wished for his advice. The young courtiers began to ridicule his old-fashioned dress and behaviour, which Sully perceiving, said to Louis, "When the king, your father, did me the honour of consulting me, he first dismissed all the buffoons of the court." This great man survived to the year 1641.

6. The misconduct of the government soon produced a civil war. The prince of Condé, with several of the most powerful nobles, took up arms, and the queen, unable to resist them in the field, was compelled to concede all their demands by the treaty of Sainte-Menehoulde. 7. One of these A. D.  
1614. was the convocation of the states-general, which were accordingly assembled, but spent their whole time in useless

disputation. The clergy insisted on the publication of the decrees of the council of Trent, which the other orders looked on as subversive of the independence of the kingdom; on the other hand, a proposal of the third estate to enact a law declaring, "That no temporal or spiritual power has a right to dispose of the kingdom and absolve the subjects from their allegiance," was rejected by the ecclesiastics as an heretical novelty. This can scarcely be deemed surprising when we learn that the regency annulled an arret of the parliament, declaring the king independent of foreign jurisdiction. One would almost have supposed that the court of Rome had presided in the king's council.

8. The parliament were at length roused to enquire into the state of the country; they made remonstrances to the court on the dissipation of the royal treasures, but were severely checked for intermeddling with affairs of state. The prince of Condé, placing himself at the head of the Hugonots again, had recourse to arms. After publishing a most violent manifesto, he suffered himself to be duped by the Italian artifices of the queen, laid down his arms, returned to court, and was shut up a close prisoner in the Louvre. Soon after, the Marchioness d'Ancre made a total change in the ministry, and promoted to the office of secretary of state, Richelieu, bishop of Luçon, who was afterwards destined to be the virtual sovereign of France.

A. D. 1617. 9. The Concinis, though equally despised and detested by the great, were long enabled to resist all their efforts; but they met with a more formidable enemy in young Luines, whose rise was almost as rapid and astonishing as their own. This man had risen to favour by his skill in training birds for the amusement of the monarch; he found means to inspire Louis with a jealousy of the authority possessed by the regency, persuaded him to shake off the yoke of his domineering mother, and the still more odious slavery in which he was held by foreigners, who, through her means, were his masters, and the actual rulers of his kingdom. 10. These insinuations produced their intended effect; orders were issued to arrest the marquis d'Ancre; and Vitri, captain of the guard, executed them according to the intention of Luines; that is, Concini was slain under pretence of having made some resistance. This service procured for Vitri a marshal's staff; the same honour had previously been conferred on one Themines, for having arrested the prince of Condé. What must the government have been



when such services were rewarded with the highest military honours! 11. The trial of the marchioness d'Ancre was a glaring mixture of folly and absurdity. The principal accusation against her was that she had obtained an influence over the queen by sorcery! When asked by her judges, "what magic she had used to fascinate Mary de Medicis?" she replied with equal sense and spirit, "the ascendancy which a superior genius has over a weak mind." The parliament declared her guilty of treason against God and man, without specifying any particular action which could be considered as either, and sentenced her to be beheaded, A. D. 1619. after which her body was to be burned.

12. The exile of the queen mother was a necessary consequence of the execution of her favourites; she was sent to Blois, where she intrigued with the duke d'Epemon to regain her influence by force of arms. Twice was she on the point of commencing a civil war, but the evil was on both occasions averted by negotiations, in the latter of which Richelieu was honourably distinguished. Luines imitated the example of the Florentines, whose ruin he had effected; he enriched himself with their spoils, and in a short time rose from the rank of a private gentleman to the very highest dignities of the state. His weak-minded master gave him the sword of constable, and, with still greater folly stirred up a war amongst his subjects, in which his favourite might have an opportunity of exhibiting his incapacity. 13. The edict of Nantes having been flagrantly and repeatedly violated, the Hugonots resolved to defend themselves from continued insults and oppressions: an assembly of their leaders was held at Rochelle, where it was resolved, unless their wrongs should be redressed, that they would throw off the yoke of France and erect a republic on the model of the Dutch.

14. The constable Luines, equally ignorant and presumptuous, imagining that he could easily crush this formidable party, undertook the management of the war; and Louis, at his instigation, laid siege to Montauban, but A. D. 1521. after having wasted much blood and treasure before its walls, was forced to make a hurried and disgraceful retreat; 15. Two great captains, the duke of Rohan and his brother Soubise, were at the head of the protestants, and nothing could detach them from a cause which they thought it their duty to defend. Luines died after this disgraceful expedition; the office of constable, which became vacant by his death, was an object sufficiently tempting to prevail on the brave but ambi-

ticus Lesdiguières, to desert his religion and his party; he abjured protestantism, and became a formidable enemy to the Hugonots, of whom he had long been one of the most favourite leaders. 16. The war was carried on with more valour than skill on both sides; in the attack on the island of Rhé, the king displayed great personal bravery, and cut to pieces a large body of the insurgents; but the Hugonots were still so formidable, that he was obliged to renew his former treaty with them, and again confirm the edict of Nantes; thus a desultory war was again terminated by an insincere peace.

**A. D.** 1624. 17. The entire policy of Europe was now about to undergo a complete revolution, effected by the superior genius of one man. We have already noticed the first introduction of Richelieu into public life, and the share that he had in reconciling the queen mother to her son; for this service he had been rewarded with a cardinal's hat; but the king had by an express stipulation, excluded him from holding any office in the state. Louis, who was not totally destitute of religious feelings, was disgusted by the cardinal's licentious life, which his sacred profession rendered more disgraceful. At length he yielded to his mother's importunities, and made Richelieu one of his council; the cardinal knew well how to improve the opportunity; five years after his appointment to the council, he became prime minister and all-powerful; but from the first moment of his introduction he was the master of all his compeers. 18. The great objects of the cardinal's policy were to destroy the Hugonots and humble the house of Austria. For this purpose he undertook and executed several preparatory measures of great importance. He concluded a marriage between Henrietta, the king's sister, and the prince of Wales, afterwards Charles I.; he delivered the Alpine province of the Valteline from the yoke of Rome and Spain; he concluded an alliance with the Dutch, who, though distracted by internal religious wars, were maintaining a vigorous contest against the Spaniards, and seizing on some of their most important colonies both in Asia and America. 19. Before Richelieu could undertake his magnificent projects with any chance of success, it was necessary to secure himself in the ministry against the factions of the French nobility, who still preserved some portion of their former feudal power. Gaston, duke of Orleans, brother of the king, was at the head of a party opposed to the cardinal, whose assassination he meditated. The fickleness and cowardice of Gaston was the ruin of his accomplices; he reconciled himself to the court by disclosing





Gaston, Duke of Orleans, disclosing the Conspiracy to Richelieu.

their conspiracy to Richelieu, and again formed new conspiracies, whose failure only served to strengthen the exorbitant power of the minister. Never had a statesman so many difficulties to encounter, but they only served to give scope to his genius, and his ambitious spirit supplied him with an energy and perseverance that triumphed over all opposition. 20. To authorise the changes that he intended, an assembly of the Notables was convoked; this was merely a convocation of the principal nobility, and did not, like the states-general, contain any popular representatives. Richelieu proposed several important measures for the reformation of finance, and addressed the assembly with equal wisdom and eloquence; he said that it was better to provide for the due execution of former edicts than to form new ordinances, and that actions rather than words would be found a proper remedy for the evils of the state. All his edicts were approved without opposition.

21. Whilst the genius of Richelieu ruled the whole kingdom of France, the duke of Buckingham, the imprudent minister of Charles I., was arming England against her ancient enemy. The imprudent zeal of Henrietta's catholic attendants had provoked the hostility of the English; the attacks made on their protestant brethren, the Hugonots, had excited the national sympathy in their favour, and Buckingham took advantage of these circumstances to revenge an insult which had been offered him by Richelieu. Whilst the English duke had been employed in negotiating the marriage between Henrietta and Charles, he was weak enough to form a romantic attachment for Louis's queen, Anne of Austria. Anxious to pay her a second visit, he passed over into France, under the pretence of concluding a treaty against Spain, but Richelieu being informed of his sentiments, caused him to be denied admittance at court, and Buckingham, irritated at his disappointment, resolved to encourage and support the Hugonots, who, equally suspicious and suspected, were again engaged in an insurrection. 22. The rashness of Buckingham caused the ruin of Rochelle, which had long been justly looked on as the principal bulwark of the French protestants. Richelieu undertook its siege in person, and showed, during its continuance, the valour of a soldier, the skill of a general, the wisdom of a statesman, but little of the attributes which belonged to his profession of an ecclesiastic. The duke of Buckingham, on the other hand, undertook nothing that did not prove his complete incapacity for the situation into which he had been thrust by the favour of his foolish sove-

A. D.  
1627.

reign. He made a descent on the isle of Rhé, which was badly contrived, and worse executed; after being disgracefully defeated he returned home, leaving Rochelle completely invested both by sea and land. To exclude the English succours, the cardinal had caused a mole to be constructed across the entrance of the harbour; he was not interrupted in the execution of this daring project, for the duke of Buckingham having been assassinated at Portsmouth, the sailing of the English fleet was delayed until after this great work had been completed. 23. The inhabitants of Rochelle bore all the horrors of a fierce siege and pressing famine, with unparalleled courage and patience. Guiton, their mayor, would not listen even to the proposal of a surrender; when told that the majority of the inhabitants were fast falling victims to hunger and disease, he replied—"it is enough if one remains to shut the gates." The mother and sister of the duke de Rohan animated the garrison by their spirited exhortations, and encouraged the citizens by their example of patient submission to privation. But, though heroic perseverance may be exhibited with the very faintest glimmerings of hope, it decays and perishes when the failure of the last faint expectation is witnessed. 24. The hope of relief from England had supported the Rochellans under all their sufferings; the English fleet hove in sight; the worn-down inhabitants crawled to the walls, eager to witness the success of this their last and only chance. They saw that fleet, after a weak and ineffectual effort to break through the mole, tack about and leave them to their fate. The courage by which they had been hitherto supported at once failed, they immediately surrendered almost at discretion, and a royalist garrison manned the walls of Rochelle, ere the topsails of the fleet that had been sent for their deliverance were out of sight. 25. The victorious army 1628. seemed, on entering the city, to have come into the abode of death; more than two-thirds of the inhabitants had fallen victims to the calamities of the siege, and the survivors resembled skeletons rather than living men; the streets were silent and deserted, "there was not a house in which there was not one dead;" and one of the victorious generals was compelled to exclaim, "we have only triumphed over carcases." A few days after the surrender of the town, a violent tempest destroyed the mole which had proved its ruin, but Richelieu had demolished the fortifications, and the citizens were too few and too dispirited to make any new attempt for freedom. 26. Nismes and Montauban shortly after surren-

dered, but as the protestants were still formidable, the cardinal granted them favourable conditions of peace. The cause of the Hugonots was, however, completely ruined; they no longer retained any of those cautionary towns, by the possession of which they could enforce the observance of treaties. They were wholly at the mercy of their enemies, and were destined in the next reign to experience how weak is the security of promises between the powerful and the feeble.

27. The cardinal having subdued the Hugonots prepared to execute his great scheme of humbling the house of Austria. The war was successful in Italy, A. D. 1629. but it was in Germany that the cardinal more fully displayed the resources of his genius, for he had there an ally, whose heroism has been rarely paralleled. The emperor Ferdinand, by the most flagrant violations of treaties, had provoked the protestant princes to take up arms: they found a leader worthy of their cause, in Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, whom history has honoured with the name of *the Lion of the North*. 23. This contest in Germany, which is usually called the thirty years' war, was supported by the money of France and the soldiers of Sweden; it was on the whole unfavourable to the imperial arms, notwithstanding the great abilities displayed by the generals Tilly and Wallenstein.

29. In the mean time, Gaston, duke of Orleans, instigated by the queen-mother, and encouraged by the duke of Lorraine, to whose sister he was married, renewed the civil war. Weaker even than his brother, this prince, the slave of unworthy flatterers, commenced rebellions to gratify his favourites, and then sacrificed them to obtain peace. The duke of Lorraine was punished by the loss of his best places, and the forfeiture of a great part of his dominions. The duke of Montmorenci, who had been induced to join in the plot by the hope of obtaining the office of constable, was still more unfortunate. Having fallen into



Gaston, Duke of Orleans.

the hands of his enemies, he was sentenced to expiate his ambition on the scaffold, and notwithstanding the great services his family had performed to the state, and the interest made to save his life by all the nobility of France, he was publicly executed. Gaston's marriage with the princess of Lorraine, having been contracted without the royal assent, was declared null by the lawyers of Paris, and set aside by the parliament. The quarrel between him and his brother was after some time accommodated, but bitter hostility still remained in the breasts of all the parties.

30. The death of Gustavus Adolphus, in the arms of victory, for a time checked the triumphant career of the protestants in Germany; but Richelieu, though the determined enemy of the reformed religion in France, saw that by supporting it in the empire, he could alone check the exorbitant power of the house of Austria. A new treaty was concluded with the duke of Saxe Weimar, and additional subsidies were sent to

A. D. 1635. enable him to carry on the war with vigour. 31. The hostilities between Spain and Holland still continued to the great advantage of the latter; Richelieu entered into close alliance with the Dutch, and by a treaty agreed to a partition of Flanders as if it had been already subdued. 32. The first and second campaigns were disastrous to the French; the soldiers mutinied for want of pay; the Dutch made but little exertion, dreading to extend the dominions of a neighbour so powerful as France to their frontiers; the Flemings continued faithful to Spain, because their municipal privileges were respected, and, with the single exception of the duke de Rohan, all the French generals exhibited the most signal proofs of presumption and incapacity. The Spaniards invaded Picardy, and were at first so successful, that the French trembled for their capital; but they lost all their advantages through the misconduct of their generals, and the spirit of national resistance which is roused in a patriotic people by an invasion. It would be equally superfluous and tiresome to enter into the particulars of a war so complicated, and carried on with such obstinacy, in which the strength of the powers was everywhere exhausted as well by victories as defeats. Suffice it to say, that the Spaniards were finally overwhelmed by a series of calamities, their armies were defeated by the count d'Harcourt, the Dutch admiral, Van Tromp, destroyed their fleet,

A. D. 1640. Catalonia revolted, and placed itself under the protection of France, and Portugal, having thrown off the yoke of Spain, placed the duke of Braganza on its



throne. 33. The death of Weimar and Bannier for a time dispirited the Swedes, but they had previously so weakened the empire by several brilliant victories, that Austria contended rather for independence than dominion; and their new leader, Tortenson, seemed not inferior to any of his predecessors.

34. The internal history of France presents us during this period with nothing but a series of intrigues for overthrowing the power of Richelieu, all of which were disconcerted either by his superior skill or the weakness of his enemies. These plots were fatal to many of the French nobility, for the cardinal procured from the corrupted courts of justice the condemnation of those who had conspired for his overthrow. He continued, however, to veil his passions under an air of grandeur. After the execution of the last victims that were sacrificed to his jealous fears for his security, he wrote to Louis XIII. in the following terms:—"Sire, your enemies are dead, and your arms are in Perpignan." That important town had been just taken from the Spaniards. 35. But when his power seemed to have arrived at its greatest height; when Mary de Medicis, who had been his early patron, but had subsequently become his most bitter and dangerous foe, had perished in misery and exile at Cologne; when the nobility dreaded him more than their sovereign, and seemed to have resigned all hopes of throwing off the yoke; at that moment he was surprised by the hand of death, and was cut short in the midst of his triumphant career. A. D.-  
1642.

36. Richelieu appears to have possessed shining rather than solid abilities; his enterprises were always vast and magnificent, but were not uniformly important and useful. His moral character was of the worst description, unscrupulous in the use of any means by which he might retain the situation of minister, he corrupted the administration of justice, and added to the legal murder of his opponents the mockery of an iniquitous trial before tribunals of his own selection. At the same time it must be confessed that the cardinal does not appear to have been worse than his rivals; public virtue seems at this period to have been banished from France, and if more of crimes are recorded of Richelieu than of his antagonists, let it be remembered that his situation was more conspicuous. In private life he was fond of show and grandeur, his expenditure equalled that of the sovereign, and the palace which he erected for his own residence (the Palais Royal) is still one of the noblest structures in Paris. He wished to be deemed a

patron of the fine arts, and had the vanity to think himself an excellent dramatic poet. But to this weakness must be opposed the vigour with which he resisted the whole nobility of France, and destroyed the remnants of their feudal power. It was during his administration that the government of France was finally formed into an absolute monarchy, and it was the remembrance of this that probably induced Peter the Great of Russia to exclaim, "I would give half my dominions for one Richelieu to teach me how to govern the remainder."

**A. D.** 37. Louis XIII. did not long survive his minister, **1643.** he died with apparent resignation in the forty-second year of his age and thirty-third of his reign, leaving his kingdom again exposed to all the evils of a long minority, for his son and successor had not yet attained his fifth year. Louis had so little share in the government of the kingdom, that he can scarcely be said to have reigned; his defective education and natural weakness of intellect subjected him completely to his servants, and it has been well observed by a late writer, that "during this reign Louis XIII. wore the crown, and cardinal Richelieu swayed the sceptre."

---

### Questions

1. Did any persons rejoice in the murder of Henry?
2. Who obtained the regency?
3. By whom was the power of the state usurped?
4. What were the designs of this party?
5. How did Sully act?
6. On what terms was the civil war terminated?
7. How did the assembly of the states act?
8. In what manner was the prince of Condé treated?
9. What rival of the Concini now appeared?
10. By whom was the marquiss d'Ancre arrested?
11. What accusations were brought against the marchioness d'Ancre?
12. How did the queen mother act?
13. To what resolution did the protestants come?
14. Who was sent against them, and how did he conduct the war?
15. By whom were the protestants deserted?
16. How was the war carried on?
17. Who now began to sway the destinies of France?
18. What measures did Richelieu take preparatory to his great designs?
19. How did Gaston, duke of Orleans, conduct himself?

20. In what manner did Richelieu manage the assembly of the Notables?
21. How did England become involved in a war with France?
22. What contrast was there between the character and conduct of the rival ministers of France and England at the siege of Rochelle?
23. Did the town make a vigorous resistance?
24. How were the inhabitants finally induced to surrender?
25. What was the state of Rochelle at the time of its capitulation?
26. On what conditions was peace made with the protestants?
27. What formidable enemy now assailed the empire?
28. By what name is this war known in history?
29. How did the duke of Orleans destroy his friends?
30. Were the protestants overthrown by the death of Gustavus Adolphus?
31. With whom did Richelieu enter into an alliance against Spain?
32. What general summary may be given of the events of the war?
33. By whom was the protestant cause maintained?
34. How did Richelieu conduct himself in France?
35. When did the cardinal die?
36. What was his character?
37. Did Louis long survive his minister?—what was his character?



Lady and Gentleman riding to Court.—Sixteenth Century



Louis XIV.

## CHAPTER XXXI.

## LOUIS XIV.—THE WARS OF THE FRONDE.

Each party joined to do their best,  
To damn the public interest,  
And herded only in consults  
To put by one another's bolts.

HUDIBRAS.

- A. D. 1643. 1. Louis XIII. on his death-bed had appointed by his will a council of regency, at the head of which were placed the queen, Anne of Austria, and the duke of Orleans. To insure its execution, he made the queen and the duke swear to its observance, after which he ordered it to be registered by the parliament. But all his precautions were unavailing; the grave had scarcely been closed over him, when his will was openly and shamelessly violated. The queen, being aided by the duke of Orleans, obtained an arrêt of parliament, giving to her the nomination of the council, and the right of appointment to all the great offices of state.
2. Having thus obtained all the real authority of the kingdom.

she chose as her principal adviser and minister, cardinal Mazarin, a native of Italy, whose diplomatic abilities had recommended him to the notice of Richelieu, and who seemed to have inherited all the ambition and much of the abilities of his patron. 3. The war with Spain still continued, and was maintained on the side of Flanders with distinguished ability by the duke d'Enghien, afterwards better known by the name of "the great Condé." On the death of the king, orders had been sent him not to risk an engagement; but anxious to relieve the important town of Rocroi, which was closely besieged, he resolved to hazard a battle. The Spanish infantry were at that time considered the best in Europe; they boasted that their lines had never yet been broken, and deemed that Condé was marching to certain defeat. But the judicious manœuvres of this youthful general soon humbled the pride of the Spanish veterans; in the third charge their ranks were broken, and their entire army hopelessly routed. 4. The capture of Thionville was the consequence of this brilliant victory, which may indeed be said to have placed Flanders at the mercy of France. From thence Condé proceeded to Germany, where the French had experienced some reverses; but the presence of this young hero soon changed the fortune of the war. 5. With inferior forces he attacked the imperialists in their entrenched camp near Friburg, and defeated them after an obstinate battle which lasted three days. Philipsburgh, Mentz, and several other fortresses on the Rhine, were the fruits of this brilliant victory. Gaston, duke of Orleans, had a little before made himself master of Gravelines, which had sustained a vigorous siege for two months. But the French were less successful in Catalonia, where Philip IV. defeated their forces, and captured the important towns, Lerida and Balaguier.

6. At the end of the campaign, Condé returned to Paris, leaving the command of the army to the marshal Turenne. This general advanced into the heart of the country to take advantage of a great victory gained by the Swedish general Torstenson, in Bohemia. On this occasion, Turenne committed a capital error, the only one, it is said, of which he had ever been guilty, by consenting to the separation of the allied forces: Merci, the imperial general, was not slow in taking advantage of this opportunity, he attacked the French at Manendahl in Franconia, and gained a complete victory. 7. On the receipt of this news Condé hastened to join Turenne, he then led his forces against the im-

A. D.  
1645.

perialists, attacked them at Nordlingen, and obtained a triumph even more glorious than his preceding victories.

8. The prince then marched to besiege Dunkirk, but Mazarin, jealous of his fame and influence, had him removed to the command of the army in Catalonia, where, for want of necessary succours, he could undertake no enterprise of importance. His inaction did not long continue; the emperor's brother, the archduke Leopold, having invaded Flanders and compelled the French army to retire, it was necessary to recal Condé and

send him again to the scene of his former glory. He was too late to relieve Lens, which surrendered almost in his sight. But he well avenged his countrymen in

the battle that ensued; he totally defeated the archduke after a brief but sanguinary engagement, in which he left it doubtful whether he had displayed more skill or valour. Never since the foundation of the monarchy had France obtained such a series of splendid triumphs; never before had Frenchmen exhibited so much courage and conduct.

9. On the other hand, the Spanish monarchy had experienced a succession of reverses at least equally remarkable; the loss of Hol-



Cardinal Mazarin.

land and Portugal had been followed by that of the Brazilian settlements in South America, and the most valuable Spanish colonies in the East Indies. 10. To these was added about this time the revolt of the Neapolitans, who chose as their leader a fisherman named Masaniello. This demagogue was afterwards murdered by the populace, who had only the day before hailed him as a divinity. The insurgents then resolved to establish a republic under the protection of France, and elected as doge the duke of Guise, who had some hereditary claims on Naples. Guise hastened to take possession of his new dignity, but receiving no succours from Mazarin, he was betrayed to the Spaniards and detained more than four years in prison. The Spaniards punished the revolters with fearful severity; no less than fourteen thousand are said to have been ruthlessly massacred. 11. Experience has given a

further proof of the truth of the remark made by the old Italian historian, Giannone, "No people," says he, "is more greedy and less capable of liberty than the Neapolitans. Giddy in their conduct, inconstant in their affections, unsteady in their opinions, they hate the present, and are too much depressed with the fears or hopes of futurity, according to the dictates of impetuous passion."

12. At length the separate interests of the several contending powers required them to think of peace. Spain and Holland, after a war which had been protracted for eighty years, were wearied of the contest; the former country saw that it would be vain to continue any further their labours for the subjugation of the revolted provinces; and the Dutch had begun to dread the dangerous increase of the French power. The complicated interests of the Germanic body, made the arrangement of the claims of the different parties a matter of considerable difficulty; but some new successes of the Swedes showed the emperor the danger of delay; and the dread of a civil war in France made Mazarin still more anxious to bring matters to a satisfactory conclusion. The inferior powers were obliged to follow the example of Austria and France; and at length the articles of the celebrated treaty of Westphalia were signed at Munster, on the 24th of October. A. D. 1648.

13. Spain and France were now the only countries that remained at war, and the civil dissensions that were caused in the latter by the unpopularity of the government greatly facilitated the progress of the Spanish arms. The hatred that the oppressive taxes and despotic edicts of Mazarin inspired, was the cause of this war. The parliament of Paris not only refused to register his edicts, but forgetting the bounds of their jurisdiction, abolished the intendants of provinces, who were instituted by Louis XIII.; and the court being filled with indignation, resolved to strike a decisive blow. By the cardinal's orders, a president and counsellor who had been distinguished for their vehement speeches against the court were arrested and thrown into prison. Upon this the Parisians took up arms, threw chains across the streets, erected barricadoes, killed several of the royal army, and had nearly made Mazarin himself the victim of their resentment. The cardinal, alarmed at the violence of the populace, displayed weakness as cowardly as his former proceedings had been rash, and ordered the prisoners to be set at liberty.

14. The opponents of the court took the title of Frondeurs,\* they were stimulated to action chiefly by the coadjutor to the archbishop of Paris, afterwards the celebrated cardinal de Retz, a man equally distinguished by abilities and profligacy. The leaders of the *Fronde* were the prince of Conti, brother to the great Condé, with the dukes of Longueville, Beaufort, Vendome, and Bouillon. Condé, though discontented, sided with the court, and when the parliament had declared their intention to take up arms, blockaded Paris. 15. This strange war was carried on by the pen as much as by the sword; every occurrence was made the subject of a jest or ballad; satires, lampoons, and *jeux d'esprit* of every description were circulated every hour; ladies of rank forgetting the dignity of their sex, forced themselves into every political intrigue; in short, the war was ridiculously begun, ridiculously con-

A. D. 1649. ducted, and still more ridiculously concluded. 16. A seeming accommodation was effected between the parties, a general amnesty was published, and the court returned to Paris. But the following year, the prince of Condé, whose pretensions knew no bounds, quarrelled with the cardinal, and was, in consequence, sent to prison; at the same time his brother, the prince of Conti, and his friend, the duke of Longueville, were arrested. 17. Mazarin could not have resolved on a bolder, or apparently a more successful measure. The populace celebrated with bonfires the imprisonment of those princes whom they had a few months before looked on as their patrons and defenders, and followed with shouts in the train of a minister so lately the object of their execration. But the intemperate vanity of Mazarin rendered this tranquillity of short duration; he affronted Gaston, duke of

A. D. 1651. Orleans, a man ever ready to change sides, and provoked the Frondeurs, who still breathed sedition. The parliament demanded the release of the imprisoned princes,

---

\* The origin of this name has been variously narrated, but the following account appears to be the most probable :—

At the commencement of the troubles, Bachaumont, a counsellor of the parliament, sportively said, that his associates were like school-boys, amusing themselves with a *fronde* (sling) in one of the city ditches; they dispersed themselves whenever the civil lieutenant approached, and collected together as soon as he had turned his back. This comparison was considered so applicable, that it was celebrated in songs, and on the same evening the parliament party put bands resembling slings round their hats. From thence forward the opponents of the court were called *frondeurs*.



and pronounced sentence of perpetual banishment against the cardinal. Mazarin went in person to release the prince of Condé and his associates, hoping that he might be able to attach them to his interest, but received from them only marks of contempt. He then retired to Liege and afterwards to Cologne, whence he still governed the queen-regent as absolutely as if he had never quitted the court.

18. Condé took up arms against the court, and was opposed by Turenne, who had formerly been a leader of the Fronde. The two great generals came to an engagement under the walls of Paris, in which the royalists were victorious, though the daughter of the duke of Orleans, by turning the cannon of the bastille against the king's forces, prevented them from immediately reaping the fruits of their triumph.

19. As the hatred against the minister seemed implacable, the king consented to his removal, and dismissed him after having made his eulogium in a declaration. The Parisians then joyfully opened their gates to their sovereign, and the face of affairs was entirely changed. The duke of Orleans went to end his days in banishment, the cardinal de Retz was imprisoned, and Condé took refuge with the Spaniards, where, like the constable of Bourbon, he found that all his former influence and all his former glory were annihilated the moment that he became a traitor.

20. To the storms of the *Fronde* succeeded so still a calm that Mazarin again appeared peaceably at court, resumed all his authority, and saw himself courted by every body, even by the parliament; a conclusion worthy of an absurd war, the history of which, as was observed by Condé, after he had played his part in it, deserved only to be written in burlesque verse. The faction of that prince were called the party of the *petits maitres*, because they wanted to make themselves masters of the state. In a short time the name *petits maitres*, given to youthful coxcombs, and the term *Frondeurs*, applied to factious censurers of the government, were the only relics of these foolish wars.

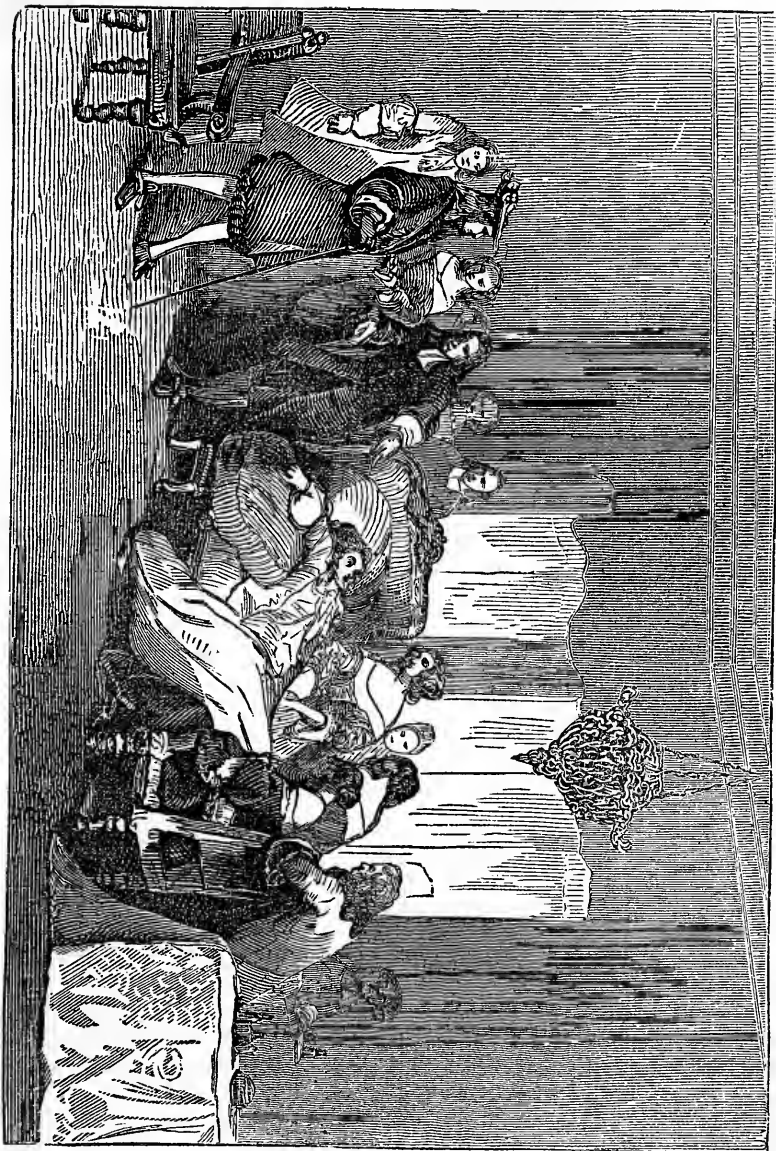
21. The Spaniards, during these contests, recovered many of their former losses, and deprived France of the advantages that it had obtained from the victories of the great Condé. That prince was now in arms against his country, and would have exposed it to the greatest dangers had he not been opposed by Turenne. These great rivals attracted the attention of all Europe. Turenne had been deemed an unequal match for Condé, but the prince was not in a situation to display his

military talents; he was depressed by the consciousness of fighting against his countrymen, and was besides unable to convince the Spanish generals, equally ignorant and obstinate, of the superior merit of his own plans. 22. England, at this time under the vigorous administration of Cromwell, may be said to have held the balance of European power; the alliance of the protector was eagerly courted by both parties, but at length Mazarin prevailed by his excessive complaisance, not to say meanness. The English auxiliaries restored

A. D. 1658. superiority to the French. Turenne, aided by six thousand British troops, laid siege to Dunkirk, while the port was blocked up by twenty sail of English men-of-war. Don John of Austria and the prince of Condé marched to its relief; Turenne attacked them near Dunes, and gained a complete victory, a consequence which the prince of Condé had predicted when he saw the bad dispositions which were made against his will. The fruits of this triumph were the surrender of Dunkirk, which was garrisoned by the English, and the capture of all the frontier towns in the Spanish Netherlands. 23. Completely crushed by the weight of the war, Spain began to turn her thoughts on peace, and Mazarin anxiously negotiated a marriage between Louis and the infanta. It would be, perhaps, paying too high a compliment to Mazarin's prophetic power, to say that he foresaw that in consequence of this marriage the throne of Spain would devolve to the family of the Bourbons; but such a contingency was foreseen, as there was an express renunciation of the infanta's claim inserted in the articles, which eventually shared the fate of all similar renunciations, that is to say, was violated on the first opportunity.

24. During the negotiation of this treaty, which was named that of the Pyrennees, Charles II., the exiled monarch of England, came to Fontarabia to solicit the protection of the two crowns, but neither Mazarin nor the Spanish minister, Don Louis de Haro, would deign so much as to listen to him. But at this very moment, when all his hopes seemed blighted, a counter-revolution took place in England, and by the aid of general Monk, Charles was restored to the throne of his ancestors.

25. In the following year died cardinal Mazarin, as absolute master of the state as Richelieu had been, displaying the same pomp, though he had first put on the appearance of modesty, and leaving to his heirs an immense fortune, accumulated by means that exposed him to just reproaches. His



Death of Cardinal Mazarin.



nieces were married to the most illustrious nobles of France and Italy; their portions were paid out of the public funds, which greatly exhausted the finances. Mazarin does not appear to have been a man of brilliant abilities, but he possessed good sense and good fortune, qualities sufficient to make a great though not a good minister. It would, however, be unjust to refuse him the praise he merits for having negotiated the treaties of Westphalia and the Pyrennees; the title of peace-maker is glorious, and the wars thus concluded had caused many miseries, devastations, and massacres.

---

### *Questions.*

1. How was the will of the late king violated?
2. Whom did the queen appoint prime minister?
3. What great victory was obtained by the duke d'Enghien?
4. Were any towns captured in consequence?
5. With what success was the war conducted in other parts?
6. By what mistake of their general did the French lose the battle of Manendahl?
7. By whom was their loss retrieved?
8. Did Condé obtain any other victory?
9. What losses did Spain suffer?
10. What were the most remarkable circumstances in the Neapolitan revolution?
11. What character has been given of the Neapolitans?
12. How was peace restored throughout the greater part of Europe?
13. What civil commotions took place in France?
14. Who were the leaders of the Fronde?
15. Was there any thing ridiculous in this war?
16. Whose ambition excited fresh disturbances?
17. How did Mazarin behave?
18. Was there any battle fought between the parties?
19. How was peace restored?
20. What proves the fickleness of the French nation?
21. How was the war with Spain carried on?
22. Did the English take any, and what share in the war?
23. On what conditions was peace concluded with Spain.
24. Did any remarkable revolution take place in England about this time?
25. What was the character of Mazarin?



The Grand Dauphin, Son of Louis XIV., and a Lady of the Court.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

### LOUIS XIV. TO THE TREATY OF RYSWICK.

There shall they rot—ambition's honour'd fools!  
 Yet, honour decks the turf that wraps their clay!  
 Vain sophistry! in these behold the tools!  
 The broken tools, that tyrants cast away  
 By myriads, when they dare to pave their way  
 With human hearts—to what?—a dream alone.  
 Can despots compass aught that holds their sway?  
 Or call with truth one spot of earth their own,  
 Save that wherein at last they crumble bone by bone.

BYRON.

1. It was not imagined that Louis XIV. after having so long delegated his authority to another, would have assumed the reins of government on the death of his minister. Ill-educated, ignorant of business, addicted to pleasure, and of an age in which the passions usually predominate over reason, it was naturally supposed that, like so many other princes, he would have devolved the cares of the state on some new favourite, and devoted himself to sensual

A. D.  
1661.

enjoyments. But the predominant passions of his soul were ambition of military glory, and a thirst for extensive dominions; even during the life of Mazarin he had been impatient of the yoke, and no sooner was he liberated from it by the death of the cardinal than he declared his resolution to be sovereign of France in fact as well as in name. 2. The finances, under the administration of the able Colbert, were retrieved from their former ruinous state, and became a source of prosperity and splendour; the prince of Condé and marshal Turenne, now happily united, were the greatest generals of the age; and Louvois, the minister at war, possessed abilities capable of directing the greatest exploits. 3. While France was thus happily situated, the rest of Europe exhibited nothing but weakness. Holland, though powerful by sea, was destitute of an army; the empire, weakened by late wars, was scarcely able to resist the arms of the Turks; England, under the profligate government of Charles II. had lost all the authority which she had acquired during the protectorate; Spain, governed by women and priests, was sunk almost below contempt, and the northern powers, engaged in petty disputes, possessed no influence on the continent. It is no wonder that, under these circumstances, Louis secretly cherished the hope of making the French monarchy the first in Europe, and obtaining for it that pre-eminence which it had possessed in the reign of Charlemagne.

4. Before the commencement of the war which developed these designs, Louis gave several signal proofs of his spirit, and also of his political skill. He threatened to renew the war with Spain, unless the right of precedence was conceded to his ambassador, and actually sent an army into Italy to punish the pope for an insult offered to the French embassy, and which had been provoked by insolence and outrage. Dunkirk was purchased from the necessitous Charles II., to the great and just displeasure of the English people, who saw it, when strengthened by new fortifications, become a powerful bulwark of France, and a port formidable to the English trade from the protection it afforded privateers in time of war. Assistance was sent to the Austrians, by which they were enabled to check the progress of the Turks; and by the aid of some French forces, the independence of Portugal was finally completed. 5. Commercial jealousy had led to a war between England and Holland, which was equally injurious to both countries. Louis supported the Dutch, and aided them by a powerful fleet, which the judicious measures of Colbert may



Colbert.

be almost said to have created Holland was at this time governed by the grand pensionary, John de Wit, who opposed the English with equal wisdom and resolution. Several fierce naval engagements were fought without any decisive advantage being gained, and England soon began to discover that the war was any thing but politic. The great plague and the great fire of London were national calamities that calmed the desire for war. Ne-

A. D. 1667. negotiations were commenced at Breda, but before the peace was concluded, the English had the mortification to see de Ruyter enter the Thames and burn several vessels. The treaty was not, however, broken off by this event, and the articles were, on the whole, favourable to England.

6. Although by the treaty of the Pyrennees, the queen of France had resigned all claim to the dominions of her father, yet Louis formed the design of reviving some of those rights, and securing a portion of that vast succession. The emperor Leopold and the French king had actually entered into a treaty for the partition of the Spanish dominions, by which it was agreed that France should receive Brabant and the Netherlands, and that Spain should be given to Leopold, if, as seemed probable, Charles, the reigning monarch, should die without issue. Both parties seemed ashamed of the agreement, and took the most extraordinary precautions to keep it a profound secret. No copy was taken of the instrument, and the original, locked up in an iron box, of which the two sovereigns alone kept the keys, was entrusted to the care of the grand duke of Tuscany. 7. But Louis claimed Flanders also in right of his wife, because, by the law of inheritance established in that country, the female issue by a first marriage succeeded in preference to the male offspring of a second union.

A. D. 1667. 8. Aided by such able ministers and generals, the king marched to certain conquest, Flanders and Franche Comté were subdued before the end of the second campaign, and would probably have been annexed to the dominions of France had not all Europe taken alarm at the dangers with which its repose was threatened by the rapid



progress of the French arms. England, Sweden, and Holland formed a triple alliance to check the ambitious career of Louis, and he was very unwillingly compelled to resign the greater part of his conquests, and confirm anew the treaty of the Pyrennees.

9. The French monarch was naturally indignant at being thus deprived of a prey which had seemed certain. He was particularly enraged against the Dutch, whom he had assisted when attacked by the English and the bishop of Munster. He thirsted for revenge and conquest, neglecting no means which were likely to insure both. 10. His most important measure was to break the alliance between England and Holland, which being dictated by mutual interest, seemed likely to be permanent; but with a perfect knowledge of the character of the English king, Louis prepared to assail him by two powerful bribes, a pension and a mistress. Suspected by his parliament of a design to introduce popery and arbitrary power, Charles was not able to procure from his people money enough to support his lavish expenditure; a slave to depraved passion, it was judged probable that the charms of Madame de Kerouille would be sufficient to ensnare his heart. To complete this disgusting scene, the entire negotiation was entrusted to the duchess of Orleans, Charles's own sister, and by her intervention a secret alliance was concluded against Holland; the king of England became the pensioner of France, and to secure his obedience, Madame de Kerouille, created duchess of Portsmouth, became chief favourite of the degraded sovereign. 11. The emperor Leopold was engaged in war with his Hungarian subjects, the German princes were for the most part purchased by the French monarch, Sweden was bribed to desert the alliance, Spain was utterly helpless, and Louis thought himself sure of easily conquering the defenceless republic.

12. As there was no solid reason for the war, recourse was had to the most ridiculous pretences. A medal had been struck, on which was an inscription, *stating that Holland had secured the laws, purified religion, succoured, defended, and reconciled the monarchs, asserted the freedom of the seas, and established the tranquillity of Europe.* This innocent piece of national vanity was gravely denounced as a serious grievance; the Dutch broke the die, but Charles and Louis had taken their resolution, and war was declared

A. D.  
1671.

13. Holland was at this time divided into two factions; the pensionary de Wit had caused William III. to be formally excluded from the stadtholdership, but with a generosity of which history furnishes but few parallels, he had taken care that the young prince should receive such an education as would be most likely to render him capable of serving the state in any department. William, who was afterwards the king of England, showed from his earliest youth proofs of the great talents which were destined to preserve the liberties of Europe; but he was naturally ambitious to recover the dignity that had been transmitted to him by his ancestors, and was animated rather by a desire of revenge on de Wit than by love for his country. 14. Though the grand pensionary had raised the naval power of Holland to its highest summit, he left the country totally unprovided with land forces, deeming an invasion so improbable, that it was not necessary to provide against it. Louis marched at the head of all his forces, accompanied by his most illustrious generals, against the little republic. 15. He passed the Rhine almost without any difficulty, as the river was low and the opposite bank badly defended. But this trivial success was magnified by a host of poets and historians, who formed a regular corps of attendance, into one of the greatest exploits of ancient and modern times. The greater part of the provinces were subdued almost without resistance; the cannon of the invaders could be heard in Amsterdam, and flying parties of the enemy had appeared within sight of its gates. 16. Like the Phœceans in ancient history, the Dutch seriously deliberated on the project of flying in their fleet to the East Indies, and seeking liberty in another country, leaving their own to Louis a useless desert. De Wit sent deputies to treat about a surrender, notwithstanding the opposition of the prince of Orange, who, with all the energies of youth and valour, insisted that they should defend themselves to the utmost extremity. 17. The intolerable conditions prescribed by Louis were fatal to de Wit; no sooner were they made known to the populace, than, maddened by indignation and despair, they fell on the grand pensionary and his brother, and literally tore them to pieces. The young prince of Orange was created stadtholder, and invested with almost absolute authority. 18. His speech on the occasion was brief and characteristic—"I have a sure method," said he, "to prevent my being a witness of my country's ruin, I can die in her last ditch." The entire of the united provinces

seemed to be animated by a similar spirit ; they cut the dikes which had been erected to keep out the sea, and thus laid the whole country under water. At sea, their navy, though opposed to the combined fleets of England and France, by the valour and dexterity of Ruyter was able to prevent their enemies from becoming masters of that element. 19. The eyes of all Europe were opened to the dangerous ambition of Louis XIV. : Germany, Denmark, and Spain came forward to rescue the Hollanders, and the people of England loudly complained of the impolicy which had forced them into a war with a nation, the destruction of whose liberties would probably have been fatal to their own. Charles II. seeing the temper of the parliament, and having no hope of obtaining new subsidies, sold a peace to the Dutch for a bribe of three hundred thousand pounds. However, he still left a body of ten thousand troops at the disposal of Louis, but promised not to recruit their losses.

20. Unable to retain the provinces, Louis was obliged to release them on the payment of a ransom, and the tide of war flowed to the Spanish Netherlands, which had been almost abandoned by the parent state. The prince of Condé was opposed to the stadtholder, marechal Turenne found an antagonist worthy of him in Montecuculi the imperial general, and Louis himself headed the army that invaded Franche Comté. The bare enumeration of the battles fought in these campaigns would be sufficient to fill a volume ; Montecuculi and William III. were generals equal in ability to Condé and Turenne, they therefore checked the French in their career of conquest, without being able to obtain any very decisive advantage. Battles were fought, and an immensity of human blood spilled, but their only effect was to display the talents of the leaders and their utter disregard for waste of lives. 21. During these protracted contests, Turenne sullied all his former glory by an action of the most savage barbarity, which he perpetrated by order of his court. The elector palatine having deserted the cause of France, orders were given to lay waste his country ; the cruel edict was fearfully executed ; two cities and twenty-five villages were reduced to ashes, and their innocent inhabitants left to perish by cold and hunger ! The unfortunate elector who witnessed the devastation from the walls of his palace at Manheim, sent to challenge Turenne to a personal combat ; but the French general replied, that, "from the time he had been honoured with the command of the French forces, he never fought but at the head of twenty thousand men."

The military career of those leaders whose renown filled Europe, terminated nearly at the same time. Tu  
A. D. 1675. renne was killed at the battle of Salzbach; Condé, who succeeded him in opposing the imperialists, retired at the end of the campaign from public life, and his example was followed by Montecuculi, who was unwilling to hazard in a contest with younger men the reputation that he had previously acquired. De Ruyter, whose naval exploits had rivalled their fame, was killed in an engagement with a French fleet in the Mediterranean; after having risen from an humble cabin boy, to be the best admiral in Europe. The war, however, was still protracted, and France made considerable acquisitions in the Spanish Netherlands. 22. But the resources of all parties were exhausted, and by the mediation of the king of England, who had given his niece, Mary, in marriage to the prince of Orange, negotiations for peace were opened at Nimeguen. Four days after the treaty was signed, the prince of Orange, who ardently desired to continue the war, attacked the French, under the duke of Luxemburg, near Mons, but, after an useless sacrifice of the lives of his soldiers, was compelled to retire.

23. The Dutch, against whom the war had been  
A. D. 1678. begun, and whose very existence seemed at one time in danger, were restored to all their possessions at the conclusion; the terms between the French and Germans were nearly the same as those of the treaty of Munster; but Spain and Sweden, who had joined only as auxiliaries, were severely punished, the former was compelled to cede the greater part of the Netherlands to France, the latter was stripped of all her influence in the empire.

24. Louis having dictated the terms of the peace of Nimeguen, became intoxicated with his successes, and, by his conduct, provoked the hostility of the greater part of Europe. He seized on several dependencies of the neighbouring Germanic states, under the pretence that they belonged to Franche Comté: he compelled the free city of Strasburg to receive a French garrison: and though he retired from the siege of Luxemburg, when the empire was endangered by an invasion of the Turks, he returned to it again when the Mohammedans were driven out by the valiant king of Poland, John Sobieski. Spain and Austria, unable to resist his power, purchased peace again by making fresh concessions: but they retained a bitter sense of their degradation, and were resolved to seek the earliest opportunity of obtaining vengeance. Algiers was bombarded by the French, and the pirates forced to beg for mercy;



John Sobieski.

Genoa was similarly punished, and its magistrates compelled to make the most humiliating submissions to save the republic from ruin. 25. But all these triumphs were more than counterbalanced by the death of Colbert, whose labours to establish a good system of finance were less valuable than his successful efforts to prevent the renewal of religious persecutions.

26. Colbert protected the Hugonots, from a conviction that they were as useful as the other subjects of the crown, and that a persecution would produce nothing but mischief; but by his death they were delivered up to the chancellor le Tellier, and his son, the marquis de Louvois, two men whose maxim was that every thing civil and religious should be regulated according to the king's pleasure. In 1684, they sent troops into the districts inhabited by Protestants, and Louvois wrote, *that it was his majesty's pleasure that all who did not conform to his religion should suffer the greatest severities*. The soldiers sent to enforce this absurd and cruel declaration were principally cavalry, whence the persecution has been commonly called the *dragonnade*; every cruelty that could be perpetrated by a licentious and rapacious soldiery was committed with impunity, and by an excess of cruelty it was made a capital offence for Protestants to attempt making their escape out of the kingdom. 27. In the following year

A. D.  
1685.

the edict of Nantz, by which Henry IV. had established the principles of religious liberty, was revoked, freedom of conscience was abolished, all the Hugonot churches were destroyed, declarations and decrees of councils followed one another in rapid succession to heighten their despair, and at length orders were issued to take away the children of Protestants from their parents and give them to the care of their Catholic relations. Notwithstanding all the precautions of Louis, nearly half a million of Protestants quitted France, carrying with them some wealth, but what was still more valuable, much industry and ingenuity, the true riches of a nation. England, Holland, and Germany gladly received these useful fugitives, who carried into other countries the knowledge of those manufactures which had been hitherto confined to France, and who diffused through all the Protestant nations of Europe an intense hatred of Louis, which the subsequent wars gave them many opportunities of displaying.

28. The prince of Orange, whom the French pretended to despise, was far their most formidable enemy; the just representations that he made to the different European powers of the grasping ambition of Louis, had mainly contributed to the formation of the league of Augsburg, by which the confederates engaged to preserve the boundaries agreed on by the treaties of Munster and Nimeguen. Louis did not want this fresh provocation to stimulate him to war; he resolved to anticipate the designs of his enemies, and sent an army of a hundred thousand men under the command of the dauphin to invade the empire, which was filled with dismay. 29. Philipsburg, Mentz, Spire, and several other important cities were taken, and the Palatinate was again cruelly given up to the flames. This little principality, which the industry and peaceable habits of its inhabitants had made the most thriving and happy state of Germany, was literally turned into a desert; more than forty cities, and an infinite number of villages, were reduced to ashes. But while Louis was thus engaged, events were taking place in England, which were soon destined to make that nation the most determined and formidable of his enemies, by placing on its throne the prince of Orange, whose hatred of Louis seemed to be almost equally personal and political.

30. The attacks which James II. had made on the  
A. D. 1688. liberties and religion of the country, had made the English nation weary of their sovereign, and induced them to apply to the prince of Orange. An expedition was

prepared in the Dutch ports, and Louis, who had discovered its destination, sent intelligence to the besotted James, who treated it as chimerical. William III. landed in England, and in a very short time was joined by the whole nation. Deserted by his friends, and despised by his enemies, James fled to France, and the convention-parliament considering his flight as an abdication of the throne, elected William king of Great Britain. The greatest opposition to this signal revolution was made in Ireland, whither James proceeded from France accompanied by some auxiliary troops. But misfortune still pursued the unhappy sovereign; he was unable to reduce the town of Derry, which its inhabitants defended under the most discouraging circumstances. Soon after, William landed, and at the decisive battle of the Boyne James lost Ireland. The Irish, indeed, held out for some time longer, but at length a treaty was concluded at Limerick, by which that island became completely subject to William.

31. The war on the continent was on the whole favourable to the arms of France; the marechal de Luxembourg proved himself a pupil worthy of the great Condé and Turenne; William was defeated by Luxembourg, and Namur was taken by Louis almost in sight of the hostile army. In Italy, the marechal Catinat successfully opposed prince Eugene, and Victor Amadeus, duke of Savoy; de Lorges and de Noailles were equally fortunate in Spain and Germany. 32. But these advantages were counterbalanced by the total defeat of the French fleet under Tourville, off Cape la Hogue. James II. beheld from a neighbouring eminence this calamity, by which all his hopes of being restored to the throne of his ancestors were for ever annihilated. It is said, that when he saw the English sailors boarding the enemy's ships with their accustomed heroism, admiration of their valour overcame his remembrance of the cause in which they fought, and he exclaimed, "None but my brave English could have done this." 33. The war continued with very little advantage to either party; men and money were lavishly wasted, and nothing gained. Mutual exhaustion made all heartily wish for peace, or rather a suspension of arms, for treaties were universally disregarded. Four treaties were concluded at Ryswick, a small village in Holland, the conditions of which, notwithstanding all his victories, were very humiliating to Louis. He was compelled to restore all his conquests, and to resign those districts which he had seized on as appendages to Franche Comté. A. D. 1692.

34. The people of France murmured at such a conclusion of a war which had gratified their national vanity by numerous triumphs. But many circumstances combined to make Louis wish for peace: his able minister, Louvois, and his best general, Luxembourg, were dead; losses not easy to be supplied; the finances were exhausted, the taxes, though severe on the people, were not very profitable to the king, and the navy was beginning to fall into disorder. Besides, he saw that peace was necessary for maturing his designs on the Spanish succession; an object which he had so much at heart, that he not only acknowledged William's title to the throne of England, but even attempted to conciliate him by secret negotiations.

---

*Questions.*

1. What determination did Louis adopt that surprised his courtiers?
2. Had he the support of good ministers?
3. Did the other countries of Europe present so favourable an aspect?
4. What proofs of spirit and wisdom did the French government exhibit?
5. How was the war between England and Holland carried on?
6. Into what treaty, of which they were ashamed, did the emperor and the French king enter?
7. Had Louis any claims on Flanders?
8. Did the French succeed in retaining possession of Flanders?
9. Against whom was Louis particularly irritated?
10. By what means was Charles II. induced to side against the Dutch?
11. Why was it unlikely that the other powers of Europe would interfere?
12. What was the pretext for declaring war?
13. Who were the leaders of the parties into which Holland was divided?
14. What error did de Wit commit?
15. How did the invaders succeed?
16. What strange step did the Dutch meditate?
17. How was de Wit treated?
18. What spirited declaration was made by the prince of Orange?
19. Did the other nations of Europe at length interfere?
20. How was the war carried on in Flanders?
21. Of what cruelty was Turenne guilty?
22. How did the war terminate?
23. What nations suffered most in the end?



24. Did Louis use his success with moderation?
25. What loss did France suffer in the midst of its triumphs?
26. By whom was the persecution of the protestants renewed?
27. What were the consequences of the revocation of the edict of Nantz?
28. Did the war break out again?
29. Were the French generals guilty of any barbarous actions?
30. What great revolution took place in England?
31. Did the French obtain any advantages in this war?
32. Where were they defeated?
33. How was the war concluded?
34. What circumstances made Louis inclined to peace?



**French Postilion. — Fifteenth Century.**



Louis XIV., Madame de Maintenon, and Philip, Duke of Orleans.

### CHAPTER XXXIII.

#### LOUIS XIV.—THE WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION.

Does he not mourn the valiant thousands slain—  
 The heroes once the glory of the plain,  
 Left in the conflict of the fatal day,  
 Or the wolf's portion, or the vulture's prey?

PRIOR.

A. D. 1700. 1. THE last male descendant of the emperor Charles V. was Charles II., king of Spain, a monarch equally weak in health and intellect. He was fast sinking into the grave, and as he had no children, the question of his succession was the chief object of speculation throughout Europe. The king of France and the emperor of Germany were both his cousins and his brothers-in-law; their claims to the inheritance were therefore nearly equal, but Louis, who in both ways had the advantage of seniority in the princesses from whom his right was derived, had formally resigned all his pretensions by the treaty of the Pyrennees. Before the inheritance was yet vacant, a treaty of partition was made for dividing the Spanish monarchy between the

sons of the claimants; but the dying monarch, having heard of the circumstance, published a will in favour of his grand-nephew, the young prince of Bavaria. This prince dying almost immediately after at Brussels, a new treaty was formed; but the emperor, hoping to acquire the whole of the Spanish dominions for his son, refused his assent; and thus by grasping at too much lost all. At first, Charles of Spain was so much enraged with Louis, that he acknowledged the arch-duke as his successor; but the Austrians satisfied with this took no further pains to conciliate Charles, and by their contumelious behaviour disgusted a prince, who naturally expected the liveliest gratitude for so rich a bequest. The king's confessors, who were in the pay of France, took advantage of this to change his mind, and prevailed on him, a little before his death, finally to bequeath the whole Spanish monarchy to the duke of Anjou, grandson of Louis XIV.

2. Such was the astonishment of all Europe at beholding a prince of the Bourbon family ascend the throne of Spain, that all the powers except the empire remained for some time in perfect tranquillity. The duke of Anjou, under the name of Philip V., set out to take possession of the crown, and his grandfather said to him at parting, *there are no more Pyrenees*. 3. In Italy the resistance to the will of Charles II. began; the imperial forces there were commanded by a general, whose fame soon began to rival that of the most illustrious warriors; a native of France, and its severest scourge. Prince Eugene was son of the count de Soissons and of madame Marcini, niece of cardinal Mazarin; being slighted in his youth by the French court, he took an eternal farewell of his country, and went to serve the emperor against the Turks. His abilities accelerated his promotion, and though very young, he was entrusted with the command of the imperial forces in Italy, and opposed to the veteran Catenat. The French general, restrained by orders from his court, was unable to check the progress of prince Eugene; Villenois, a crafty courtier rather than a prudent general, was then sent to head the army, but he was totally defeated by the imperial generals at Chiari.



Prince Eugene.

4. The war was yet but a single spark, when Louis, by

one imprudent step, kindled a general conflagration. On the death of James II. he proclaimed his son king of Great Britain, after having determined in council not to take this dangerous step. The indignation of the people of England was the most violent imaginable. William, who had hitherto been thwarted by his parliament, found them ready to forward all his views, and the nation, which had been previously averse to a continental war, were eager to punish such an outrageous insult. 5. But before William was able to take advantage of this favourable opportunity of accomplishing his favourite object, the humbling of the French power, he was

unfortunately thrown from his horse, an accident which, **A. D.**  
**1702.** combined with his previous ill-health, proved fatal. It has been quaintly said, that he was king of Holland and Stadtholder of England, the parliament of the latter country having always opposed his inclinations, except when animated by their national hatred against France. His highest character is, that he was the principal means of rescuing from ruin the religion and liberties both of England and Holland.

6. The French court had hoped that the death of William would have separated England from the confederates, but the first step taken by Anne after her accession, was to renew the alliance with Holland and the empire. The command of the English and Dutch forces was given to the earl of Marlborough, whose abilities both as a general and as a statesman have had but one parallel in English history. 7. While the allies were under the direction of such leaders as Marlborough and prince Eugene, France had fallen into extraordinary decay; Louis, completely under the guidance of his mistress, Madame de Maintenon, had lost all the energy of character by which he had been formerly distinguished. The operations of the war were decided in the cabinets, no discretion of availing themselves of circumstances was allowed to the generals, discipline was permitted to decay, and promotion was regulated by court favour. 8. On the side of Flanders, the earl of Marlborough was everywhere successful, but the junction of the elector of Bavaria with the French prevented the allies from obtaining any decisive advantage on the upper Rhine, where at first they had possessed a great superiority. 9. The French did not, however, profit much by their advantages; marechal Villars, whose valour and prudence principally contributed to their success, was recalled, in consequence of a quarrel between him and the elector of Bavaria; the generals sent to replace him were of inferior abilities, and the war was

permitted to linger. Villars was sent to command against the protestants of the Cevennes, who, maddened by persecution, had taken up arms against their oppressors. These wild mountaineers derived so much courage from fanaticism, that three marshals of France, and three royal armies, were sent against them before they were subdued. The emperor also was engaged in a religious war with his Hungarian subjects, whom a better system of government would have made his most faithful defenders.

10. At length the doubts which hung over the final fortunes of the war began to be dispelled, and Louis <sup>A. D.</sup> 1704. was destined to meet a succession of calamitous defeats, which effaced the memory of his former triumphs. The forces of the empire being hard pressed in Germany, Marlborough, who had lately been elevated to a dukedom, by a brilliant series of manœuvres forced his way through the French lines near Donawert, and joined his forces with those of prince Eugene; at the same time the elector of Bavaria was joined by the French marechals Tallard and Marsin. The forces of the allies amounted to about fifty thousand men; those of the elector exceeded sixty thousand. On the 13th of August, both armies came to an engagement near the villages of Höchstet and Blenheim. The left wing of the allies, under the command of the duke of Marlborough, forded a marsh which had been deemed impracticable, and fell with so much fury on the wing commanded by marechal Tallard, that they broke their ranks irretrievably, and penetrated even to the centre. Tallard, who was short-sighted, threw himself into the midst of a hostile squadron by mistake, and remained a prisoner. In the meantime, Eugene, after being three times repulsed, forced the elector and Marsin to a retreat, which the advance of the victorious English turned into a complete rout. 11. They fled, leaving twelve thousand of their best troops shut up in the village of Blenheim, who were compelled to surrender without firing a shot. The consequences of this brilliant victory, by which the French lost forty thousand men, were the capture of several of the most important fortresses on the upper Rhine, the establishment of the complete superiority of the allies in the Netherlands, and the total subjugation of Bavaria, whose elector, reduced to the condition of a fugitive, took refuge in Brussels. The capture of Gibraltar, and some <sup>A. D.</sup> 1705. other triumphs of less importance in Spain, completed the successes of the allies in this brilliant campaign.

12. The following year produced no events of importance,

either in Flanders or Germany; Marlborough was badly supported by the imperialists, who, as usual, thought that the English should fight as well as pay all. But in Spain, the earl of Peterborough, who commanded the auxiliaries which had been sent to sustain the cause of Charles, subdued the whole province of Catalonia. During the winter, the duke of Marlborough successfully laboured to prevail on the states of Holland to lay aside their cautious policy of not risking an engagement; and at the opening of the next campaign, he

<sup>A. D.</sup>  
1706. began to act with greater boldness than he had hitherto displayed. 13. On the 23d of May, was fought the decisive battle of Ramilies, in which the French lost twenty thousand men, and which was followed by the reduction of Spanish Flanders. In Spain also, Philip had been compelled to raise the siege of Barcelona, and subsequently to yield up the capital to his rival.

14. But their successes in Italy were some consolation to the French for their defeats every where else. The duke de Vendome had completely defeated the imperialists, and the French possessed so decided a superiority, that they ventured to lay siege to Turin. Unfortunately for them, Vendome was recalled to take the command of the army in Flanders, and the conduct of the siege was intrusted nominally to the duke of Orleans, but in reality to the duke de Feuillade, a court favourite, totally destitute of all military experience. Prince Eugene set out to raise the siege, and after a brilliant march, in which his judicious movements were powerfully contrasted with the folly of his enemies, effected a junction with the duke of Savoy. The duke of Orleans then proposed that the siege should be broken up, and that they should march to meet the enemy; but when the council were about to adopt this judicious measure, by which alone they could have any chance of success, Marsin produced a letter from the court ordering the army to remain in its entrenchments. On the 7th of September, prince Eugene attacked the French lines, and in about two hours was every where successful; the camp with all its equipage and munitions of war was taken; the enemy fled in every direction, and the fugitives were severely harassed by the Piedmontese peasantry, who attacked them in their retreat and cut them off in the defiles of the mountains. 15. By this single defeat France lost the fruits of all her former campaigns, and was not only deprived of all her conquests in Italy, but saw her southern frontier exposed to the enemy.

16. The battle of Almanza revived a little the hopes of France; the duke of Berwick, the natural son of James II., gained a complete victory over the allied forces commanded by lord Galway, after which the cause of Philip seemed gradually to gain ground; but on the other hand, the allies still retained their superiority in Flanders. 17. The dukes de Vendome and Burgundy were defeated by Marlborough and prince Eugene at Oudenarde, after which the allies besieged and took Lille, whose possession seemed to open to them the road to Paris. The pope soon after deserted the French, whom he had hitherto supported, and acknowledged Charles's title to the throne of Spain. To so many losses the scourge of nature seemed to be added; prince after prince of the royal family fell victims to disease, so that Louis had reason to dread that he should be left without a successor; and to complete the whole, France was threatened with all the horrors of a severe famine.

18. Under these circumstances, Louis solicited peace; conferences were opened at Gertruydenberg, but the allies, intoxicated with success, insisted on conditions so very extravagant, that the negotiations were broken off. They had the cruelty to require that Louis should send an army to drive his grandson from the throne of Spain; the aged monarch replied to the insulting proposal with becoming spirit: "If I must continue the war," he said, "I should rather fight against my enemies than my children." The consequences of this ineffectual attempt were beneficial to Louis; his people, who had justly murmured against the calamities by which they were oppressed, now resolved to defend their monarch to the utmost, as he had done every thing consistent with national honour to afford them relief.

19. Two unexpected events changed the entire face of European politics. The emperor of Germany died, and was succeeded by Charles, the nominal king of Spain; this of course affected the original principles of the war, for the union of Spain and the empire would have been as fatal to the balance of power as the joining of France and Spain. In England, the Whigs, who had so long supported the duke of Marlborough, were no longer in office, and their Tory successors, Harley and Bolingbroke, were anxious to obtain a peace on any terms. 20. In his last campaign, the duke exhibited all the wisdom and skill by which he had been so often distinguished; he forced the lines which Villars had

declared impregnable, and captured Bouchain in the presence of the enemy's army, thus removing the principal obstacles between him and Paris. But at the end of the campaign, he was stripped of all his employments, and the command of the English forces was given to the duke of Ormond, with secret directions to do nothing.

21. The conferences for the celebrated treaty of **A. D. 1712.** Utrecht began in January, but proceeded at first very slowly; the Dutch and imperial ambassadors threw every obstacle in the way of accommodation, and the deaths of the dauphin, his wife and son, by opening to Philip the probable succession to the throne of France, created fresh difficulties. At length Philip renounced his future claims in favour of his younger brother the duke of Berry; as the English and French were earnest in their desire of peace, they soon agreed on preliminaries, but the rest of the allies refused to concur. Deprived of the support of the English, the Dutch and imperialists still ventured on another campaign, but prince Eugene being totally defeated at Landrecy, and several of the towns captured by Marlborough having been retaken, Holland became alarmed, and concluded a treaty. The emperor held out a year longer, and lost several advantages by his obstinacy, until finding himself unable to continue the war alone, he was obliged to conclude a separate peace at Rastadt. The Catalans were the last who kept alive the expiring flames of the war; they refused to acknowledge Philip as their sovereign, and though deserted by every body, maintained a furious resistance. At length Barcelona, the capital of Catalonia, was taken after a vigorous siege, the citizens deprived of their privileges, and some of their leaders capitally punished.

22. The treaty of Utrecht put an end to the long wars which the ambition of Louis XIV. had excited in Europe, and placed all the powers nearly on the same footing that they had been at the commencement. The English ministers who concluded it were subsequently impeached, and narrowly escaped with their lives; it would be now useless to revive the discussion of a question by which England was once fearfully agitated, but it may be remarked, that by that treaty England secured all the objects for which the war had been originally undertaken, though the motives and measures of Harley and Bolingbroke were any thing but honourable and patriotic.

23. Though Louis had the satisfaction of seeing a war which threatened the entire ruin of France thus happily con-



cluded, yet his situation at its close was the most miserable conceivable, all the national resources were exhausted, the manufactures were destroyed, and commerce was totally extinct. The royal family had, as was already mentioned, been visited by an unusual mortality, and the next heir to the crown was the king's great-grandson, a weak and sickly infant. 24. Theological disputes distracted the court and the nation. A divine, named Quesnel, had published a book, entitled "Reflections upon the Old Testament." A hundred and one propositions extracted from this book by a bigoted fool, Le Tellier, the king's confessor, were condemned by the celebrated bull Unigenitus, issued by pope Clement XI. The disputes about the registration of this bull filled the whole kingdom, while its aged monarch, distracted by useless remorse, was fast drawing to the close of his miserable existence.

25. At length, in the seventy-second year of his reign, he became sensible of the near approach of his dissolution: he sent for his successor, and gave him much good advice, which kings are always more ready to bestow in the hour of death than to practise in their course of life. He made arrangements for the future regency by his will, and ordered that his natural children, whom he had legitimated, should be ranked among the blood royal of France, but these regulations were violated immediately after his decease. Having thus provided for all his worldly concerns, he received the last offices of the catholic church, and met the stroke of death with becoming resignation. A. D. 1715.

26. The calamities experienced by the French in the latter part of this reign had so completely effaced the glories of its commencement, that the news of Louis's death was received with joy. Impartial posterity has, however, stripped his character of the flatteries which loaded it during his life, and the defamation heaped on it after his death. He was a monarch of a great mind and good intentions, but bad education spoiled the one, and artful courtiers depraved the other. He was a great encourager of literature and the arts, and his reign is deservedly esteemed the Augustan age of France.

---

### *Questions.*

1. What was the origin of the war of the Spanish succession?
2. How did Louis address his grandson at the parting?
3. Who was prince Eugene?

4. How did Louis provoke the hostility of the English?
5. What was the character of William III.?
6. Who were the generals of the allies?
7. Did the French government exhibit as much ability in this war as in the preceding?
8. How did Marlborough succeed in Flanders?
9. Did religious wars interfere with the operations of the belligerent powers?
10. How did the allies obtain the victory at Blenheim?
11. What were the consequences of their success?
12. How was the war carried on after this?
13. Did Marlborough obtain any other victory?
14. What great defeat did the French suffer in Italy?
15. Was it attended by any important results?
16. Did the French obtain any victory?
17. By what calamities was Louis overtaken?
18. What was the consequence of the conferences at Gertruydenberg?
19. By what circumstances was a total revolution in European politics brought about?
20. How did Marlborough behave in his last campaign?
21. By what means was the treaty of Utrecht concluded?
22. What was the character of the negotiations?
23. To what calamities was France next exposed?
24. What caused disputes about religion to break out?
25. How did Louis die?
26. What was his character?



Voltaire.



Louis XV.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

## LOUIS XV.

To swell some future tyrant's pride,  
 Good Fleury pours the golden tide  
 On Gallia's smiling shores ;  
 Once more her fields shall thirst in vain  
 For wholesome streams of honest gain,  
 While rapine wastes her stores.

EARL NUGENT.

1. THE new king of France was but five years old at the time of his accession, and the arrangement of the regency, as usual, gave rise to much political intrigue. At length the parliament gave undivided power to Philip, duke of Orleans, nephew to the late king, a man of great abilities, but of greater depravity, whose private life was stained with the practice of every species of debauchery. He had been unjustly suspected of having poisoned the three dauphins whose successive deaths have already been men-

A. D.  
1715.

tioned, and it is probable, had Louis XIV. died a few years earlier, that the regency would never have been conferred on the duke of Orleans; but the natural children of Louis were still more unpopular with the French; and hatred of them made the nation more ready to submit to their rival. 2. The first opposition made to the regent was by cardinal Alberoni, who then wielded the destinies of Spain. Alberoni was one of the greatest statesmen of the age, but he had one great fault which rendered all his talents useless; he was too extravagant in his designs, and aimed at effecting great changes without calculating the means necessary for their execution. To place the Pretender on the throne of England, to wrest from the emperor what he had obtained in Italy by the treaty of Utrecht, to make the king of Spain regent of France, and acknowledged heir to the throne, were the daring enterprises contemplated by Alberoni. 3. His schemes were detected, and the parties whom he had endangered combined for their mutual protection. France, England, and Holland united to enforce the observance of the treaty of Utrecht; they were soon after joined by the emperor, and the system of Alberoni was overturned by the quadruple alliance. Conspiracies were vainly attempted both in France and England. The Spanish ambassador, the duchess of Maine, the cardinal de Polignac, and several others, joined in forming a scheme for carrying off the regent; but the papers were artfully stolen from a young Spanish abbé who was secretary to the embassy, and thus the whole plot was discovered. The ambassador and his secretary were seized, several of the principal accomplices sent to the Bastille, and war declared against Spain. Thus France armed against the grandson of Louis XIV., whom she had elevated to a throne at the expense of her own ruin.

4. Happily the war was not of long continuance. A. D. 1718. The Spanish fleet was defeated by admiral Byng, and twenty-three of their ships taken; their forces in Sicily were defeated the following year by the imperialists, and the armament designed for the invasion of England dispersed by a storm. Spain itself was destined to feel the horrors of war; the English carried destruction into the port of Vigo, and the French having invaded the country, took several towns, destroyed some magazines, and burned sixteen ships of war which had been newly constructed. Philip, naturally a weak monarch, was terrified at such a series of calamities; he acceded to the quadruple alliance, and

A. D.  
1720.

banished Alberoni, whose removal was made an indispensable condition of peace.

5. The wars of Louis XIV. had left the finances of France in a deplorable condition, and an attempt made to remedy the disorder only completed their ruin. An exiled Scotchman, named Law, conceived the scheme of paying off the enormous debt by an issue of paper money. The duke of Orleans, fond of novelty, adopted the plan, and a commercial company was formed, the profits of whose exclusive trade with Louisiana were to liquidate all the debts by which France was oppressed. The success of the Mississippi scheme, as it was called at first, equalled Law's expectations. The prices of shares in the company rapidly rose to an extravagant height, a blind insatiable avarice induced people to strip themselves of their money to purchase notes, and to such a pitch was this carried, that the notes issued amounted to more than eighty times the current coin. The effect of such excessive issue was of course the depreciation of the notes; the bank became unable to meet the demands made upon it, and its entire credit vanished in an instant; the notes became no better than waste paper, and numberless families were reduced to indigence. The regent for some time defended Law from the popular indignation, but was eventually forced to yield to the voice of the nation. Law fled from France, scarcely carrying with him a sufficiency to support existence.

6. The fortune of the cardinal Dubois was as extravagant, but more permanent, than that of Law. He was the son of an apothecary, and had come to Paris at a very early age. By a series of fortunate circumstances, he became private tutor to the future regent, and was the detestable cause of the debauchery by which that prince was dishonoured. By flattering the vanity and pandering to the passions of his former pupil, he obtained such an ascendancy over him, that he was appointed prime minister of France, and having taken holy orders, was raised to the dignity of cardinal. After his death, the duke of Orleans assumed the title of prime minister, because the king was then of age. 7. But his riotous excesses hastened his dissolution; he died a victim to <sup>A. D.</sup> intemperance, and was succeeded in the ministry by <sup>1723.</sup> the duke de Bourbon-Condé. The character of the regent has been emphatically given in the following brief sentence by a modern writer—"He was a good ruler and a bad man."

8. The only thing remarkable in the administration of Bourbon-Condé was his having negotiated a marriage between

the young monarch and Maria Seczinska, daughter of Stanislaus, the ex-king of Poland. 9. He was succeeded by Cardinal Fleury, an old man of seventy-three, who had been introduced at court as preceptor to the king, and seldom has any country been blessed with a better minister. He was attentive to economy, studious of peace, amiable and gentle in his manners, just such a minister as suited a nation that required relief rather than splendour. 10. The repose

A. D.

1734.

that Europe had enjoyed since the treaty of Utrecht furnishes few materials for history, but its tranquillity was at length disturbed from a quarter in which it was least expected. On the death of Augustus, king of Poland, his old rival Stanislaus was elected to the vacant throne; the emperor of Germany, in conjunction with Russia, caused this election to be set aside, and gave the crown to the son of the late monarch. Louis XV. felt himself bound in honour to espouse the cause of his father-in-law; but the succours given to Stanislaus amounted only to fifteen hundred men, and he was a second time expelled from the kingdom of Poland, which was every day becoming more and more a dependency of Russia. 11. Though France did not act with much vigour in Poland, she compensated for her inactivity there by the vigour of her attacks on the Emperor. In two brilliant campaigns the Austrians were completely humbled in Italy; the imperialists, though commanded by prince Eugene, were defeated on the Rhine; and a Spanish army under Don Carlos conquered the entire kingdom of Naples. Defeated on all quarters, the Emperor applied to the maritime powers, soliciting their mediation, but the pacific disposition of cardinal Fleury rendered their intervention unnecessary. 12. By the treaty of peace, Spain acquired the kingdom of Naples for Don Carlos; France obtained the provinces of Lorraine and Bar for Stanislaus, which, after his death, were to be for ever united with the French dominions; and the duke of Lorraine was nominated successor to the grand duke of Tuscany, the last of the illustrious family of the Medicis. This was the second time that John Gaston, duke of Tuscany, had seen the inheritance to his dominions arranged by foreign powers; he made the insult the subject of a jest, humorously asking, "if they would not supply him with a third heir, and what child France and the empire would get for him?"

13. The reason why the Emperor so readily consented to the strengthening of France by the valuable acquisition of Lorraine, was his anxiety to obtain the guarantee of that

power to the celebrated *pragmatic sanction*, an instrument to prevent the partition of the Austrian dominions in case of the failure of heirs male, and to secure the peaceable accession of his daughter Maria Theresa, who was married to Francis of Lorraine, the reigning duke of Tuscany. Almost all the powers of Europe had signed the treaty to this effect, but prince Eugene very wisely remarked, that "an army of one hundred men would guarantee it better than one hundred thousand treaties." 14. In fact, the Emperor was scarcely laid in his grave when a host of competitors appeared to have claims for the succession. The king of Poland, the elector of Bavaria, and the kings of Spain and Sardinia, began to urge their pretensions, but did not immediately attempt to enforce them by arms. 15. The signal of universal war was given by a power which had not hitherto taken any leading part in the affairs of Europe, but which the abilities of its monarch was destined to place in the first rank of the continental nations. Frederic III., king of Prussia, was in the twenty-eighth year of his age, and possessed considerable talents, which had been sharpened in the school of adversity. His father had treated him with the most unjustifiable severity, and would probably have taken his life had not the Emperor interfered; but while detained in prison, he had recourse to the consolations of literature, and improved his mind while he lightened his captivity. But though he had no great reason to be pleased with the manner in which his father had treated him, he had every cause to be pleased with the conduct which made his kingdom a valuable inheritance; Frederic II. left his son a rich treasury, and a well-disciplined army, valuable acquisitions to a young and ambitious monarch. 16. Two months after the Emperor's death, Frederic appeared in Upper Silesia at the head of thirty thousand men, and revived some forgotten claims of his family to that province. His troops were better than his cause; Silesia was conquered with little trouble, and Frederic, flushed with success, sent to Maria Theresa, offering to secure her in the rest of her dominions, provided that she would concede to him the quiet possession of his recent conquest. The Empress indignantly rejected the offer, and though surrounded by enemies, spiritedly determined not to purchase a peace by the sacrifice of her rights.

17. Cardinal Fleury in vain endeavoured to prevent France from being involved in this war, but the count, afterwards duke de Belieisle, had sufficient influence

A. D.  
1740.

A. D.  
1741.

to procure the adoption of a contrary resolution. They thought that the favourable moment had arrived for executing the favourite project of Richelieu, the humiliation of the house of Austria, and acting on this design they induced the king to violate the pragmatic sanction which had lately been confirmed with so much solemnity. They determined to procure the imperial crown for the elector of Bavaria; a numerous army was raised, and that prince was by letters-patent created lieutenant-general of Louis XV. 18. The success of the French and Bavarians was at first complete; they marched into Austria, captured Lentz, threatened Vienna with a siege, and then penetrating into Bohemia, took Prague by escalade. Maria Theresa was forced to become a fugitive, but her very misfortunes made her formidable; she appeared before the states of Hungary bearing her infant son in her arms. The speech which she made in Latin to the assembly, drew tears from all her audience; the spirit of that chivalrous nation was roused, and they all exclaimed with one accord, *Moriamur pro rege nostro Maria Theresa*; "Let us die for our king\* Maria Theresa." The English people were enthusiastic in their admiration of the heroine. The duchess of Marlborough assembled the principal ladies of London, who engaged to raise for her 100,000*l.* sterling, and the duchess herself subscribed 40,000*l.*; but the queen of Hungary had the magnanimity to refuse the offer, declaring that she would receive no assistance except from the nation assembled in Parliament.

19. But the faults of her enemies still more powerfully assisted the cause of the empress; the marechals Belleisle and Broglio were jealous of each other, the elector of Bavaria was totally destitute of military talents, and the cavalry especially was in a miserable state of inefficiency. The light troops of the Austrians, Pandours, Croats and Hussars, harassed the scattered troops of the French and Bavarians; without a battle being fought they were stripped of all their conquests, and the new emperor being deprived even of his hereditary dominions, was obliged to become the pensioner of France. The king of Prussia made a treaty for himself, by which he secured the possession of Silesia; and the marechal de Belleisle had only the honour of saving 13,000 men, the wreck of his great and victorious army, by a brilliant retreat from the heart of Germany to the banks of the Rhine.

---

\* The Hungarians used this form of speech in reference to their old constitution, which excluded females from the throne.



20. The death of cardinal Fleury changed the measures of the French government; instead of acting any longer as auxiliaries, they became principals in the war, and were imitated by the English, whom the Hanoverian possessions of George II. had unfortunately involved in continental politics. 21. They tried their strength at the battle of Dettingen, where George II. and his son, the duke of Cumberland, were present in person. The English were commanded by the earl of Stair, a pupil of the famous Marlborough; the marechal de Noailles, a cautious and a clever general, was at the head of the French. By the excellent arrangements of the marechal, the English were brought into a very difficult position, where they could neither advance nor retreat without being exposed to be attacked at serious disadvantage, their supplies were cut off, and the French were on the point of obtaining a victory almost without a battle, when the impetuosity of one of their generals disconcerted all their arrangements. He advanced to assail a British post through a dangerous defile; while his troops were entangled there, the earl of Stair attacked them fiercely, a general engagement ensued, and the French, being unable to retrieve their error, were defeated. No advantage, however, was derived from this victory, the English having strangely neglected to pursue their success.

22. Flanders next became the theatre of war, and Louis XV. took the field in person. He captured several towns, but was stopped in the midst of his career by receiving the disagreeable news that prince Charles of Lorraine had crossed the Rhine, and reduced the greater part of Alsace. Louis hastened to meet the Austrian forces, but before his arrival, they had been recalled to resist the progress of the king of Prussia, who, alarmed at the increasing power of Austria, had again taken up arms. While the war was carried on with doubtful success, the elector of Bavaria, whose mad ambition had caused it, died of a broken heart; and his son entered into a treaty with the empress. 23. It might have been reasonably expected that this event would have induced all parties to seek for peace, but the French and English, animated by national hatred, prevented the flames from being extinguished. In Flanders, marechal Saxe, natural son of the king of Poland, was placed at the head of the French forces, and the English had no general at all comparable to him in ability. The decisive battle of Fontenoy effaced the memory of Marlborough's triumphs; the

A. D.  
1743.A. D.  
1745.

allies were totally defeated, and were not able in that or the two following campaigns to recover sufficient strength, so as to check the progress of the victorious general. 24. At sea the

A. D. English were more successful; two victories were  
1747. gained by admirals Anson and Hawke in the same year, which reduced the navy of France to a single ship. The allies, after many reverses, were also eventually victorious in Italy, from which they expelled the French and the Spaniards.

25. The invasion of England by the young Pretender, who had made the government at one time tremble for its existence, was the principal cause of the disinclination to peace evinced by the British cabinet; but the means of revenge were not at their command; and when Marechal Saxe, by the capture of

A. D. Maestricht, had opened the frontiers of Holland, it be-  
1748. came necessary to think seriously about a peace. 26. The preliminaries were settled at Aix la Chapelle the 30th of April, and the definitive treaty was signed October 18th. This treaty was a complete sarcasm on the folly of those who make either war or peace. The contest was commenced with the design of dismembering the Austrian dominions, and overturning the pragmatic sanction; with the single exception of Silesia, Austria lost nothing, and the new arrangement of the succession was solemnly confirmed. 27. But the diplomatists who arranged the differences between England and France exhibited a still more ludicrous spectacle; they cautiously omitted any mention of the many disputed points between the two countries, and signed a treaty of peace replete with the elements of future war.

---

### Questions.

1. Why was the duke of Orleans permitted to assume the regency without opposition?
2. What was the character, and what were the designs of his opponent, Alberoni?
3. How were Alberoni's schemes frustrated?
4. In what manner was the war terminated?
5. What was the history of the Mississippi scheme?
6. Who was the cardinal Dubois?
7. What was the character of the Duke of Orleans?
8. To whom was Louis XV. married?
9. What celebrated cardinal became primo minister?
10. How was the repose of Europe disturbed?

11. Did France interfere in the war?
12. On what conditions was peace again concluded?
13. What was the pragmatic sanction?
14. How was it violated?
15. What was the character of the king of Prussia?
16. How did he begin the war?
17. By whom were the French induced to involve themselves in this contest?
18. What advantage did Maria Theresa derive from her misfortunes?
19. Did the French generals conduct the war with wisdom?
20. What nations from auxiliaries became principals in this contest?
21. By what error of the French were the English enabled to win the battle of Dettingen?
22. How was the war carried on in Flanders?
23. What defeat did the English suffer?
24. Was this compensated by any successes?
25. How were the English induced to agree to a peace?
26. Where was the treaty concluded?
27. What proof of wisdom was exhibited by the negociators?



Marechal Saxe.



Frederic the Great.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

## LOUIS XV. CONTINUED.

Yet reason frowns on war's unequal game,  
 Where wasted nations raise a single name;  
 And mortgag'd states their grandsires' wreaths regret,  
 From age to age in everlasting debt.

JOHNSON.

1. THE wise negociators at Aix la Chapelle had inserted in the treaty the following extraordinary clause; <sup>A. D.</sup> 1749. "all other matters shall be placed on the same footing that they were or *ought to have been*, before the commencement of the war." The English and French had never accurately marked the limits of their colonies in Asia and America, and when they came to determine what they ought to have been, acts of violence, mutual recriminations and manifestoes heralded a new war. The French complained that their British neighbours encroached on Canada; their adver-

saries retorted by similar complaints ; both were mutually exasperated, until at length the British government, without issuing any formal declaration, caused the French fleet, bound to Canada, to be attacked, and Louis immediately took up arms. 2. Such was the beginning of the celebrated <sup>A. D.</sup> 1755. seven years' war, a contest which produced events almost incredible, in which France sunk from the summit of glory to the depths of humiliation, at the very moment when her ultimate triumph seemed to be most secure. The most extraordinary feature of all was the alliance between France and Austria, nations that had been at war for nearly two centuries, and the junction of England with Prussia, powers that had hitherto shown great jealousy of each other. This change of alliances is said to have been effected by the marchioness de Pompadour, the mistress of Louis XV., who was gratified by the compliments of the crafty Maria Theresa, and enraged at the sarcasms which had been uttered against her by the king of Prussia.

3. The commencement of the war was favourable to France ; the English received some severe checks in Canada ; the island of Minorca, with the formidable fortress of Port Mahon, was wrested from them by the marechal Richelieu ; the duke of Cumberland was defeated in Germany, and obliged by a disgraceful convention at Closterseven, to capitulate with all his army, and yield up Hanover to the enemy. The king of Prussia, after having conquered Hanover and obtained a brilliant victory at Prague, was in his turn defeated by count Daun, and reduced to the brink of ruin. 4. But the battle of Rosbach, which Frederic gained over the <sup>A. D.</sup> 1757. united forces of the French and Austrians, produced a change in affairs as great as it was unexpected. By the rapidity of movements which their superior discipline enabled the Prussians to execute with facility, the enemies' lines were thrown into irremediable confusion, and a decisive victory obtained almost without a battle. A second victory in the same year at Lissa restored him the possession of Silesia, and the English, notwithstanding the convention of Closterseven, drove the French from Hanover. A long series of battles followed in Germany, without producing any important consequences ; the French were forced to retreat at Crevelt, before the prince of Brunswick ; they were in their turn victorious at Bergen, but were overthrown at Warsbourg and at Minden. The hereditary prince of Brunswick does not appear <sup>A. D.</sup> 1759. to have followed up his victories with sufficient prompt-

itude; he gave the enemy time to recover themselves, and met with two severe checks, when at too late a period he attempted to extend his conquests.

6. The king of Prussia, weakened by his very victories, seemed to be on the brink of destruction. Russia having united with Austria, the forces of the imperialists seemed on the point of overwhelming him, when he was saved by one of those unexpected events which baffle human calculation. Elizabeth, empress of Russia, died; her successor, Peter III., was an enthusiastic admirer of Frederic, and not only broke off his alliance with Austria, but promised to assist the Prussian king with all his forces. This, which would probably have been the total ruin of the imperialists, was prevented by another revolution; Peter was dethroned, and his wife Catharine, equally conspicuous for her talents and her crimes, assumed the Russian sceptre. Catharine resolved to preserve a rigid neutrality, and Frederic, who had maintained the same undaunted spirit during all these changes, was enabled to direct all his strength against the Austrians, over whom he obtained several advantages.

7. But the principal calamities of the war fell on the foreign possessions of France. In India the English took Chandanagore, Pondicherry, and all the principal settlements of their enemies in that quarter; in Africa, the fort of Senegal and the island of Goree were captured; and in America, Canada was subdued by the heroic Wolfe, who died in the arms

A. D. of victory; and the greater part of the French West  
1761. India islands were surrendered to the British. 8.  
Alarmed at the rapid increase of the English naval power, Spain, which had hitherto been neutral, concluded a strict alliance with France by a treaty called the Family Compact; but it was only to participate in her calamities and disgrace. The English rescued Portugal from menaced invasion, captured Cuba in the west, and the Philipine isles in the east, acquiring immense booty in both places, while their fleets everywhere ruled the sea, and totally destroyed the commerce of their enemies. 9. At length all parties began to wish for peace; it was concluded at Paris on terms the most favourable to England, as she retained the possession of almost all her colonial conquests.

10. During this war France was distracted by disputes between the clergy and the magistracy, which brought great disgrace on religion, and facilitated at a subsequent period the spread of infidelity. The fanaticism excited by these disputes

induced a young enthusiast named Damien to attempt the king's life ; he did not succeed, and the manner of his execution will be for ever a stain on the character of the French. A committee of physicians was appointed to determine what were the most painful tortures that could be inflicted without immediate loss of life ! Damien, whose insanity deserved to be pitied rather than punished, was subjected to all the torments suggested by these scientific barbarians, and finally torn to pieces by wild horses. 11. The Jesuits, who were supposed to have been the principal instigators of this assassin, as they probably were of a similar attempt made on the life of the king of Portugal, experienced the vengeance of the court. Their order was abolished in France, Spain, and Portugal, though no injury was done to their persons. The edict for their suppression was subsequently confirmed by a <sup>A. D.</sup> 1773. bull of Pope Clement XIV. It would not be consistent with the design of this work to examine into the truth or falsehood of the charges brought against the Jesuits ; but it is certain that their dissolution was more the result of political intrigue and private animosity than public justice.

12. The supineness of the British government permitted the French to make a valuable acquisition in <sup>A. D.</sup> 1768. the Mediterranean. The island of Corsica, unable to support the domination of the Genoese, made a vigorous effort to establish its independence. At the head of the insurgents was Paschal Paoli, who united to a patriotic spirit superior military talents. The republic of Genoa, unable to maintain their power, ceded the island to France ; and the duke de Choiseul, who was then at the head of the French ministry, availed himself of this cession to seize on the island. Paoli made a gallant but unsuccessful resistance ; at length all hope was banished, and the gallant patriot, unwilling to witness the degradation of his country, became a voluntary exile, and retired to England, the common refuge, at that time, of the unsuccessful friends of the liberties of the human race.

13. Soon after this, the duke de Choiseul was disgraced and banished, chiefly through the influence of madame du Barri ; who had succeeded the marchioness de Pompadour, as mistress to the king. His dismissal was followed by a succession of edicts depriving the parliaments of all the privileges they had previously enjoyed, and depriving the nation of the little remnant even of the forms of liberty which they had been hitherto permitted to enjoy.

14. The remainder of this reign is the most disgraceful part of the French history; the excessive vice and riotous debauchery of the court was infamous and disgusting. The monarch set the example of every species of licentiousness, and the courtiers emulated his infamy. All parts of the administration were in the utmost disorder, the finances were exhausted, national credit gone, and public confidence banished. The charitable donations given for the erection of hospitals were used to support luxury and extravagance. The money destined to redeem French captives from the Algerine pirates shared the same fate. All the offices of state, all appointments, civil, military, and ecclesiastic, were exposed for sale, and were, consequently, the prey of incompetent and rapacious characters. In a word, Louis XV. left to his successor a kingdom without money, without laws, and without morality.

15. Louis died of the small-pox in the 64th year of his age, and the 59th of his reign. His character may be easily learned from his history; if any thing more be wanting, it is sufficient to add that his death was deemed a national blessing, and filled France with universal joy.

16. The progress of science and literature during this reign was very great; but it was more than compensated by the rapid strides with which infidelity advanced through the upper and middle ranks of life. The school of French philosophy may be considered to have been founded by Voltaire and Rousseau, men of unquestionable talents, but whom foolish vanity had induced to reject Christianity, as a system that fettered too much their mental independence. Their enmity to Christian truth had all the bitterness and all the virulence of personal hostility; it seemed almost a species of madness, for they exhibited a zeal and eagerness in destroying the principles of belief which were perfectly astonishing. The moral degradation of the upper ranks contributed to their success: men who lived in the practice of every vice were eager to persuade themselves that their fears of future punishment were groundless. We cannot say with some writers that infidelity necessarily produces immorality, but we may reverse the proposition, and safely assert that immorality predisposes men to infidelity. To this fatal source may be traced many of the evils by which France was assailed in the next reign; if false philosophy did not generate the revolution, at least it aggravated its horrors and made its consequences fatal.



17. Voltaire, whose name has obtained such a bad eminence, was a native of Paris. The celebrity of his early writings induced Frederic, king of Prussia, to invite him to his court. Frederic was himself an author and a philosopher, and the vanity of both soon changed their friendship into violent enmity. Voltaire's account of the quarrel is amusing enough: he tells us, "It was reported that I had said the place of king's atheist was vacant, and no notice was taken of the imputation; but it was whispered that I had called the king a maker of bad verses, and my banishment followed as a matter of course." He retired to Ferney, near Geneva, where he died at an advanced age. His writings are remarkable for their caustic satirical wit, and exquisite powers of ridicule, but it is melancholy to reflect that such talents were devoted to the worst of purposes. He was also an excellent dramatic poet, but his attempt at an epic poem is now generally acknowledged to be a failure.

18. John James Rousseau was born at Geneva, of humble parents, and from his earliest years manifested a strong attachment to literature. His writings are remarkable for their energetic eloquence, but unfortunately, also, for their pernicious tendency. He was, perhaps, the vainest man that ever existed, and his self-conceit led him into so many absurdities, that we may almost describe him with one of his disciples as "an inspired idiot." Rousseau was for some time in England, where his eccentricities caused shame to his friends, but furnished every body else with infinite amusement.

---

### Questions.

1. What were the causes of a new war?
2. Was there any thing strange in the arrangement of the allies?
3. Did the English and Prussians experience any reverses?
4. How was their fortune retrieved?
5. Did the allies obtain any other successes in Germany?
6. Was the fortune of the war affected by the revolutions in Russia?
7. Where did the French experience their greatest losses?
8. Did Spain gain any advantage by interfering in the war?
9. On what conditions was peace concluded?
10. By whom was the life of the French king attempted?
11. Why was the order of the Jesuits abolished?

12. What island did the French annex to their dominions?
13. Did the king's mistresses interfere in the government?
14. What was the general character of the rest of this reign?
15. At what age did Louis die?
16. What circumstances facilitated the progress of infidelity in France?
17. Where did Voltaire chiefly reside?
18. What was the character of Rousseau?



Rousseau.



Louis XVI.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

## LOUIS XVI.

And since the rabble now is ours,  
 Keep the fools hot, preach dangers in their ears;  
 Spread false reports o' th' senate; working up  
 Their madness to a fury quick and desp'rate;  
 Till they run headlong into civil discords,  
 And do our business with their own destruction.

OTWAY.

1. FEW monarchs ever ascended a throne under more favourable auspices than Louis XVI. He was known to have disliked the vicious profligacy of his grandfather's court; though scarcely twenty he had shown some capacity for conducting the business of the state; anecdotes of his generous and kindly disposition were circulated through Paris; finally, his marriage with Marie Antoinette seemed to secure external tranquillity, by uniting France with

A. D.  
1774.

the empire. The first measures of the new reign were judicious and popular; the administration of finance was entrusted to Turgot, a minister equally remarkable for his virtues and abilities; other departments of the state were entrusted to Maurepas and Malesherbes, men who were animated by the soundest loyalty and purest patriotism. 2. But the nobility of France, and especially that part of it immediately connected with the court, had been too much demoralized during the late reign to be pleased with virtuous measures that threatened to destroy corruption, and deprive them of the pensions which they lavished in guilty indulgence. A resolution was taken to destroy Turgot, and an opportunity for effecting it was soon presented. 3. Louis XVI. had recalled the parliament which his grandfather had sent into exile, in spite of the remonstrances of Turgot, who saw that an institution combining judicial and legislative powers was likely to prove injurious; the parliaments retained their indignation against the minister, and when he presented to them an edict for the abolition of *corvées*, compulsory labours that the tenants were obliged to perform for their landlords, they refused to enrol it, and were supported in their resistance by the whole body of the nobility. This ill-judged effort to preserve the most disgraceful and oppressive part of the feudal system was one principal reason of the inveterate hatred to the aristocracy subsequently shown by the



Necker.

French people. The intrigues of interested courtiers succeeded in procuring the dismissal of Turgot; his place was supplied by Necker, a Swiss banker, more popular than Turgot, but far inferior to him in ability. Necker was too much addicted to theory, and seemed totally devoid of practical wisdom; his speculations on finance were ingenious and

beautiful, but his measures were injurious.

4. Great Britain, though everywhere successful at the end of the seven years' war, was greatly exhausted by the contest; the ordinary revenue was found insufficient to pay the interest of the debt and the ordinary expenses of government, some new resources were required, and in an evil hour it was resolved to levy a tax on the British colonies in North America:

for, under the pretext that the war had been undertaken for the protection of their frontier, the ministry alleged that they should bear a proportionate share in liquidating its expenses. The Americans denied the right of the British parliament to levy taxes on them, as they sent no representatives thither; a brief war with the pen was followed by an appeal to the sword; the exasperation of both parties hourly augmented, until at length the congress of deputies from the several colonies, on the 4th of July 1776, formally threw off their allegiance to the British crown, and proclaimed themselves independent, under the title of the *United States of America*.

5. The French court and people still smarted under the recollection of the defeats and disgraces they had endured in the former war; every man in his senses was aware that they would seize the first opportunity of declaring in favour of the Americans; but the court of St. James's, shutting their eyes to the dangers by which it was threatened, took every method of widening the breach between Britain and its former subjects, nor was the delusion of the English ministry dispelled until the evil was irreparable. An alliance was entered into at Paris between France and the United States, to <sup>A. D.</sup> 1778. which Spain and Holland soon after acceded. 6. As this war belongs rather to the history of England than that of France, we shall only give a brief summary of the principal events. At sea, several indecisive actions were fought; twenty naval engagements at least took place between the belligerent powers, but victory remained undetermined until the 12th of April 1782, when Admiral Rodney totally defeated Count de Grasse in the West Indies, and re-established the superiority of the British flag. In the East Indies the English were everywhere successful, and almost annihilated the power of their enemies in that quarter, but on the other hand the French subdued several of the West Indian islands, and the Spaniards conquered Florida. The Dutch suffered most severely, having been deprived of almost all their colonies by the British. In Europe, the French and Spaniards subdued Minorca, but were defeated at the siege of Gibraltar, by the gallant general Elliot. 7. In North America, the war was carried on for some time with various success, until at length the whole British army, commanded by the marquis Cornwallis, was forced to surrender almost at discretion to the united forces of the French and Americans, commanded by the marquis de la Fayette and general Washington. When the news of this event reached England, every person in the country saw that the further

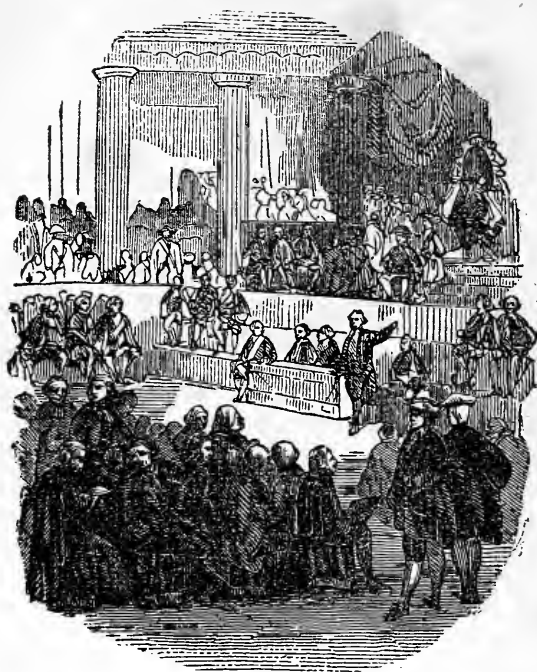
prosecution of the war was hopeless. A new ministry acknowledged the independence of the United States, and entered into negotiations with France. 8. A peace was concluded under the auspices of Joseph II., emperor of Germany, and the empress of Russia, who acted as mediators; and England obtained more favourable terms than could reasonably have been expected after the number of reverses she had experienced.

9. To support the expenses of this war, Necker had recourse to loans, a fatal system, which only deferred the evil to return with accumulated violence at a future period; after his dismissal, Fleury, Ormesson, and Calonne pursued the same improvident career, until at length the clamours of the people, oppressed by taxation, and the fears of the state-creditors that a national bankruptcy would reduce them to poverty, brought the country into the most deplorable condition. At the same time, the army who had fought for the freedom of America brought home with them some of that attachment to liberty which they had imbibed from their allies; and the aspirations for a free constitution, so new to the French, were strengthened when they looked across the channel, and saw England, notwithstanding all her reverses, enjoying comparative happiness and tranquillity. 10. Calonne saw that unless all parties in the state combined to support their relative shares of the public burdens, ruin was inevitable; he therefore resolved to propose that the nobility and clergy should resign, or at least suspend, those privileges by which they were exempted from taxation. For this purpose he convened an assembly of the notables at Versailles, and though they were the persons whose interests were most affected, Calonne would probably have secured the adoption of his plan, but for the intrigues of De Brienne, who aspired to the post of prime minister. 11. After a long struggle between justice and privilege, the latter prevailed, Calonne was dismissed, and after a brief interval succeeded by Brienne, whose first act was to dismiss the notables. The only resource now left for raising money, was by issuing royal edicts, but the parliament refused them registration. The new minister seemed to have chosen Riche-lieu for his model, regardless of the far different circumstances in which the government was placed; he procured the exile of the parliament to Troyes, whence, after a few weeks, they were recalled, more refractory than ever. The minister next resolved to shelter himself under the king's authority; at a royal sitting, Louis ordered several

financial edicts to be registered in his presence. 12. The duke of Orleans, who had lately placed himself at the head of the popular party, more through personal hatred of the queen than any regard for the public interest, had the courage publicly to protest against the registration, for which he was exiled to his country seat. At length Brienne, after having retained the post of minister only eighteen months, during which period, however, he had done more real injury to the state than any of his predecessors, became terrified at the dangers by which he was surrounded, and resigned his situation; he soon after died in retirement, overwhelmed by shame and disappointment.

13. Necker was recalled to the ministry, and as he attributed his former dismissal to the influence of the aristocracy and the clergy, he resolved to strengthen himself by an alliance with the popular party, and for this purpose prevailed on the king to convoke the states-general. A convention of the notables was summoned to decide on the necessary preliminaries for this national convocation. There were two great questions to be decided—whether the deputies of the commons should be equal in number to those of the nobility severally or collectively? and whether the states should meet in separate chambers or in one general assembly? The first point was decided in favour of the popular party; the latter, and infinitely the more important question, was left to the decision of the states-general themselves. Such an assembly had not been convoked since 1614; at no time does their constitution appear to have been fixed and determinate; the summoning them was therefore looked on as a boon to the nation, and any prudent conditions affixed to their meeting would have met with universal acquiescence; but the foolish precipitancy of Necker caused this golden opportunity to be neglected, and the consequences were fatal.

14. The assembly of the states-general took place at Versailles on the 5th of May; the session was opened A. D. 1789. by the king in a brief but patriotic speech, Necker presented his financial report, and every thing seemed to promise peace and tranquillity. But these appearances were delusive; the representatives of the commons soon perceived their superior strength, and at once insisted that the states-general should form but one body. The clergy and the nobility protested against this claim, by which they foresaw that their privileges would be annihilated; they were supported by the court, but they were betrayed by a large portion of both their own orders. 15. The inferior clergy were disgusted with the



The States-General.

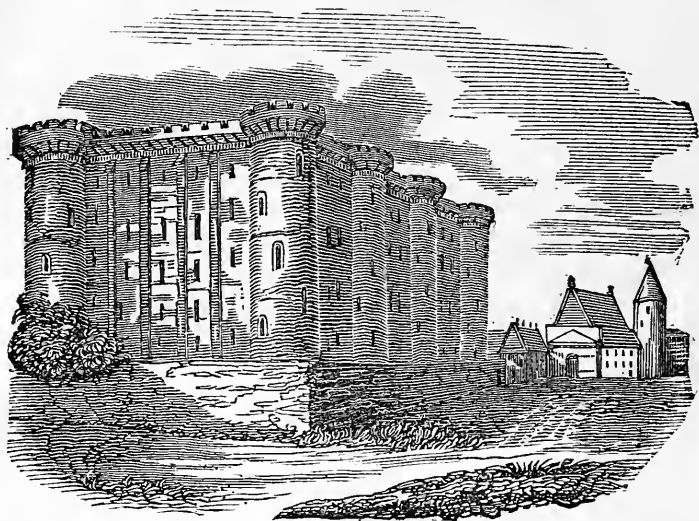
haughtiness and power of the prelates; they were, besides, united to the commons by the prejudices of birth and education; a considerable body of the nobility, headed by the duke of Orleans, privately encouraged the popular party to persist in their claims, promising to unite with them on the first opportunity. Thus supported, the deputies of the commons passed a decree, by which they declared themselves the *National Assembly*. The court rashly attempted, by a demonstration of violence, to compel the deputies to alter their resolution, but the firmness of the popular leaders was not to be shaken; they declared that they would remain in the assembly until they were expelled by actual force. The junction of a majority of the clergy and a large minority of the nobles with the third estate, completed the defeat of the court, and Louis, to prevent greater calamities, wrote, himself, to the remaining portions of the privileged orders, advising them to unite with the national assembly. 16. The courtiers of Louis XVI., more eager to preserve their pensions and privileges than their country or their monarch, hurried the monarch into acts of indiscretion



which still more increased the popular excitement. A large army was collected between Paris and Versailles ; Necker, whom the court justly looked on as the cause of all their difficulties, was dismissed ; a report was spread that the national assembly would be dissolved, and some of the leading popular deputies capitally punished for high treason. In this state of things, it required the most extreme caution on the part of the royalists to prevent the people from breaking out into open rebellion ; but, unfortunately, the nobility of France had been too long accustomed to look upon the commonalty as an inferior order of beings, whom the first appearance of a military force would terrify into submission. While an unarmed mob were bearing in procession the images of Necker and the duke of Orleans, they were imprudently attacked by a party of royal dragoons, and the busts broken. The city at once rose as one man ; the citizens formed themselves into a military body, under the title of the national guard ; they seized on all the arms in the gun-smiths' shops, and took possession of several pieces of cannon and thirty thousand stand of arms, which were kept at the hospital of the invalids.

17. The 14th of July is usually esteemed the date of the commencement of the revolution. On that day A. D.  
1789. the memorable capture of the Bastille took place. The governor, de Launay, anticipating an attack, had made every possible preparation for defence ; the store of ammunition was increased, the garrison were all at their posts, but the assault against which they had to defend themselves was that of the whole population of Paris. The plan of attack was formed on the evening of the 13th, but all plans were superseded by the fury of the populace. Early on the morning of the 14th, groups of armed men were seen forming in the vicinity of the fortress ; the governor ordered the cannon to be turned on the capital, but was prevailed upon to remove them, as they only served to increase the fury of the people. Shortly afterwards, a deputation from the commune of Paris, headed by the popular leaders, arrived, and demanded a conference with the governor. The draw-bridge was lowered for their admission, but they had scarcely entered the first court when they were followed by a multitude demanding arms and ammunition. On seeing this, the governor ordered the bridge to be raised, and directed the garrison to fire upon the intruders. The shrieks of the wounded and dying ; the confused cries of " assassination ! treason !" redoubled the rage of the assailants. Two men, lowering themselves from a guard-house, got be-

yond the bridge and broke its chains with an axe, under a heavy fire of musketry. The garrison still kept the assailants in check, but the arrival of a detachment of grenadiers, with some pieces of cannon, gave fresh energy to the besiegers. Heaps of straw were set on fire beneath the walls to conceal their movements, while a heavy fire from the neighbouring houses nearly drove the besieged from the ramparts.



The Bastille.

The governor, in despair, resolved to blow up the fortress, but was prevented; he solicited a barrel of gunpowder for his own destruction, but this also was denied; and at length a white flag was hoisted on the battlements, and the garrison capitulated. The invalids laid down their arms, and a detachment was ordered to escort the governor to the Hotel de Ville as a place of safety, but, just as he reached the steps of the building, he fell a victim to the fury of the populace; his head, and that of the second in command, were borne on pikes in a triumphant procession through the streets of Paris.

18. The two parties into which France was divided were now fairly at issue, the nobility attached to the court, and the feudal lords of the country, were determined at all hazards to retain their privileges; the middle and lower ranks of life were determined to preserve the advantage they had acquired over an aristocracy that had abused its powers. The king, placed between both, had not sufficient energy to adhere firmly

to either ; early associations, the arts of the courtiers, and the influence of the queen, led him to check the rising power of the commons by measures both injudicious and intemperate ; while a dread of popular violence and a noble dislike to the shedding of blood, induced him to retrace his steps at the first appearance of determined resistance. This vacillating policy, at all times dangerous, was, under the circumstances of France at the period, certain destruction. 19. On the 4th of August M. de Noailles and M. d'Aiguillon, both members of the nobility, endeavoured to conciliate the people by a noble sacrifice. They proposed that all the privileges belonging to their order should be abolished, and that all remaining traces of the feudal system should be abolished in France. The greater part of the nobility and clergy supported the proposition with zeal, and it was strange to see the enthusiasm with which the different privileged orders hastened to resign all the peculiar distinctions which had hitherto distinguished their rank in the state. But this sacrifice was made in vain ; the popular party looked on it as a boon extracted by terror, and the provincial nobility, a body remarkable for pride, poverty, and ignorance, saw themselves degraded below the class of merchants and traders, whom they had previously been accustomed to despise.

20. The very rapidity with which they had obtained their liberty unfitted the French nation for its enjoyment, and made them jealous of its security. Suspicions were naturally entertained of the sincerity of the court, and though they were partially dispelled by the king's judicious visit to Paris, they broke out with new violence in consequence of the queen's indiscretion. At a dinner given by the soldiers of one regiment to the officers of another, Marie Antoinette made her appearance with the dauphin in her arms, probably in imitation of her mother's appeal to the states of Hungary. She was received with enthusiasm ; the king was persuaded to enter, and several royalist toasts were drunk in his presence. The wine flowed freely, and under its influence many of the officers, who were chiefly young nobles, gave vent to sentiments which were adverse to the rising liberties of the nation. 21. An exaggerated narrative of these ridiculous orgies was spread through Paris, the dread of a counter-revolution became general, and the national guard, now organised into a regular army under the command of La Fayette, prepared to defend their liberty, which they believed to be threatened. On the 5th of October, the sound of the tocsin alarmed Paris, the people assembled in

tumultuous groups, and a resolution was taken to bring the king by force to the capital. A multitude of both sexes set out for Versailles; the women to make a representation to the king of the famine which prevailed in Paris; the men to be revenged on the royal guards for an insult said to have been offered to the national cockade. These were followed by the national guard under the command of La Fayette, whose professed design was to request of the king to come with them to Paris, but they were silent as to their intentions in case of a refusal. 22. On the morning of the sixth, the palace was attacked by a fierce mob, several of the royal guards murdered, the queen obliged to fly half naked to the king's apartments, and the whole royal family on the very brink of being murdered. At this moment La Fayette appeared, but found that he had overrated his influence; nothing would satisfy the mob but the king's immediately setting out for Paris, and with a heavy heart he found himself forced to obey. Nothing can be conceived more humiliating than this journey, which lasted six hours, though the distance is but twelve miles; the royal carriages were surrounded by an infuriate mob, red with slaughter and maddened with success; the heads of the murdered soldiers who had fallen victims to their loyalty were borne on pikes, and even held before the windows of the king's coach with cruel insult. The king was lodged in the Tuilleries, the city was brilliantly illuminated, and the Parisians spent the night in extravagant joy. The national assembly followed the king, and for the future held their sittings in Paris.

---

### *Questions.*

1. Why was Louis XVI. popular at his accession?
2. Did the aristocracy of France show any sympathy with the people?
3. By whose intrigue was Turgot removed from the ministry?
4. Why did the states of America revolt against England?
5. Did France join in the war?
6. What are the most important events that occurred in the contest?
7. By what event was it decided?
8. By whose mediation was peace concluded?
9. In what state were the French finances at the conclusion of the war?
10. How did Calonne endeavour to remedy these evils?
11. What means were pursued by the Brienne?

12. Why did he resign office?
13. What fatal error did Necker commit?
14. On what important question were the three parts of the states general divided?
15. From what circumstances was the decision in favour of the third estate?
16. By what imprudent proceedings were the people provoked to an insurrection?
17. What remarkable circumstances occurred at the storming of the Bastille?
18. What was now the state of parties in France?
19. The patriotic sacrifices of the nobility produced no beneficial effect—why?
20. Did any imprudence on the part of the queen inspire popular distrust?
21. What ill effects followed from the spread of this news through Paris?
22. In what manner did the king proceed to his capital?



Prince of Condé.



Robespierre and Danton.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

## LOUIS XVI. IN CONTINUATION.

The senate weak, divided and irresolute,  
 Want power to succour the afflicted state ;  
 Vainly in words and long debate they're wise,  
 While the fierce factions scorn their peaceful orders,  
 And drown the voice of law in noise and anarchy.

ROWE.

**A. D.**  
**1789.** 1. THE king of France was now a prisoner in his own capital, and had no other choice but to assent to the changes proposed by the national assembly or resign his crown. The first and most important of the proposed alterations was the confiscation of the church property, which was ordered to be sold for the advantage of the nation, but at the same time it was agreed that a sufficient portion of the revenue should be applied to the maintenance of the clergy, and other ecclesiastical purposes. On the same day that this decree was passed, another law was enacted, sweeping away all distinctions of rank whatever, coats of arms, titles of honour, &c. ; Necker had the courage to oppose the latter decree, but his resistance was vain, and finding his popularity

on the wane, he had the good sense to withdraw from public life, and spend the remainder of his days in literary retirement.

2. The character of Necker has suffered equally from his friends and enemies, the injudicious and unmerited praises bestowed on him by the former, have induced the world to lend a more ready ear to the calumnies of the latter; his intentions appear to have been always honest, but he had not sufficient firmness to put them into execution; his abilities as a financier would have made him a valuable auxiliary to a clever statesman, but his want of political wisdom unfitted him for the situation of premier, especially in such a troublous period as the reign of Louis XVI.

3. The greater part of the nobility and the royal family had emigrated, and formed a small army on the A. D. 1790. frontiers. They declared that the king being under *duresse*,\* no act of his would be valid. The king perceiving the dangers to which he was exposed by such injudicious conduct on the part of his friends, went voluntarily to the national assembly, took an oath of fidelity to the new constitution, and repeated it afterwards at a solemn act of federation held in the *Champ de Mars*. This was a very imposing spectacle, but it was merely a spectacle; the revolutionists, or at least a large portion of them, seem now to have resolved on the establishment of a republic, while the friends of the old *regime* contemplated nothing less than the establishment of the ancient despotism. The monarchs of Europe, who at first looked on with apathy, began to take a lively interest in the affairs of France, especially the court of Austria, so nearly connected with the hapless Marie Antoinette. All these circumstances made the friends of the revolution look with a suspicious eye on their monarch, while the indignities to which he was daily subjected, naturally disgusted him with the freedom which repaid all his sacrifices with sufferings and with sorrow

4. The prince of Condé assumed the command of the little army of emigrants, too small to produce any A. D. 1791. impression on France, but sufficiently numerous to inspire a vindictive jealousy, which was visited on the head of the unfortunate monarch. The only persons of the royal family now remaining in France were the king and queen with their children; monsieur, the king's brother, and his wife, madame; and the princess Elizabeth, the king's sister. Worn out by the persecutions to which they were exposed, they me-

---

\* *Duressé*, a force that prevents the exercise of the will.

dictated their escape to the frontiers, an attempt in which Monsieur and Madame fortunately succeeded. 5. A strange fatality seems to have disconcerted every arrangement made for the rescue of Louis XVI. Never was there a plan better formed, nor with greater chances of success than that for the escape of the king; passports were procured for the royal family under fictitious names, a body of faithful troops were ready to meet them at the pont de Sommerville, and the army at Longuy, under the command of M. de Bouillé, was ready to restore the falling throne. But an accidental delay ruined every thing, the escort having waited long beyond the appointed time, rode off from the place of rendezvous, the king having imprudently put his head out of the coach-window was recognized by Drouet, son to the postmaster of Varennes; the escort coming up too late found that they could not advance farther without a fierce struggle; and Louis, ever desirous to prevent the effusion of blood, surrendered himself a prisoner. He was brought back to Paris by a tumultuous mob, and detained in honourable captivity at the palace of the Tuilleries. 6. The emigration continually augmented; the nobility with their dependants flocked to Coblenz, and scarcely disguised their intention of checking the progress of the revolution by force of arms. The national assembly having completed their projected outline of a constitution, presented it to the king for acceptance; the monarch publicly swore to its observance, and the event was celebrated by a public fête in the Champ de Mars.

7. The national assembly having, as they fondly supposed, placed the liberty and tranquillity of France on a sure basis, dissolved themselves, after having declared themselves incapable of being elected members of the legislative assembly by which they were succeeded. This exclusion of all who might have learned wisdom from experience was a fatal measure; the legislative assembly, consisting principally of men chiefly remarkable for violence and enthusiasm, soon gave the most lamentable proofs of their utter unfitness for managing the affairs of the nation. The most violent decrees

A. D.  
1792. were issued against the emigrants, and at length war was declared against the emperor of Austria for having given them his protection. Every thing seemed to threaten the speedy downfall of the monarchy, and the injudicious conduct of the king's friends hastened the fatal consummation.

8. The duke of Brunswick having been appointed to the command of the allied army of Austrians, Prussians, and emigrants, issued a proclamation at Coblenz, couched in language

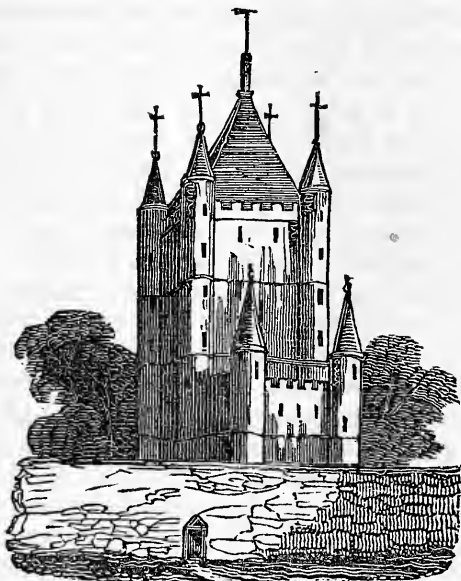


he most calculated to provoke the determined resistance of an independent nation. He denounced military execution against all who, in the slightest degree, supported the revolution, and insisted on the complete restoration of the former despotism, under the pain of giving Paris up to be plundered, and punishing as rebels all those who made any resistance. 9. The effect of this intemperate and ill-timed effusion on a people so remarkable for their national vanity as the French, may easily be conjectured; all who had hitherto wavered became violent revolutionists, and those who had been previously inclined to preserve some share of power to the king, threw themselves into the ranks of his enemies. 10. On the 20th of June an infuriate mob made an attack upon the palace, subjected the unfortunate king to the most cruel insults, and retired after having degraded royalty by forcing the king to wear, instead of a diadem, a red cap, which was the signal of revolt. 11. But this was merely preparatory to the fearful tragedy of the 10th of August. At half-past ten o'clock on the morning of that day, the populace collected in vast multitudes around the palace. The legislative body assembled on the report of a general insurrection, and the king having received an oath from the Swiss and part of the national guard, that they would defend his person and family, took shelter with the queen and his children in the hall of the national assembly. Soon after, the mob attempted to force an entrance into the palace, and the Swiss at length, compelled to fire, forced them back with the loss of two hundred men. A furious battle ensued, but the violence of the multitude forced through every obstacle. The palace was carried by storm, its brave defenders were massacred without mercy, the halls streamed with blood, the staircase was piled with the mangled bodies of the slain. Sixty of the Swiss guard, arrested in various places, were dragged to the Place de Gréve and executed; those who attempted to escape were pursued and murdered in the Champs Elysées, or upon the banks of the river. 12. On the 14th of the same month, the royal family were sent as prisoners to the old palace of the Temple, a gloomy and melancholy place, which seemed but too well suited to their altered fortunes. 13. The victories of the duke of Brunswick made the Parisians tremble for their capital, and the populace were stimulated to fresh excesses by the Jacobin party, as it has been usually called, at the head of which were Danton and Robespierre, men of the most daring and sanguinary character. On the second of September, about three in the afternoon, the mob assembled

under these ferocious leaders, and resolved to murder all the prisoners who had been arrested on suspicion of being disinclined to the revolution. The scene that followed is indescribable, the assassins massacred all without distinction of sex or age, the innocent and the guilty fell indiscriminately, and the blood of the victims for six days flowed in an uninterrupted torrent through the streets of the city. No obstacle to the carnage was offered by the government, the murderers were paid a daily salary from the public funds, and the Jacobins celebrated this horrid tragedy as a splendid victory.

14. In the midst of all these horrors, the legislative assembly terminated its labours, and was succeeded by the national convention. The greater part of the members were returned by the influence of the Jacobin party, and were firmly resolved on the deposition and trial of the king. On the very second day of their meeting they voted for the abolition of royalty in France, and so far did the rage of republicanism extend, that the ordinary appellations of *Monsieur* and *Madame* were prohibited, and the appellation of citizen, as being more agreeable to principles of equality, substituted in their stead. 15. The arms of the republic were successful against the allies; before the close of the year the duke of Brunswick was not only driven out of the country, but the French, becoming invaders in their turn, captured several important places in the Austrian Netherlands and in the provinces bordering on the Rhine. 16. The unfortunate prisoners in the Temple had been long subjected to every species of cruelty and indignity; the head of the princess de Lamballe, one of the victims of the second of September, was paraded before the window of the queen, whose favourite she had been; the guards appointed to watch the royal captives insulted them every moment; the common necessities of life were withheld, and they hourly expected to fall victims to the violence of the populace or the secret treachery of their guards.

17. At length, on the 20th of December, Louis was brought as a criminal to the bar of the convention. The crimes attributed to him were utterly without foundation. He was accused of having accepted the constitution with bad faith, and of correspondence with foreign powers hostile to France. Not a shadow of proof was offered in support of these charges, which, even if true to the last letter, could not affect his inviolability as settled by the constitution. The fallen monarch demanded a copy of the accusation, and the right of naming counsel to conduct his defence, requests which were conceded



Tower of the Temple.

with some difficulty. He chose as his advocates Deséze and Tronchet, two lawyers highly distinguished for their ability and integrity, together with the venerable Malesherbes. After a long trial, in which the king's advocates exhibited the greatest zeal and talent, the monarch was condemned to death by a majority of five votes. 18. The duke of Orleans, who had lately assumed the title of Philip Egalité, was one of those who voted for the judicial murder of his cousin and his king.

19. Louis received the account of his condemnation with firmness, and solicited a brief delay to arrange his worldly affairs, and prepare himself for another world. A. D. 1793. This was refused, but he was permitted to see his family, and bid them farewell. The abbé Edgeworth was chosen by the king as his confessor, he visited him on the evening of the 20th January, and Louis, after having received the rites of the church, retired to bed, where he slept soundly. At nine o'clock on the following morning, a message was brought to inform him that "a carriage was in waiting." He immediately rose, and, accompanied by his confessor, walked steadily through the outer court of the Temple to the gate, where the mayor's coach stood ready to receive him. The mournful procession moved slowly through deep files of soldiers, who

lined the streets from the Temple to the place of execution. The melancholy procession occupied two hours, during which time Louis employed himself in repeating with his confessor the prayers for persons at the point of death. He ascended the scaffold with a firm step, and said with a loud voice, "Frenchmen, I die innocent, and I trust that my blood" — at this moment Santerre ordered the drums to beat, and the rest of the sentence was inaudible. Louis then quietly resigned himself to the executioner; he was bound to the fatal instrument, and his head fell. Some few cried out *Vive la nation*, but the greater part of the spectators were melted into tears. His body, without being placed in a coffin, was hurriedly thrown into a plain grave, and quick-lime poured over it to accelerate the decomposition. Thus perished in the 39th year of his age, one of the most virtuous monarchs that ever filled the throne of France, a victim to the indiscretion of his friends and the malice of his enemies.

20. In the course of the year, the unfortunate queen, and madame Elizabeth, the king's sister, were sacrificed to the mad cruelty of the republicans. The young dauphin, after having been forcibly torn from his mother's arms, was given in charge to a cobbler named Simon, a monster that vitiated his infant mind and destroyed his health; but death fortunately soon released him from his miseries. The last survivor of the royal family, the princess who subsequently became the duchess of Angouleme, was, after a tedious captivity, exchanged with the Austrians for some French prisoners of distinction.

21. Philip Egalité derived no advantage from the infamous vote by which he had endeavoured to acquire popularity. He was accused of infidelity to the republic, convicted, and hurried to execution, amid the shouts and execrations of the multitude, which he sustained with great patience, and submitted to his fate with surprising resolution.

---

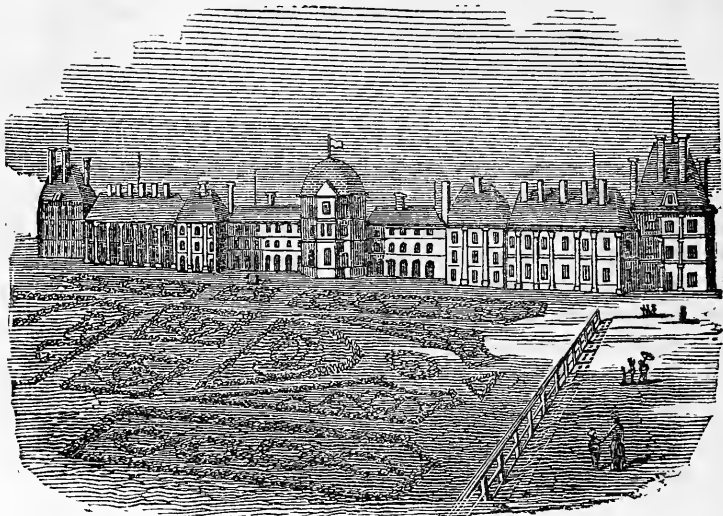
### Questions.

1. How did the friends of the revolution proceed to make a total change in the constitution?
2. What was the character of Necker?
3. Did any circumstances show that there was a want of confidence between the king and the people?
4. Which of the royal family made their escape from France?
5. By what unfortunate circumstances was the flight of Louis prevented?

6. How did the national assembly terminate their labours?
7. Why was their exclusion of themselves from the legislative assembly injurious?
8. What injudicious proclamation was issued by the duke of Brunswick?
9. Was it followed by any injurious effect?
10. When did the populace commence their cruel excesses?
11. What remarkable events occurred in August?
12. Whither was the king sent?
13. Did any fearful massacre occur in September?
14. How did the national convention commence its proceedings?
15. Were the invaders of France successful?
16. In what manner were the royal captives treated?
17. How did Louis behave on his trial?
18. Whose is the most remarkable name in the list of the regicides?
19. How did Louis behave at the place of execution?
20. What became of the rest of the royal family?
21. How did the duke of Orleans die?



La Fayette.



The Tuilleries.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

## THE REPUBLIC.

O sacred hunger of ambitious mindes  
 And impotent desire of men to reign!  
 Whom neither dread of God, that devils bindes,  
 Nor lawes of men, that common-weales containe,  
 Nor bands of nature, that wild beasts restraine,  
 Can keepe from outrage, and from doing wrong  
 Where they may hope a kingdom to obtaine,  
 No faith so firm, no trust can be so strong,  
 No love so lasting then, that may endure long.

SPENSER.

1. THE tragical end of Louis XVI., the success of  
 A. D. the French arms, and a vote of the convention against  
 1793. monarchical power, produced a general coalition of the  
 European courts. The convention did not wait to be attacked,  
 but boldly declared that the republic was at war with the king  
 of England and the stadtholder of Holland. The campaign  
 commenced with a series of reverses on the part of the French,  
 which induced the leaders of the Jacobin party to suspect

general Dumourier of treachery. 2. Four commissaries were sent with Boumouville, the minister at war, to bring him to Paris for trial; but Dumourier was by no means willing to fall a victim to the convention; he arrested the commissioners and sent them as hostages to the Austrians. He hoped that by his personal influence he would have prevailed on the army to join him in effecting the restoration of monarchy; but finding himself disappointed, and dreading that he would be given up to the convention, he fled to the Austrian camp, and thus terminated his military career for ever.

3. The party of the Jacobins, or the Mountain, as it has sometimes been called, were now triumphant in the convention; and it would be impossible to give even an imperfect delineation of the mingled atrocities and absurdities which they perpetrated. Their rule was emphatically denominated the *Reign of Terror*. All who dared to oppose the madness of the day were dragged to the scaffold; the catalogue of public crimes to be punished with death was extended to the most innocent actions, and the first fruits of French liberty were a tyranny more odious than had ever before disgraced any country. Impiety accompanied cruelty, Christianity was declared to be abolished as an useless superstition, the churches were pillaged, their lands confiscated, and their plate melted down to pay the soldiers. The entire calendar was changed in order to efface the remembrance of the days consecrated to devotion, and it was declared that the only deities acknowledged by regenerated France, were Liberty and Reason. In short, a national insanity seems to have prevailed, that hurried men on to commit crime for the mere pleasure of being criminal.

4. The campaign, a little after its commencement, seemed to promise the allies a favourable issue; Condé was delivered up to the Austrians, and Valenciennes was captured by the English, under the command of the duke of York. But the British general having laid siege to Dunkirk, was forced to retire by general Houchard, with the loss of a large portion of his arms and ammunition. On the upper Rhine the Austro-Prussian army was more successful, and forced general Custine to retreat. The victorious Houchard and the defeated Custine were, however, equally obnoxious to the convention, and were both guillotined. Shortly afterwards, twenty members of the convention were brought to trial on vague accusations and sentenced to death. Bailly, the mayor of Paris, who

had been one of the most conspicuous leaders of the revolution, was among the number.

5. In several parts of the country disgust at the crimes of the capital produced insurrectionary movements. Lyons set the example, and supported a long siege before it fell into the hands of the revolutionary army, but then its fate was dreadful; at the head of the commission sent down by the convention to investigate the crimes of the unfortunate city, was a vile buffoon named *Collot d'Herbois*, who had in former years been hissed off that stage. 6. Thousands of persons perished by his orders; the executioners were unable to destroy the victims with sufficient celerity, and cannon was directed against them to insure their wholesale destruction. Marseilles, to avoid a similar fate, submitted, but the people of Toulon surrendered their town and fleet to the English. The revolutionary army approached, and principally by the judicious measures of Napoleon Buonaparte, a young Corsican,\* whose name was afterwards to fill so large a portion of the history of the world, compelled the British to evacuate the town. Before their departure they burned most of the vessels which they could not bring off; but the inhabitants of Toulon were left to meet the same fate as those of Lyons.

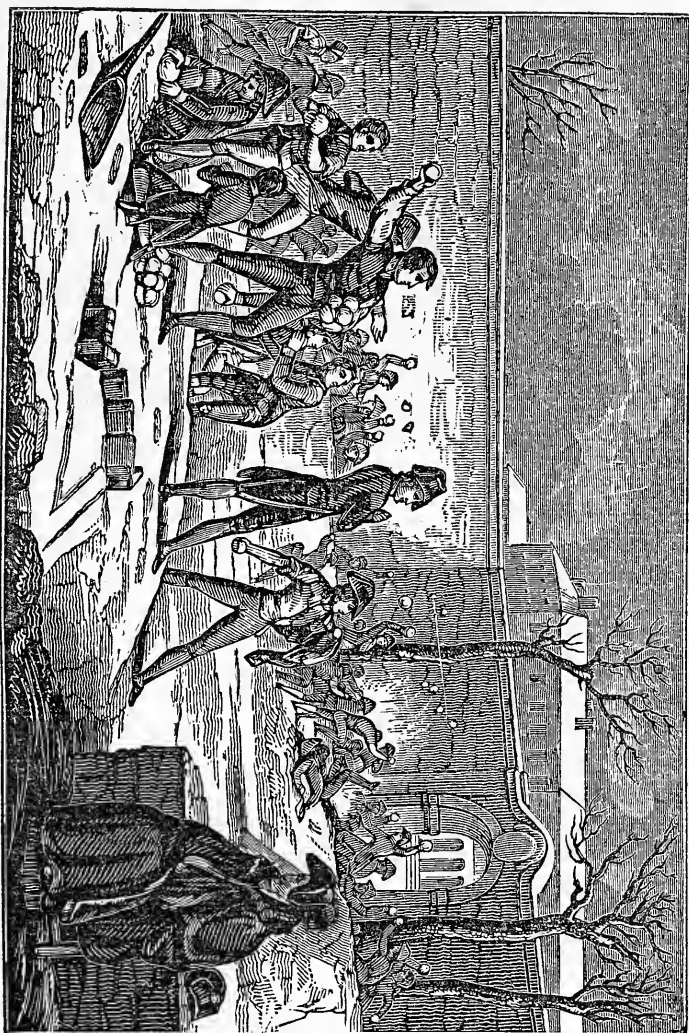
7. In another quarter a still fiercer war was carried on. The inhabitants of La Vendee had been from the very beginning of the revolution inclined to support the cause of royalty, and had shown many proofs of their dislike for the new republic. At length they commenced a furious war on the convention and its supporters, which in the beginning was everywhere crowned with success. But the allies neglected to send them assistance until it was too late; the leaders became jealous of each other, disunion crept into their councils, while an overwhelming army of the republic spread devastation through the province. Peace was restored to La Vendee, but it was the peace of desolation, obtained by the ruin of the province and massacre of its inhabitants.

8. The close of this eventful year saw the republic every where triumphant. The Prusso-Austrian army were compelled to retire before the French under Hoche and Pichegru, and the allies who had commenced so successfully, were in the end defeated by an enemy whom they had rashly despised.

---

\* Buonaparte's military propensities were indicated at the school of Brienne, where he commanded his schoolmates in their mimic warfare of snowballs and snow forts.





Buonaparte at the Military School of Brienne.



9. The preparations for the following campaign were on the most extensive scale ; like the former it began <sup>A. D.</sup> 1794. favourably for the allies and terminated in their total defeat. The convention issued orders to their soldiers to give no quarter to the allies ; on the other hand, the duke of York issued a proclamation forbidding the British soldiers to retaliate, and reminding them that humanity is the greatest ornament of heroism. 10. At length the Parisians themselves became wearied of the crimes of the Jacobins. On the 28th of July, France was delivered from those monsters, who set no bounds to their sanguinary fury ; they were all dragged before that revolutionary tribunal, by means of which they had committed so many crimes, and lost their lives on the same scaffold which they had inundated with the blood of so many thousand victims. From thenceforward, the republic ceased to exhibit the horrid scenes of massacre and bloodshed by which it had been hitherto disgraced.

11. In this memorable year the French won six pitched battles, and captured one hundred and twenty-four towns ; but the British squadron maintained their superiority by sea, and almost all the French colonies in the West <sup>A. D.</sup> 1795. Indies were taken without much difficulty. Pichegru, who commanded the army of the republic in the Netherlands, did not suspend military operations during the winter. Taking advantage of a heavy frost, he crossed the Waal on the ice, and in an incredibly short space of time subdued Holland. The prince of Orange was forced to take refuge in England, and the United Provinces, under the name of the Batavian republic, became a dependency of France. 12. Soon after, the allies were weakened by the defection of Prussia, which professed a strict neutrality, and Spain, which, though governed by a prince of the Bourbon family, entered into a league, offensive and defensive, with the republic. 13. The burden of the war now fell upon Austria and England ; the imperial forces, after having gained some successes on the Rhine, concluded an armistice with their opponents ; the efforts of the British were confined to an ill-concerted expedition against the French coast, designed to revive the war in La Vendee. The French emigrants, with a numerous body of their countrymen which the British government had in pay, made a descent in the bay of Quiberon. Having taken possession of a fort defended by the republicans, they entrenched themselves in a position selected by their leader, the count d'Herville, with more courage than judgment. Here they were attacked by

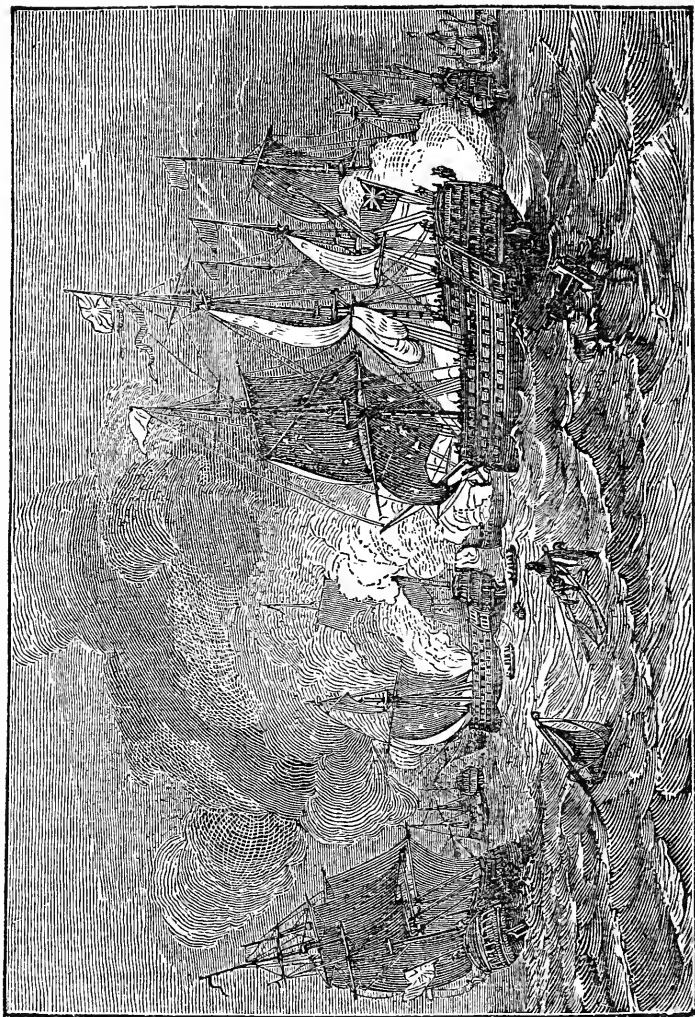
the republicans under general Hoche, their camp surprised. and the greater portion of their army either slain or made prisoners.

14. During the armistice between the French and  
A. D. 1796. Austrians, both parties made extensive preparations for renewing the war. The command of the republican army in Italy was entrusted to Napoleon Buonaparte, who had already distinguished himself at the siege of Toulon. Elevated at the early age of twenty-six to a station of such importance, he soon showed such proofs of military skill, as placed him at the head of all the generals in Europe. In one campaign the Austrians lost the greater part of Italy, the Piedmontese and the pope were forced to purchase security by submitting to whatever terms the conqueror pleased to impose, and the king of Naples compelled to seek peace on humiliating conditions. The most brilliant action of the campaign was the passage of the bridge of Lodi, which was forced by the French grenadiers in the teeth of the Austrian batteries, which vainly poured a murderous shower of grape-shot on the advancing columns. 15. The campaign on the Rhine was less fortunate but equally honourable; after the Austrians had defeated marshal Jourdan, the ruin of the French army commanded by Moreau seemed inevitable, but that general by a masterly retreat, which lasted twenty-seven days, disconcerted all the schemes of the enemy, and brought his army safely across the Rhine in the presence of the hostile army.

16. In the course of the year the French made an attempt to invade Ireland, in order to assist the United Irishmen, who were discontented with the conduct of the British government. The fleet escaped from Brest, without being discovered by the English squadron, but a violent storm dispersed the ships, and prevented those which reached Bantry-bay from effecting a landing. As many of the soldiers that had been sent on this expedition were criminals taken from the galleys, the French government did not know how to treat them on their return. At length they determined to send them against Great Britain itself. They effected a landing at Fishguard in Wales, on the 23d of February 1797, and surrendered themselves prisoners the same evening without making any resistance.

17. Mantua, the last strong hold of the Austrians in  
A. D. 1797. Italy, having surrendered, Buonaparte advanced along the shores of the Adriatic, and passing through the Alpine defiles which separate Italy from Germany, threatened Vienna. The emperor, terrified at the dangers by which he





Battle of Cape St. Vincent

was threatened, hastened to make a peace. A treaty was concluded at Campo Formio, by which the Austrian Netherlands were given up to France, and the north of Italy, nominally formed into an independent state, under the name of the Cisalpine republic, was virtually subjected to the same power.

18. The constitution of France was gradually assuming a monarchical form, two councils, that of the ancients, and that of the five hundred, had succeeded the convention, and the executive power was entrusted to a directory that held the regal authority in commission.

19. England alone now opposed the republic, and by its naval superiority sustained the contest with <sup>A. D.</sup> 1798. vigour. The French marine had never recovered the

blow inflicted by lord Howe on the 1st of June 1794; the Spanish fleet had been signally defeated off Cape St. Vincent in 1797, and in the latter end of the same year, the Dutch navy had been nearly annihilated in a sanguinary battle near Camperdown. This prevented the French from aiding the insurgents in Ireland, who had actually taken up arms. The rebellion was over before any attempt to aid the insurgents was made by the French, and even then only about a thousand men were sent, who were soon forced to surrender.

20. Buonaparte having subdued Switzerland, and deposed the pope without meeting any resistance, resolved, if possible, to humble the British, whose insular situation protected them from his ambition and his vengeance. Perceiving that her commerce with India was one of the great sources of British wealth; to destroy this, he resolved to take possession of Egypt. At the same time the Directory, probably to disguise their real designs, threatened an invasion of England, but after much boasting it was laid aside as impracticable. The fleet and army designed for the subjugation of Egypt sailed from Toulon on the 13th of May; by the treachery of the knights they obtained possession of Malta, and pursuing their course, landed safely in Egypt, where they soon made themselves masters of Alexandria. The victory of Embabeh secured them the possession of Cairo, and thus in a very short time the French found themselves masters of Lower Egypt.

21. Meantime admiral Nelson had sailed in pursuit of the Toulon fleet, and had actually passed them in the Mediterranean, but the want of frigates prevented him from discovering their movements. At length he discovered them on the 1st of August, moored in the bay of Aboukir, presenting an

imposing line. Having made his arrangements, the English admiral commenced the engagement about sunset, and before the dawn of the following morning obtained one of the completest victories recorded in the annals of naval warfare. Of the entire French fleet only two line-of-battle ships and two frigates escaped; the rest were either burned or captured. Even those that fled were afterwards taken by the British cruisers in the Mediterranean.

22. Buonaparte, thus cut off from all communication with France, pursued his conquests in Egypt with equal spirit and success. The splendid cavalry of the Mamelukes were defeated in every attack that they made on the invaders, while the French horse, under the command of "the handsome swordsman," as Murat was generally called, were victorious in every encounter. Having provided for the security

A. D. 1799. of Egypt, Buonaparte advanced into Syria, but sullied all his triumphs by remorselessly murdering all his prisoners in cold blood at Jaffa. Soon after, he laid siege to Acre, which the Turks, aided by Sir Sidney Smith, defended with such bravery for sixty days, that Napoleon was compelled to return to Egypt. A splendid victory over the



Siege of Acre.



Mamelukes near Aboukir revived the drooping spirits of the army; but Napoleon saw in the distraction of France an opportunity of obtaining higher honours than the laurels of Egypt, and having resigned the command of the army to general Kleber, he privately departed from Egypt.

23. Having safely passed through the British cruisers that guarded the Mediterranean, he landed at Frejus and proceeded to the capital, where he was received with the greatest enthusiasm. Aided by the unanimous support of the troops, he abolished the Directory, and in its place established a consulate, of which he was himself the chief. The council of five hundred, who opposed this arrangement, were dispersed at the point of the bayonet. This great revolution was effected without bloodshed, although certainly with violence, and thenceforward the French republic existed only in name.

24. Meantime the English government had excited the Neapolitans and Austrians to renew the war. The Russian emperor sent an army under Suwarrow to aid the coalition, and thus strengthened, the allies had liberated Switzerland, recovered the north of Italy, and were even threatening an invasion of the southern French provinces. This gloomy aspect of affairs had facilitated the revolution of which we have just spoken; for the nation, remembering the former triumphs of Napoleon, trusted that his abilities would restore their conquests and their glory. The first consul addressed a letter, professing the most pacific intentions, to the king of Great Britain, which was answered by Lord Grenville, in terms that plainly showed it to be the intention of the British cabinet to continue the war.

25. The defection of the Emperor of Russia, who believed, with some justice, that the Austrians had not properly supported his general Suwarrow, considerably weakened the allies, and by giving Napoleon the undisturbed possession of Switzerland, enabled him to execute the most extraordinary enterprise recorded in the history of war. 26. This was to pass over the most difficult part of the Alps, and throwing himself in the rear of the Austrian army, to force general Melas to come to an engagement under circumstances where reverse must needs be ruin. The better to conceal this project, he pretended to assemble an army of reserve at Dijon, and the Austrians, fixing their entire attention on this mass of raw recruits, gave themselves up to the most extravagant transports of hope and joy. The march of a numerous army, with its train of ammunition-waggons and

A. D.  
1800.

artillery, over mountains covered with eternal snow, along airy ridges of rock, where the hunter of the chamois, the goat-herd, and the outlawed smuggler, are alone accustomed to venture, was an undertaking so perfectly astonishing, that the Austrians could scarcely believe the intelligence, when they learned that Napoleon, after having, like Hannibal, triumphed over nature, was driving their posts before him through the north of Italy. 27. Melas marched to meet him, and on the 13th of April was fought the decisive battle of Marengo. In this engagement the Austrians at first obtained great advantages, which they failed to improve; the arrival of the reserve under Dessaix checked their advance, while Napoleon recalled his retreating troops. The victory was yet doubtful, when the timely charge of Kellermann on the Austrian flank determined the fate of the day; the imperialists were every where broken, hundreds were drowned in attempting to pass the little river Bormida, and whole corps, to avoid a similar fate, surrendered themselves prisoners. 28. After this brilliant achievement, Napoleon returned to Paris, where he was received with the greatest enthusiasm. He concluded an armistice with the Austrians, but the remonstrances of the British cabinet prevented the emperor from concluding the peace. During the progress of the negociations, the life of the first consul was in imminent danger from the plots of the jacobins and royalists, who were equally enemies to his usurpation. One of these, called the plot of the *infernal machine*, had nearly succeeded. A barrel of gunpowder, surrounded with grape-shot, was placed in a cart, which being set on fire by a slow match, was to explode at the moment when Buonaparte was passing through a narrow street. The engine exploded only half-a minute after his carriage had passed, killing twenty persons, and wounding more than fifty, but Napoleon escaped uninjured. He took advantage of the sensation excited by this treacherous attempt, to create a new arbitrary tribunal for the trial of offences against the state, and to obtain new powers for himself, under the pretence of guarding the republic from its secret enemies.

29. In November the war was renewed; it continued for some time indecisive, but at length the Austrians were defeated in every point, and the bloody battle of Hohenlinden laid the empire prostrate at the feet of France. A treaty was concluded at Luneville, on terms dictated by the conqueror, and France was now the undisputed mistress of the continent.

30. England still maintained the contest single-handed, and sustained the glory of her arms by two signal triumphs in parts of the globe far remote from each other. The army under the command of general Abercromby expelled the French from Egypt, but its gallant leader died in the moment of victory. A. D. 1801.

31. The northern powers having coalesced to destroy the naval superiority of England, admiral Nelson was sent into the Baltic, and having made overtures for negociation in vain, he attacked and destroyed the Danish fleet at Copenhagen. The French renewed their threats of invasion, but the appointment of Nelson to the command of the channel-fleet made them again lay aside the enterprise as hopeless. 32. The retirement of Mr. Pitt from the British ministry was the signal for commencing negociations. After many delays, a treaty was concluded at Amiens on the 10th of October, to the great delight of both nations.

33. The peace of Amiens had scarcely been signed, when it began to appear nothing better than a mere suspension of arms, and that a new war would soon be rekindled by the restless ambition of Napoleon. A. D. 1802. Shortly after the signing of the preliminaries, he procured himself to be appointed president of the Cisalpine republic in the north of Italy, a proceeding which greatly irritated the Austrian cabinet. His attention was next directed to the organization of the Ligurian republic, of which Genoa was declared the capital. He also brought about a political reform in Switzerland, and sent thirty thousand men into that country to support his ambitious projects. The consolidation of his power at home was not neglected; by a *concordat* concluded with the pope, the Roman catholic religion was again established in France, and the entire ecclesiastical authority lodged in the hands of the first consul. Universal liberty of conscience was established for all religious opinions; and the emigrant clergy were invited to return to their flocks, provided that they would promise their support to the established order of things. His next step towards despotism was to procure himself to be appointed consul for life; soon after which he instituted a new order of chivalry, called the *legion of honour*, the members of which were chosen from all the public professions indifferently.

34. St. Domingo, the most beautiful and valuable of the French islands in the West Indies, was in a state of frightful insurrection; the negroes, under the command of Toussaint Louverture, had established their independence, and the colo

nists had been either driven out or slain. Leclerc, brother-in-law to the consul, was sent to recover the island, and succeeded, principally by the treachery of some of the negro-chiefs. Toussaint Louverture surrendered in consequence of a negociation; but Leclerc, dreading his influence, had him soon after arrested and sent to France, where he died in prison. But the French rulers having attempted to re-establish slavery, the negroes again broke out into rebellion, and after a fearful contest, in which the French lost multitudes of soldiers, the insurgents prevailed. St. Domingo was lost to France, and the island has ever since continued an independent negro state, under the name of Hayti.

35. One of the conditions of the treaty concluded at  
 A. D. 1803. Amiens was, that the English should restore the island of Malta to the knights of St. John; but being convinced of the probability of war, they refused to give up a post which secured to them the commerce of the Mediterranean. On the 16th of May, letters of marque were issued against France, and all the French vessels in British harbours were seized. Napoleon retaliated by seizing on the persons of all the British travellers whom business or pleasure had induced to visit the continent; and these unfortunate persons were detained as prisoners of war. General Mortier marched against Hanover, of which he took possession without resistance; and the mouths of the rivers Elbe and Weser, which formed the principal outlets of European commerce, were shut against the English. On the other hand, the British navy blockaded the ports, and attacked with success the colonies of the enemy, while a threatened invasion raised such a spirit of patriotic resistance through the island, that the people readily granted to the ministry all the supplies of men and money that they demanded.

36. The attention of Europe was fixed upon the  
 A. D. 1804. projected invasion of England, when two strange events occurred in Paris, that excited universal astonishment and indignation. A conspiracy was said to have been discovered against Buonaparte, at the head of which were Pichegru, the conqueror of Holland, George Cadoudal, a Vendean chief, and Moreau, whose military fame rivalled that of Napoleon. The conspirators were arrested, and the gallant Pichegru secretly assassinated in prison. A few days before this, the Parisians heard in one breath, that the heir of the house of Condé, the duke d'Enghien, had been arrested at Ettenheim, a town in the principality of Baden, and tried and



Death of the Duke d'Enghien.

executed within sight of their own houses at Vincennes. This horrid murder was aggravated by a mock trial, in which every form of law and every principle of justice were violated. The unhappy prince was arrested in a neutral state, tried for a civil offence before a military tribunal, at the hour of midnight, when it was against the laws of France to hold any trial; no counsel was allowed for his defence; the execution took place immediately after the sentence, without any time being allowed for the prince to lodge an appeal, and finally, had even all the legal forms been observed, the duke owed no allegiance to the government of France. He died with a firmness and constancy worthy of his noble birth, and was buried in the ditch of the castle of Vincennes. This fatal event is the greatest blot on Napoleon's character; its imprudence was to the full as great as its wickedness, for such an act of wanton cruelty provoked against him the personal hostility of the European sovereigns. The remark of the callous Fouché on the subject has passed into a proverb—"It was worse than a crime—it was a blunder."

37. The first consul soon afterwards obtained the object of his highest ambition; he was created by a subservient senate emperor of the French, the philosopher and statesman Carnot having alone had the courage to protest against the appointment. Thus vanished like a shadow the French republic, the establishment of which had been purchased by so many lives.

The only important military event in this year was the seizure of the Spanish plate-fleet by the English without any formal declaration of war; this of course produced a close alliance between the courts of Paris and Madrid, though there is reason to believe that they had been previously united in hostility to England.

38. The conspirators against Buonaparte were brought to trial; George Cadoudal and ten of his associates were executed; General Moreau was permitted to transport himself to America; the remainder were pardoned. Freed thus from dangers, Napoleon prepared for the ceremony of his coronation, and, to the astonishment of all Europe, prevailed on the pope to officiate on the occasion. He was crowned emperor of the French on the 2d of December, and in the following year assumed the title and ensigns of king of Italy at Milan.

---

### *Questions.*

1. Against what European powers did the Convention declare war?
2. How did the military career of Dumourier terminate?
3. What general description may be given of the reign of terror?
4. With what success was the war carried on?
5. Did any symptoms of hostility to the Convention appear in any part of France?
6. How were the inhabitants of the discontented towns treated?
7. By what means was the insurrection in La Vendee quelled?
8. How did the campaign terminate?
9. What contrast is there between the orders issued to the French and English armies?
10. How was the reign of terror terminated?
11. By whom was Holland subjugated?
12. What nations deserted the allies?
13. Did England undertake any unsuccessful expedition?
14. What calamities did the Austrians suffer in Italy?
15. How was the campaign conducted on the Rhine?
16. With what success did the French attempt to invade Britain?
17. Into what terms of peace was Austria forced?
18. Did any change take place in the internal government of France?
19. Where did England maintain her superiority?
20. In what way did Buonaparte resolve to weaken the power of Britain?
21. By what naval victory did the English cut off the communication between the invaders of Egypt and France?
22. Why did Buonaparte return home?

23. What change did he make in the government on his return?
24. Was there any confederacy now formed against France?
25. Did any one of the allies withdraw himself from the rest?
26. What extraordinary march did Buonaparte perform?
27. In what decisive engagement were the Austrians' overthrown?
28. From what great danger did Napoleon escape?
29. How were the Austrians compelled to solicit peace?
30. Did England obtain any triumphs?
31. Was the close of the war remarkable for any naval exploits?
32. What facilitated the conclusion of peace between France and England?
33. How was Napoleon employed during the peace?
34. What occurred during this time at St. Domingo?
35. How did the war between France and England recommence?
36. What legal murders did Napoleon sanction?
37. To what dignity was he soon after raised?
38. What remarkable circumstances took place at the close of the year 1804?



Napoleon crowning Josephine.



Napoleon.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

## THE EMPIRE.

When Europe bowed beneath the yoke,  
And Austria bent and Prussia broke.

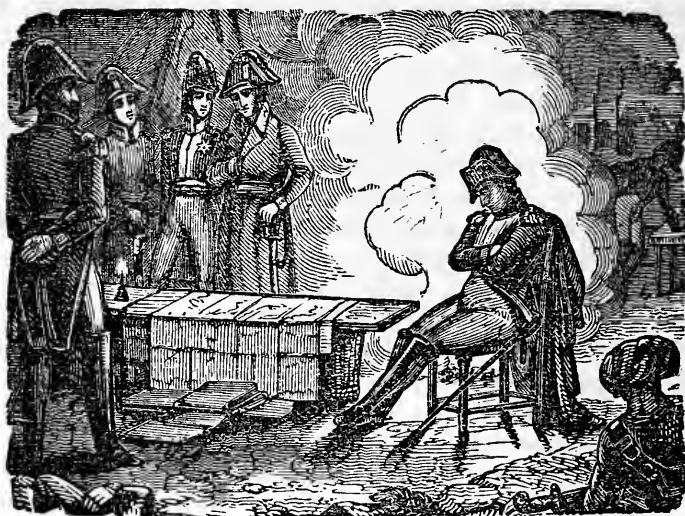
SCOTT.

1. THE murder of the duke d'Enghien facilitated  
A. D. the formation of a coalition between the cabinets of  
1805. Petersburgh, Stockholm, and London, against France  
It was not, however, until after the delay of some months, that  
Austria and Prussia could be prevailed upon to unite with the



other allies for maintaining the independence of Europe; and the indecision of the latter power prevented her from sharing in the contest. 2. From the extreme of sloth, the Austrian government, irritated by the news of the usurpations of the French in Italy, suddenly passed into the opposite and more dangerous one of inconsiderate rashness. Without waiting for the Russian troops, or even securing the co-operation of Prussia, the Austrian emperor commenced the war. 3. His first proceeding was almost as tyrannical as any of which he complained on the part of the French. The elector of Bavaria having a son travelling in France, was anxious to remain neutral, and submissively entreated the German emperor to grant him permission to do so; his request was not only refused, but he was ordered forthwith to incorporate his forces with the Austrians, and place his soldiers under their chiefs. This was of course refused. The Austrians poured their forces into Bavaria, and acted as if they were in an enemy's country, while the elector retired into Franconia, and anxiously awaited the arrival of the French as his deliverers.

4. The army which Napoleon had designed for the invasion of England, immediately was ordered to march on the German frontier, while Massena was directed to commence offensive operations, and penetrate, if possible, into the hereditary dominions of Austria. 5. On both sides the French were pre-eminently successful; Mack, the Austrian general, after a series of blundering operations which completely proved his incapacity, shut himself up in Ulm with 20,000 men, and surrendered the town on the 17th of October, under circumstances that show he was not only a coward but a traitor. Massena defeated the Austrians in Italy, and Napoleon was consequently enabled to make himself master of Vienna without any opposition. But Austria had still some chances in her favour; the Russian emperor had at length brought up his forces, and the two armies were concentrated in Moravia. 6. Napoleon, with a precipitancy that might have cost him dear, passed the Danube, and after a series of manœuvres, in which the allies showed but little skill, the two armies met on the second of December, to decide for a time the destinies of Europe, on the plains of Austerlitz. The Russians having incautiously too much extended their line, Napoleon poured a force through the gap which completely severed that wing from the centre; the centre itself was soon broken by the French cavalry under Murat, and the right wing of the allies, which for a moment had held the fate of the day in suspense,



Napoleon on the Evening before the Battle of Austerlitz.

was overwhelmed by masses of superior force. A great number endeavoured to make good their retreat over some frozen lakes, but the French broke the ice about them with a storm of shot, and more than 20,000 were either drowned or swept away by the artillery. 7. The fate of the continent was decided: the Austrian and Russian emperors were obliged to accept peace on any terms that the conqueror pleased to dictate. The Germanic constitution\* was dissolved, and a new connection formed between the states, called the *Confederation of the Rhine*, with Napoleon at its head, under the title of *Protector*. The electors of Bavaria and Wirtemberg were created kings; Murat became grand-duke of Berg, and Louis, the brother of Napoleon, was named king of Holland.

8. But before the battle of Austerlitz was fought, France sustained a signal defeat in another quarter, which almost balanced that victory. The combined fleets of France and Spain were almost annihilated at Trafalgar by the English under lord Nelson, who fell in the midst of his triumph. Napoleon on his return to France completed his abolition of that republic which had cost France so dear, by distributing titles and dig-

---

\* The *Germanic*, or, as it was in diplomatic style termed, the *Holy Roman Empire*, which was thus dissolved, had lasted one thousand and six years, reckoning from the time when Charlemagne had received the imperial crown from pope Leo III.

nities to the generals who had shared in the glories of this brilliant campaign.

9. Unawed by the calamitous defeat of Austria, and untaught by a knowledge of the errors which had <sup>A. D.</sup> caused these disasters, Prussia rushed heedlessly into 1806. war with the French, and committed over again the same faults that led to the ruin of the emperor. After some alterations in notes and manifestos, the Prussian army marched into Saxony, and treated the country as Bavaria had been treated by the Austrians in the preceding year. 10. Napoleon saw and took advantage of their error; by an unexpected movement, he turned the right wing of his opponents, seized and blew up their magazines, and placed his army between the Prussians and their resources. The explosion of his magazines first made the rash king aware of the extent of his danger; his attempts to extricate himself brought on the battle of Jena, in which the Prussians were defeated, and their cause irretrievably ruined. 11. The consequences of this memorable battle were still more disastrous, the different corps of the Prussian army were obliged to lay down their arms in succession; the fortresses were surrendered after a very inefficacious resistance, either by the cowardice or treachery of their governors. Blucher, who alone of all the Prussian leaders had exhibited any courage or military skill, was forced, after a brilliant retreat, to surrender, and the king of Prussia having abandoned his capital, was compelled to take refuge in Königsberg with the shattered remains of his forces. Thus within the brief space of a month was the fabric of the Prussian power, which the abilities of the great Frederic had erected, totally, and to all appearance, remedilessly destroyed. Oct. 14.

12. The emperor of Russia now ordered his forces to unite with the remnant of the Prussian army, but <sup>A. D.</sup> the French maintained their superiority until the severe- 1807. ty of winter compelled both armies to lay aside hostilities for a brief period. 13. In the latter end of January, the Prussians having received some reinforcements, resumed the offensive, and on the 8th of February was fought the bloody battle of Eylau. After a horrible scene of carnage, night separated the combatants, and the victory remained undecided. For some time after both armies remained inactive, but during the interval, the French made themselves masters of Dantzic. A length, on the 14th of June, the decisive battle of Friedland was fought; the Russians maintained the combat with distin

guished bravery, and retreated in good order. - 14. But the consequences of the battle were as great as those of the most brilliant victory; the emperor of Russia concluded an armistice, and on the 25th of June had a personal interview with Napoleon at Tilsit, where a treaty of peace was negotiated. The king of Prussia was stripped of half his dominions, and was given to understand that he owed the preservation of the remainder to the friendly intercession of Russia. The cruel and contumelious treatment of the unhappy monarch produced such an effect on his high-spirited and lovely consort, that she died of a broken heart.

15. Napoleon had issued from Berlin those celebrated decrees which forbade the introduction of British manufactures on the continent; he confirmed them anew at Tilsit, and took the most vigorous means to shut out England from all commercial intercourse with the rest of Europe. But this was an enterprise in which it was impossible for him to succeed; long habit had made British manufactures and colonial produce necessities of life; they continued to be surreptitiously introduced, with the connivance of the French allies, and even of Buonaparte's brother; while the vexatious tyranny of the custom-house officers produced a deep and popular resentment, whose effects were severely felt in the sequel.

16. The king of Sweden had engaged in the war as an ally of Prussia, but after the treaty of Tilsit he was forced to retire before the superior power of the French, and a resolution was taken to deprive him of his crown.

17. The situation of Denmark was at this time in the highest degree embarrassing, for it was evident that its government could not, even if they were inclined, prevent their fleet from being seized upon by the French emperor, and made subservient to his purposes. The British cabinet, which up to this period seemed to have resigned all concern for the safety of the country, suddenly acted with a promptitude and decision that formed a powerful contrast to its previous torpidity: a fleet consisting of twenty-seven sail of the line, and having on board a respectable body of land-forces under the command of Sir Arthur Wellesley, was sent to enforce the surrender of the Danish fleet, not as possessions, but as pledges to be restored at the conclusion of a general peace. 18. The cabinet of Denmark at first refused to comply, but the bombardment of Copenhagen terrified them into submission, they unwillingly surrendered their ships, and immediately after declared war against England. The seizing of

the Danish fleet was undoubtedly a strong measure, but it seems to be justified by the circumstances of the time.

19. The period immediately following the peace of Tilsit was the happiest time of the French empire; the publication of that admirable code of laws, justly styled the *code Napoleon*, at once raised the legal system of France from the very worst to one of the best in Europe; the erection of splendid bridges and aqueducts improved the state of the country, roads and canals were constructed with more skill than had been hitherto witnessed on the continent, and the vanity of the Parisians was gratified by the erection of some magnificent public buildings, and by the adornment of their galleries with pictures and statues extorted from conquered states. The strictness of the police and the fear of the military conscription were the only severities of despotism that the French experienced; but these, and especially the latter, were serious evils.

20. We are now approaching the transaction, whose perfidious commencement and fatal termination should for ever be a lesson to statesmen and princes, that treachery invariably brings its own punishment. Spain was at this time governed by a court, whose criminality can scarcely be paralleled in the annals of infamy. Charles, its sovereign, was a weak ignorant man, whose imbecility bordered on idiocy; the queen lived in the open practice of the most revolting debauchery; Godoy, her paramour, whom she had raised from the rank of a private soldier to the title of Prince of the Peace, was a compound of ignorance and vanity, with every inclination, but not with sufficient abilities, to attain eminence by the most iniquitous means. Ferdinand, prince of Asturias, the heir apparent, united in an eminent degree his mother's perfidy with his father's folly, and was at the same time openly hostile to both his parents. 21. With this court Napoleon negotiated a treaty for depriving England of her commerce with Portugal, and sent an army under Junot to enforce obedience to his imperious edicts. The prince regent of Portugal endeavoured to purchase security by an inglorious submission, but at the same time unwilling to commit an act of gross injustice to his oldest and most faithful allies, he gave the English merchants early notice to make their escape with all the property that they could collect, before he published in his dominions the Berlin decrees, which commanded the forfeiture of all British manufactures. 22. This submission did not satisfy Napoleon; he published in the French official paper

that *the house of Braganza had ceased to reign*; the prince regent had then no other means left to escape a prison but to take refuge on board the English fleet, by which he was escorted to the Brazilian dominions of Portugal in South America.

23. The occurrences which enabled Napoleon to  
 A. D. 1808. seize on the persons of the Spanish royal family are still involved in great mystery; a conspiracy was said to have been formed by the prince of Asturias; soon after the king of Spain and Godoy resolved to quit the kingdom and settle in South America; the news of this caused a popular insurrection, which terminated in the resignation of Charles and the quiet accession of Ferdinand. While men were wondering how all this would end, Charles published a proclamation, asserting that his resignation was an involuntary act, and claiming the assistance of his French ally for the recovery of his crown. 24. By the most consummate arts, Napoleon succeeded in persuading all the parties to refer the disputes to his decision, and to come and meet him at Bayonne for the purpose. The wretched dupes crossed the frontier, and when they were irrevocably in the power of the emperor, were informed that the Bourbon family should no longer govern Spain, and that its crown was transferred to Joseph Buonaparte, who had been hitherto the nominal king of Naples.

25. When the news of this unparalleled treachery was spread through Spain, it produced the most violent effect on that fierce and haughty nation; the populace everywhere rose and committed furious excesses on the partizans of Godoy and Napoleon, which the French, and especially Murat, who commanded at Madrid, fearfully retaliated. The Spaniards in every quarter erected provincial juntas to administer the affairs of government, and raised numerous armies under the command of different leaders, but want of skill and unity made their labours ineffectual. The English nation deeply sympathised in the Spanish struggle for independence; the deputies from that nation were received in the most friendly manner, the prisoners were restored, supplies of arms and money forwarded to the peninsula, and a treaty concluded with the leaders of the insurrection both in Spain and Portugal. 26. The patriots being raw and inexperienced troops at first suffered several defeats, but at length general Dupont was forced to surrender with 20,000 men to the Spaniards under the command of Castanos, and the French besiegers of Zaragossa were foiled in their attack on this unfortified city by Palafox, a young nobleman of romantic bravery.

27. At length an expedition was sent from Britain to aid in the expulsion of the French from the peninsula ; it was commanded by Sir Arthur Wellesley, already distinguished by his victories in India and Denmark. On the 8th of August, a landing was effected in the bay of Mondego ; on the 17th, the French, under general Laborde, were defeated near Roviga, and on the 21st, a still more decisive victory was obtained over Junot, at Vimiera. 28. But after having obtained such brilliant success, the English general had the mortification to find himself deprived of the supreme command by the arrival of Sir Henry Burrard, and afterwards of Sir Hew Dalrymple, older but less skilful generals. General Dalrymple concluded the celebrated *convention of Cintra* with the French general, by which the fruits of Wellesley's brilliant victories were lost, and the French permitted to retire with the plunder of Portugal.

29. The news of the successes obtained by the insurgents in Spain, and the British in Portugal, convinced Napoleon that his presence was necessary to secure the fruits of his perfidy. With his characteristic rapidity, he crossed the Pyrennees accompanied by a brilliant army, and immediately commenced a series of operations which the unskilful Spaniards were unable to resist. The generals of the patriots could never be induced to act in concert, they were consequently overpowered in detail, and the English general, Sir John Moore, who had advanced to their assistance, was forced to retreat towards Corunna. 30. The greater part of Spain was thus again subjected to its new king, Joseph, who was, however, nothing more than his brother's deputy ; and Buonaparte having for once seen a British army retreating before him, returned to Paris. Marshal Soult hung close on the rear of the English army during their disastrous retreat, until at length Sir John Moore perceived that it was impossible to em-<sup>A. D.</sup> bark without either a convention or a battle. He did 1809. not hesitate in his choice ; on the 19th of January, he attacked the French with so much vigour that they were compelled to retreat. The British were consequently permitted to embark without molestation, but their heroic commander had fallen in the arms of victory. He was buried at night on the field of battle.

---

### Questions.

1. What nations now entered into a coalition against France ?
2. Did Austria act consistently and prudently ?

3. With what rash proceeding did the Austrian government begin the war?
4. What plan did the French adopt?
5. How did both armies succeed?
6. How was the battle of Austerlitz won?
7. What were the consequences of this signal victory?
8. Did the French suffer any defeat in another quarter?
9. How does it appear that Prussia did not profit by the example of Austria?
10. What led to the battle of Jena?
11. Was it followed by any calamitous results?
12. Did any ally join the Prussians?
13. Where did the two armies come to an engagement?
14. How was the war terminated?
15. In what manner did Napoleon endeavour to ruin the English commerce?
16. Did the king of Sweden join in this war?
17. Why did the British government send an armament against Denmark?
18. How did it succeed?
19. In what manner was the internal government of France managed?
20. What was the state of the court of Spain?
21. Did they unite with Napoleon in any enterprise?
22. Whither did the prince regent of Portugal retire?
23. What circumstances afforded Napoleon a pretext for interfering in the affairs of Spain?
24. How did he treat the Spanish royal family?
25. What effect did this perfidious conduct produce in the peninsula?
26. Did the Spanish patriots obtain any military success?
27. Who commanded the English expedition to Portugal?
28. How was Sir Arthur Wellesley prevented from reaping the fruits of his victories?
29. In what manner did Napoleon behave?
30. What was the event of the battle of Corunna?



Wellington.





The Retreat from Moscow.

## CHAPTER XL.

## THE EMPIRE, CONTINUED.

The feign'd retreat, the nightly ambuscade,  
 The daily harass, and the fight delay'd,  
 The long privation of the hoped supply,  
 The tentless rest beneath a frozen sky,  
 The stubborn wall that mocks the leaguer's art,  
 And palls the patience of his baffled heart,  
 Of these they had not dream'd.

BYRON.

1 WE mentioned in the last chapter that Napoleon returned from Spain without completing, as he intended, and probably might have accomplished, the entire subjugation of that country. The cause of this change in his plans was the news that reached him of the probability of a new war with Austria, which still smarted under the degradation of its late defeat, and was eager to retrieve the power and possessions of which it had been deprived. The war was begun and ended in one campaign; it was com-

A. D.  
1809.

menced without the form of a declaration, and the combatants exhausted all the wiles of diplomacy to throw on each other the blame of the first aggression. The Austrians began as before by invading Bavaria, and taking possession of Munich, which the king was obliged to abandon at their approach. 2. But Napoleon's arrival changed the face of things. Without delaying at Paris, he hurried from Spain to Germany, and by his superior skill was enabled to attack the divisions of the Austrian army separately, and beat them in detail. Finally, the battle of Wagram, fought almost under the walls of Vienna, completely broke up the Austrian power, and left the country and its sovereign at the mercy of Napoleon.\*

3. It was naturally to be expected that the temerity of the Austrian emperor would be punished by his deposition, but to the surprise of all Europe, the terms on which peace was conceded were far from being severe, and some persons began to speak of the moderation of Buonaparte! The secret of this leniency and of the protracted negotiations at Schoenbrunn, the palace of the Austrian emperor near Vienna, will be explained in the sequel.

4. In the Peninsula, Sir Arthur Wellesley, who had been again sent out to take the command, expelled the French from Portugal, and having pursued them into Spain, obtained a glorious victory at Talavera on the 28th of July.† But being

---

\* Throughout the entire of Germany, a determined spirit of popular resistance was manifested against the French; colonel Schill, though wholly unauthorized by his government, raised a small but gallant army in Prussia; the duke of Brunswick at the head of a few faithful followers, became formidable in the north of Germany, and Hofer at the head of the Tyrolese peasantry, emulated the exploits of the Swiss mountaineers in the middle ages. But the total defeat of the Austrians made all their exertions ineffectual. Schill perished in a sortie from Stralsund; the duke of Brunswick, with difficulty, escaped on board the English fleet; and the Tyrolese patriots, ungratefully deserted by the Austrian government, were given up to the vengeance of the French, who treated them not as enemies but as rebels. Hofer was shot as a traitor: he died with firmness worthy of the cause which he had supported.

† The British government, instead of sending out forces sufficient to expel the French from the Peninsula, which at that time they might have done, dispatched an expedition to the coast of Flanders, under the command of the earl of Chatham, an old and incompetent general. They obtained possession of Flushing, but there their success terminated. The judicious measures of Bernadotte prevented their farther advance, the unwholesome marshes of Walcheren pro-

unable to resist the united forces of the French he was obliged to retire within the Portuguese frontier. The Spanish armies were every where beaten, but the country was no where subdued; the straggling soldiers and peasantry formed themselves into small bands called *guerillas*, which cut off the French convoys, massacred the stragglers, and left no part of the country subject to their sway, except that actually occupied by their military posts.

5. In the north of Europe a strange revolution took place; Gustavus Adolphus IV., king of Sweden, had engaged in a war with Russia, to which his resources were wholly inadequate; in consequence, he was deprived of the province of Finland, and this loss so irritated the Swedish nation, that they at once deposed their sovereign, excluded his children from the succession, and elected the duke of Sundermania, the uncle of Gustavus, first regent, and afterwards king.

6. In the south the pope was stripped of his dominions, and sent a prisoner to France; an event which some years before would have set the whole south of Europe in a flame, but which, on the present occasion, only produced secret hostility and a concealed desire of vengeance.

7. The secret of the negociations at Schoenbrunn was at last discovered, and it surprised all Europe. A. D. 1810. Napoleon, seeing that Josephine was childless, and anxious to strengthen his power by an alliance with the old royal families of Europe, had resolved on divorcing this faithful companion, and in some degree the principal cause of his fortunes, in order to marry the archduchess Maria Louisa, daughter to the emperor of Austria. 8. The marriage was celebrated with extraordinary splendour, and was at the time looked upon as the greatest security to the throne of the French emperor. But in reality it weakened the foundation of Napoleon's power, for it blighted the hopes which some of the French marshals must have nourished, and it irritated all those attached to revolutionary principles throughout Europe, who looked on the reigning house of Austria as the worst enemies to the freedom and happiness of the human race.

9. The annals of the peninsular war, carried on with consummate skill by Sir Arthur Wellesley, who had been created

---

duced a fever almost as fatal as a plague, and at length, having suffered immense loss, the inglorious expedition returned to England, after an useless sacrifice of human life, which ought never to be remembered without shame and sorrow.

Lord Wellington, belong to the history of England rather than that of France ; suffice it to say, that notwithstanding some brilliant victories, the English general was compelled to retreat into Portugal before the superior forces of Massena. The Portuguese destroyed every thing that could afford shelter or sustenance to the invading army, and Wellington having placed his army in the impregnable lines of Torres Vedras, which covered Lisbon, quietly waited the time when famine would compel Massena to retire.

10. Louis Buonaparte, king of Holland, had displeased his imperial brother, by conniving at the importation of English merchandise ; he was therefore deprived of his dominions, which, together with the old Hanseatic territories, were united to France. 11. This new insult to northern Germany was allowed to pass without remonstrance ; Prussia was too much weakened by recent misfortunes, and Sweden had lately chosen for its sovereign a general of France. The prince of Augustenburgh, who had been recognised as heir to Charles XIII. (duke of Sundermania), died suddenly, and the diet chose as his successor Charles John Bernadotte, a French general distinguished above his compeers for honourable and humane conduct. They probably designed by this choice to conciliate the favour of Napoleon, but to him the choice was far from being agreeable, for he was jealous of Bernadotte, whose fame had been established before Buonaparte had been placed at the head of affairs.

12. The birth of a son seemed to make the happiness of Napoleon complete ; he was immediately proclaimed successor to the empire, with the title "king of Rome," and all the vassal sovereigns of Europe sent ambassadors to congratulate the emperor on this event. Even the degraded royal family of Spain had the meanness to join in this act of homage, thus showing that they almost merited their fate by succumbing to the author of their ruin. 13. But amid all his pomp and power, Napoleon could not but discern the signs of an approaching storm ; the diplomatic intercourse with Russia had begun to assume a very angry character ; the English had completed the conquest of all the French and Dutch colonies in the east, the Spanish guerilla warfare was continued with unceasing pertinacity, and Massera was forced to retreat from Portugal. The military skill displayed by Massena in this retreat has been always praised, but the abominable atrocities committed by the French soldiery, and sanctioned by their commander, will be remembered with

horror to the latest posterity. Lust, rapine, and cruelty perpetrated every crime that such diabolical passions could prompt and ferocious violence execute ; Portugal remained free, but it remained a desert.

14. The emperor of Russia had foreseen from the moment of the Austrian alliance, that it would be <sup>A. D.</sup> scarcely possible for him to avoid hostilities with <sup>1812.</sup> France ; the necessities of his country had compelled him to relax the severity of the Berlin decrees, and connive at a commercial intercourse with England ; and he well knew that to thwart Napoleon's favourite project of excluding British manufactures from the continent, was the surest means of provoking his inveterate hatred. All the statesmen who had in early times possessed the confidence of Napoleon, had remonstrated in vain against a war with Russia ; Talleyrand, Fouché, and his uncle, cardinal Fesch, tried their influence with the emperor in vain ; confident in his resources and his fortune, he mocked at their forebodings, and acted as if victory was already secure. 15. It must be confessed that the military power then possessed by the French emperor in some degree rendered his confidence excusable ; he had a disposable force exceeding half a million of men, a greater number than had ever been commanded by any European sovereign, and far exceeding any that the limited resources of Russia would allow her to bring into the field ; his soldiers were accustomed to triumph, his generals had proved their courage and conduct in many glorious fields, and all the states of the European continent, save Russia itself and the Peninsula, were his tributaries and auxiliaries. Swedish Pomerania and the island of Rugen were occupied by the French troops early in January, probably because Napoleon had reason to suspect the designs of Bernadotte ; soon after, a treaty was concluded with Prussia, by which that power, much against its will, was obliged to assist the French with 20,000 men ; Austria had previously agreed to send 30,000 under prince Schwartzenberg.

16. On the 16th of May, Napoleon arrived at Dresden, where the emperor of Austria, the kings of Prussia, Naples, Wirtemberg, and Westphalia, together with all the minor potentates of Germany, had been ordered to meet him. Having figured there for some time as the undisputed king of kings, he broke up his court, sent back the empress to France as regent, and proceeded to Dantzic, where negotiations were continued for a fortnight longer.

17 On the 22d of June, Napoleon published a declaration

of war, whose proud and confident tone was powerfully contrasted with the modest and affectionate address to his subjects, which Alexander published in reply. Before commencing the Russian campaign, we shall just take a glance at the events that occurred during this year at the Peninsula. 18. Early in spring, Wellington made himself master of the strong fortresses of Ciudad Rodrigo, and Badajoz. He then followed Marmont to Salamanca, where he defeated the French army, on the 22d of July, with immense loss. In consequence of this victory, the English army were enabled to march upon Madrid, in the confident expectation that such brilliant exploits would rouse the whole Spanish nation to one simultaneous exertion. But the pride and bigotry of the Spaniards took fire at the idea of submitting to an Englishman, the French were permitted to concentrate their forces, which more than doubled the number of the English, and Wellington leisurely retired with his troops to the frontiers of Portugal.

19. The Poles had anxiously hoped that Napoleon would have restored their independence, but his connection with Austria prevented him from performing an act of justice so advantageous to his interests; had he done so, the enthusiasm of a nation eager to regain its freedom might probably have changed the event of the war. But this golden opportunity was lost, and the Poles, who hated the Austrians at least as much as the Russians, viewed the contest with sullen indifference.

20. Warned by the fatal examples of Austria and Prussia, the Russians resolved to imitate the line of conduct which Wellington, with such brilliant success, had pursued in Portugal; they retreated before the enormous masses of the invading army, deliberately destroying their magazines, and laying waste the country. The first design of Napoleon was to march directly on St. Petersburg, and in his way seize the Russian fleet at Cronstadt; but the obstinate defence of Riga, the garrison of which was strengthened by the sailors of the English fleet, compelled him to change his plan, and advance in the direction of Moscow. The Russians retired before the advancing army, fighting wherever a favourable opportunity was afforded, but not venturing to hazard a regular engagement. On the 16th of August, the French arrived before Smolensko, which the Russians seemed at first determined to defend; three times was the place assaulted, and as often were the French repelled, but during the night the garrison set fire to the town, which was almost totally consumed, and retreated to the army beyond the river.

21. It became now extremely difficult to persuade the Russian soldiers to continue their retreat; they were eager to take vengeance on the invaders of their country, and there was some reason to dread that checking their enthusiasm would be attended with fatal consequences. At the same time, also, Barclay de Tolly, who had hitherto held the supreme command, was appointed to the war-ministry at St. Petersburg, and the veteran Kutusoff, the darling of the Russian soldiers, sent to the army in his room. A strong position between Borodino and Moskwa, on the high road to Moscow, was at length selected by the Russian general, and there he resolved to gratify his troops by giving them an opportunity of meeting their invaders. 22. After some preliminary skirmishing, a dreadful battle was fought on the 7th of September, which lasted the entire day. The Russians fought with unparalleled desperation; peasants, that until that day had never seen a hostile army, rushed like furies on the disciplined battalions of the French; as they fell before the unbroken lines, others rushed to supply their places, and seemed eager in pursuit of death. At the close of the day the French gave over their attacks; both sides claimed the victory, but though no less than 80,000 men lay dead on the field, neither could claim a triumph. When the subordinate generals had presented Kutusoff with their reports of the state of their several divisions, he saw that from the extent of his losses it would be inexpedient to risk another engagement, he accordingly retired slowly, leaving the road to Moscow open to the enemy. 23. Shortly after, it was resolved not to attempt any defence of that capital, which the Russians venerated as the Jews did Jerusalem, or the Mahomedans Mecca; its garrison, accompanied by the principal inhabitants, withdrew from the devoted city in mournful silence.

24. On the 14th of September the French army came within sight of Moscow, and were surprised that no civic deputation appeared to present them with the keys of the city; this was explained when they had effected an entrance, for they found that all, except the very lowest of the population, had deserted their habitations. The French army dispersed themselves in plundering parties, and as usual committed frightful excesses. During the night the town was found to be on fire, but the flames were got under, and Napoleon prepared to take measures for the government of the city. 25. But on the following night a dreadful conflagration burst forth, Russian emissaries had disposed combustibles in several places; the water-pipes were cut and rendered useless, the fires broke out

in parts the most distant, and it soon became evident that nothing could save Moscow from the fate of Smolensko. During four days the city continued to burn with unabated violence, until four-fifths of the houses were totally consumed. 26. Napoleon, who saw his army thus deprived of all chance of winter-quarters, and exposed at once to the severities of cold and famine, attempted to negotiate with the Russian government, but had the mortification to find that all his advances were rejected. However, he still continued to linger at Moscow, though dangers were aggregating around him with fearful rapidity, until at length the defeat of Murat roused him from his lethargy, and he resolved to retreat towards Poland by a route different from that by which he had advanced. Moscow was totally evacuated on the 22d of October; multitudes of sick and wounded were left to the mercy of the Russians, and yet the French army was encumbered with thousands of waggons laden with the plunder of the city.

27. Kutusoff seems to have divined the intentions of Napoleon, and baffled them by taking up a strong position on the line of march. The French advanced to Malo-Yaraslevetz, a town in front of the Russian position, and took possession of it without resistance; but that night they were assaulted by the enemy and driven beyond the river. The next day was spent in a succession of obstinate contests, during which the town five times changed masters. Finally the French prevailed, but their victory was useless, for they found the position of the Russian army impregnable. Some precious time was wasted in vain attempts to force a passage, but they were unavailing, and the Russian army which had occupied Moscow, began now to send out its Cossacks, who severely harassed the French rear. It became manifest that the retreat of the army must be continued through the country which their advance had exhausted. 28. On the 28th of October the calamitous march began, and at every step they met some new disasters; the Cossacks, under their Hetman, Platoff, hovered around the army, breaking down the bridges before them, charging the rear at every opportunity, cutting off stragglers and intercepting straggling parties; the army of Kutusoff was moving in a line parallel to the route of the French, while two other Russian divisions pressed upon the rear. On the 6th of November a new enemy appeared; a Russian winter of unparalleled severity set in with all its horrors. The train of artillery, and the waggons which had been brought from Moscow were abandoned, the horses, badly fed, were unable to



support the cold and fatigue, they sank and stiffened by thousands; all discipline was banished except from a few battalions kept together to protect the rear by the personal exertions of marshal Ney; the rest dispersed themselves over the fields, and many sunk to rise no more; others were swept away by the Cossacks. 29. In this deplorable plight they reached Smolensko, where they hoped to find some respite from their woes, but that town had been, as we have seen, almost destroyed by the Russians; its roofless houses and blackened walls afforded but little shelter, its exhausted magazines supplied no food. The retreat was continued, but the Russians now made several desperate assaults on the different French divisions, and every where defeated them. Ney, however, managed to preserve the shattered remnant of his battalions, by passing over the thin ice that had just formed on the Dnieper; the waggons containing the wounded attempted to pass over this frail bridge, but the ice broke, and the waggons sunk amid the shrieks of the wretched sufferers, and the groans of their helpless comrades.

30. The grand army, which had mustered 120,000 men when leaving Moscow, hardly exceeded a tenth of that number when it was joined by the divisions of Victor and Oudinot, who, though defeated by Wittgenstein, still mustered about 50,000 men. Had the Russians taken advantage of their vast superiority, and poured their united forces on the retreating army, a messenger would not have escaped to convey the news of their ruin to France. 31. The passage of the Beresina was one of the most fearful scenes in this series of horrors, though the Russians, by the most culpable negligence, did not avail themselves of the opportunity of preventing it altogether. The divisions of Wittgenstein and Platoff arrived on the heights commanding the rear, before the army had completed its passage. When the Russian cannon opened on the crowd assembled on the bank, eager to place the river between themselves and the enemy, it produced a scene of indescribable confusion. Men, women, horses, waggons, rushed in one mass to the larger bridge; the weight was too great for its frail timbers, it broke, and the multitude were at once precipitated into the half-frozen stream. The universal shriek which announced this calamity was heard loud and clear above the roar of artillery and the hurrahs of the Cossacks. The remaining bridge stood firm, but the crowd that hurried over its narrow planks under the dreadful fire of the Russian artillery fell into the stream by hundreds, swept away by the fierce

shower of shot, or thrown over by their comrades.\* Victor, who had gallantly maintained his post, led his division over the bridge by night and then set it on fire, abandoning to their fate his wounded soldiers, and the attendants of the camp.

32. The remainder of the retreat was equally disastrous; entire companies were frozen to death, or cut off by the indefatigable Cossacks, who, as their leader observed, "killed many, but made few prisoners." It is, however, painful to dwell on these horrors, of which the most vivid description would convey but a faint idea. On the 5th of December, Napoleon having learned that a conspiracy for the subversion of his government had been formed in France itself, hastily abandoned his army, and having narrowly escaped being made prisoner, arrived at Warsaw, from whence he proceeded to Paris.

33. The French were driven from Poland by the Cossacks, and at length the miserable remains of this mighty host took shelter in the dominions of Prussia, where they were hospitably received by the inhabitants, who generously forgot the oppression to which they had been subjected, when they saw the miserable state to which their oppressors had been reduced.

34. The losses of the French in this disastrous campaign have been variously estimated; but the following list will be found tolerably accurate. Of the invading army there were

Slain in battle . . . . .	125,000
Died of fatigue, famine, and cold .	132,000
Taken prisoners . . . . .	193,000

---

Total loss . . . . . 450,000

Among the prisoners were forty-eight generals, and nearly three thousand regimental officers. The Russians captured also seventy-five eagles and standards, together with nearly a thousand pieces of cannon.

---

### Questions.

1. What nation now attacked France?
2. How did the Austrians succeed?
3. Was Austria severely punished for her rashness?

---

\* The Russians declare that when the ice of the Beresina broke up in the following year, 36,000 dead bodies were discovered in the bed of the river.

4. In what manner was the war carried on in Spain ?
5. Did any revolution take place in Sweden ?
6. How was the pope treated by Napoleon ?
7. To whom was Napoleon now united in marriage ?
8. What was the effect of the Austrian match ?
9. Why did Wellington retire to the lines of Torres Vedras ?
10. Did Napoleon ill-treat any of his brothers ?
11. On whom was the succession of the Swedish crown conferred ?
12. By what event was the happiness of Buonaparte increased ?
13. Did the French meet reverses any where ?
14. How did the war with Russia originate ?
15. What was the condition of Napoleon's power at the commencement of the war ?
16. Where did Napoleon assemble his allies ?
17. When did he commence the war ?
18. What took place in the Peninsula during 1812 ?
19. Of what great error was Napoleon guilty in his treatment of Poland ?
20. How did the Russians resolve to conduct the war ?
21. Where did the armies come to an engagement ?
22. What were the circumstances of the battle of Borodino ?
23. What was the consequence of the retreat of the Russians ?
24. In what situation did the French find Moscow ?
25. Did any conflagration take place ?
26. Were they compelled to evacuate the city ?
27. How were the French forced to retreat by the road on which they had advanced ?
28. What calamities did the French suffer in this retreat ?
29. For what is the passage of the Dnieper memorable ?
30. By whom was the retreating army reinforced ?
31. To what evils were the French exposed in passing the Beresina ?
32. How did Napoleon escape ?
33. Whither did the remains of the grand army retire ?
34. What was the total loss of the French in this campaign ?





Blucher.

## CHAPTER XLI.

## THE EMPIRE, CONTINUED.

Farewell to the land where the gloom of my glory  
 Arose and o'ershadow'd the earth with her name—  
 She abandons me now—but the page of her story,  
 The brightest or blackest is fill'd with my fame.  
 I have warr'd with a world which vanquish'd me only  
 When the meteor of conquest allur'd me too far.  
 I have coped with the nations that dread me thus lonely;  
 The last single captive to millions in war.

BYRON.

1. THE arrival of Napoleon in Paris announced to  
 A. D. the French nation the great misfortune by which they  
 1813. had been overtaken; but their confidence in the fortune of the emperor was not yet shaken, and the most amazing exertions were made throughout France for the coming

mencement of a new campaign. 2. It was soon known that the Prussians had joined the alliance with Sweden and Russia; and that the patriotic exertions of the people to supply resources for the war, exceeded the demands of their sovereign. Napoleon, undaunted by calamities, soon found himself at the head of 350,000 men, and hasted to Germany, with a confident hope that a battle such as Jena or Austerlitz would again make him the master of Europe. 3. On the 18th of April, Napoleon joined his army and advanced to meet the allies in Saxony. The activity with which he had repaired his losses was a powerful contrast to the negligence of his opponents; in fact, the Russians had not brought half their disposable forces across the Vistula, while Napoleon had raised a new army and equipped them for the field. The allies were now outnumbered and defeated in two desperate battles; but the French gained nothing by the victory, no cannon or prisoners were taken.

4. Perceiving all the obstacles which he had to encounter, Napoleon began now to entertain some thoughts of peace; an armistice was agreed on in June, and conferences were opened at Prague under the mediation of Austria. 5. They continued until the 10th of August, but produced no effect, for the French emperor would not forego his usurpations in Spain and Italy, neither would he consent to restore the independence of Germany. It was in vain that his ministers represented to him the danger of arming all Europe against his person; it was in vain that Austria gave unequivocal proofs of her determination to join the allies; Napoleon persisted, until it was too late to retrace his steps. 6. On the 10th of August, Austria joined the allies; the French emperor, alarmed by the news which he had received from Spain, attempted to renew the negotiations, but the allies would no longer listen to his offers.

7. It was late in May when Lord Wellington commenced his last and most glorious Spanish campaign. The French retreated before him until they had concentrated their forces, under the command of marshal Jourdan and Joseph Buonaparte, at Vittoria. On the 21st of June, the English having possessed themselves of some heights previously occupied by the French, a general engagement ensued. The English gained a complete victory, their enemies retreated so rapidly, that they abandoned all their baggage and artillery; one hundred and fifty pieces of cannon, with more than four hundred waggons of ammunition, fell into the hands of the conquerors; the vanquished army, after suffering severely in their retreat,

escaped into France, whither the victors were preparing to follow them as soon as they had reduced the fortresses, which it would be dangerous to leave in their rear.

8. On the recommencement of hostilities, the allies resolved to drive the French from their advanced positions on the right bank of the Elbe, as well as in Lusatia and Silesia. They succeeded in the attempt, and soon after occupied the heights above Dresden, in which city Napoleon had fixed his headquarters. On the 27th of August, the allies made a rash attempt on Dresden, in which they were defeated with considerable loss. On this occasion, general Moreau, who had come from America to assist his old companion, Bernadotte, was killed. 9. The allies retreated across the mountains that separate Saxony from Bohemia, vigorously pursued by marshal Vandamme, with a division of the French army; but Vandamme's rashness proved fatal, he was forced to surrender with 10,000 men, his artillery and baggage, to the armies of Russia and Prussia, by which he was surrounded. 10. The arrival of Bernadotte with the Swedish army restored the superiority of the allies, and at the same time they learned that the king of Bavaria had acceded to their coalition, and placed 65,000 men at the disposal of the Austrian government. After a series of complicated movements, the allies so far prevailed, that Napoleon, with his faithful friend, the king of Saxony, was forced to retire from Dresden to Leipsic.

11. The conduct of Napoleon in the last great struggle for the empire of Europe, was worthy his former fame. He drew up his forces in a circle round Leipsic, so as that each might mutually support the other, while the allies occupied a parallel, and, of course, a wider circle, which their successes enabled them daily to contract. On the 15th of October, the emperor delivered eagles to some new regiments which had just joined him; it was an imposing ceremony; "the soldiers knelt before the emperor, and in presence of all the line; military mass was performed, and the young warriors swore to die rather than witness the dishonour of France. Upon this scene the sun descended; and with it the star of Napoleon went down for ever."

12. On the 16th, 17th, and 18th, the position of the French was vigorously attacked, and as obstinately defended; but the numerical superiority of the allies was too great to be resisted, and Buonaparte found himself obliged to command a retreat. On the morning of the 19th, Napoleon took a sad farewell of his ally, the king of Saxony, and quitted the city round whose

walls the battle was raging with fury. The Saxons now deserted the French and turned their cannon on the retreating army; marshal Macdonald and Poniatowski, however, still gallantly protected the rear; but a new calamity rendered all their efforts unavailing. Orders had been given to blow up the bridge over which the army retreated as soon as the passage was completed, but the officer to whom that business was entrusted, terrified at the approach of the allies, fired the mine long before it was needed, and 25,000 Frenchmen, thus left at the mercy of the enemy, surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

13. The retreating army were severely harassed by the irritated peasantry in their flight; but they cut their way through the Austro-Bavarian army, who attempted to intercept them. This was, however, only a temporary relief; the retreat became at last a rapid flight, and it was with difficulty that the shattered remains of the second grand army escaped across the Rhine.

14. The battle of Leipsic was followed by a crowd of important events in such rapid succession, that men had scarce time to express their astonishment at one, when they heard intelligence of another still more surprising. The confederation of the Rhine crumbled to pieces in a moment; Hanover, Brunswick, Hesse, returned under the sway of their hereditary rulers; and Holland in one simultaneous burst of popular loyalty threw off the yoke of France, and invited the stadtholder to return from his long exile in England.

15. Equally disheartening was the intelligence that Napoleon received from Italy and Spain. The Austrian general Hiller had defeated the viceroy of Italy, the English were masters of the Adriatic, and Murat was entering into negotiations with the Austrians against his brother-in-law and benefactor. Even in France itself, parties hostile to the emperor began to be discovered. The royalists prepared for the restoration of the exiled Bourbons, and some of the old leaders of the revolution began to hope that the republic might yet be restored.

16. The calamities which France had inflicted on other nations, were now about to be severely retaliated on herself. Early in January, two armies under the command of Blucher and Schwartzemberg passed the Rhine, and masking the fortresses along the river, advanced boldly into the country. The superior skill of Napoleon enabled him to inflict several severe checks on the advancing forces,

A. D.  
1814

who did not advance in sufficient union. 17. But these successes were the ruin of the emperor, for they led him to break off abruptly the conferences for peace which had commenced at Chatillon, and the allies, justly indignant at his insincerity, sternly rejected all future attempts at negociation. 18. In the south of France, Wellington appeared with the soldiers that had delivered Spain; no popular resistance was made to his march, every effort of Soult's army to retard his progress was defeated. Bourdeaux had been taken, and the Bourbons were proclaimed by the people. 19. The French emperor still undauntedly maintained himself under all these evils; but in an ill-omened hour he placed his army in the rear of the allies, and thus left the road to Paris open. On the 30th of March, the division of the French army assigned for the defence of Paris were drawn up in line on the heights that covered the city, defended by one hundred and fifty pieces of cannon. The allies attacked them with great vigour, and Marmont and Mortier resisted the assault with equal spirit, but the force of numbers prevailed, and long ere night the heights were in possession of the allied forces. Joseph Buonaparte, to whom the defence of the capital had been entrusted, fled, and Marmont, seeing all further resistance useless, signed a capitulation.

20. On the 31st of March, the allied army entered Paris in triumph, and were received with the loudest acclamations. They acted not as conquerors but as friends, and declared themselves hostile not to the French nation, but to Napoleon. By their invitation the senate was assembled and a provisional government established, at the head of which Talleyrand was placed. Soon after the senate decreed the deposition of the emperor, and proclamations in the name of the old royal family were everywhere distributed. In the meantime, Buonaparte having discovered the designs of the allies, resolved to make a vigorous effort to save his capital; he hasted back with his army, but on the road he learned that he was too late; he retired to Fontainebleau, receiving at every step news of the defection and treachery of his ministers and generals. After a vain attempt to have the crown transferred to his son, on the 11th of April, Napoleon signed a formal instrument, "renouncing for himself and heirs the thrones of France and Italy." On the very same day, a glorious but useless victory was obtained by the English, under lord Wellington, at Thoulouse; it is not certain how the news of the capture of Paris was delayed, or whether marshal Soult deserves to be blamed for this useless effusion of blood; on the 14th, however, the tidings of



peace reached both camps, and hostilities were immediately suspended.

21. The sovereignty of the island of Elba, with a considerable pension, was settled on Napoleon; the duchies of Parma and Placentia were settled on Maria Louisa and her heirs; and pensions were granted by the French government to Josephine, and other members of the Buonaparte family. This faithful though deserted woman did not long survive the fall of her beloved lord; she died of a broken heart before the allies had left France.

22. On the 3d of May, Louis XVIII. entered Paris, where he was received with every demonstration of joy, and France soon after received a constitution, founded on the principles of rational and moderate liberty. On the 30th of the same month the articles of a general peace between France and the allies were signed at Paris, and thus at length the tranquillity of Europe seemed finally secured.

---

### *Questions.*

1. How did Napoleon behave on his return to Paris?
2. With what new enemy had he to contend?
3. How was the campaign commenced?
4. Under whose auspices were efforts made to negotiate a peace?
5. Why were they broken off?
6. What was the consequence of Buonaparte's persevering in his exorbitant demands?
7. How was the campaign of 1813 conducted in Spain?
8. What reverses did the allies experience before Dresden?
9. Did they not soon after obtain some advantage?
10. Whither did Napoleon transfer his head-quarters from Dresden?
11. How did the French emperor behave in this crisis of his fortunes?
12. What were the circumstances of the battle of Leipsic?
13. Did the retreating army suffer much?
14. What consequence did the battle of Leipsic produce in Holland?
15. Did any other events adverse to Napoleon occur about the same time?
16. How did the allied armies act imprudently?
17. Why were these successes injurious to Napoleon?
18. What events took place in the south of France?
19. How was Paris taken?
20. What events followed the capture of Paris?
21. How were Napoleon and his family provided for?
22. When were the articles of peace signed?



Napoleon's Return from Elba.

## CHAPTER XLII.

## THE HUNDRED DAYS.

And Harold stands upon this place of skulls,  
 The grave of France, the deadly Waterloo!  
 How, in an hour, the power which gave annuls  
 Its gifts; transferring fame as fleeting too!  
 In pride of place here last the eagle flew,  
 Then tore with bloody talon the rent plain;  
 Pierced by the shaft of banded nations through,  
 Ambition's life and labours all were vain;  
 He wears the shatter'd links of the world's broken chain.

BYRON.

1. THE sudden change from a fierce war to a pro-  
 A. D. 1815. found peace produced so great a revolution in the  
 different European states, that their attention was  
 engrossed with their domestic affairs, and France, with the  
 illustrious exile in Elba, seemed for a time to be forgotten.  
 There were, however, causes in operation which threatened  
 to make this tranquillity of but brief duration. The prisoners  
 of war who returned from the different countries of Europe,

could not conceive how their comrades had been so easily defeated; the army, maintained in full strength, were displeased to find themselves under the control of an indolent and peaceful prince, instead of the enterprising leader, who had so often led them on to glory and plunder; there was a mutual jealousy between the nobility of the royal and imperial courts; and many of the returned emigrants began to speak openly of restoring the same order of things which had existed before the revolution. Joachim Murat, who had been permitted to retain the throne of Naples, became rather suspicious of the sentiments with which he was regarded by the allied sovereigns; and finally the French government, with equal folly and injustice, withheld the stipulated pension from Napoleon. During the winter of 1814, Sir Neil Campbell, the British resident at Elba, became aware that some plan for the restoration of the deposed emperor was in agitation, and frequently sent intimations on the subject to his government, which appears not to have given these warnings the attention that they merited.

2. Ambassadors from the different European powers were assembled in congress at Vienna, when they were astounded with the intelligence that Buonaparte had landed at Cannes, on the coast of Provence, on the morning of the 1st of March. The entire number of forces which Napoleon brought with him to invade France did not amount to one thousand men; he narrowly escaped from the English cruisers and a French man-of-war. But he relied on the magic of his name, and the devoted attachment of the army, to restore to him once more all that had been lost. The success was as astonishing as the attempt. The soldiers every where united themselves to their beloved chief; most of the marshals hastened to renew their allegiance to the emperor, and before the end of a month, Napoleon, almost without firing a musket, found himself master of all France.

3. When the news of these events reached the congress at Vienna, a proclamation was issued, declaring that "the Emperor Napoleon had placed himself beyond the pale of society, and that as an enemy and disturber of the tranquillity of the world, he had rendered himself liable to public vengeance." A treaty was at the same time concluded, by which Austria, Russia, Prussia, and England engaged each to maintain 150,000 men in arms, until Buonaparte should either be dethroned or reduced so low as no longer to endanger the repose of Europe. 4. The exertions made by the French to oppose

this powerful confederacy, were truly amazing ; the campaigns of 1812, 13, and 14, had almost annihilated their cavalry and artillery, and yet they were in the short space of two months able to collect a brilliant body of horse, and to procure a park of artillery sufficient for the fearful encounter. 5. In the mean time, Murat hastened to his ruin ; he placed himself at the head of the Neapolitan army, and advancing through Italy, called on the inhabitants to throw off the yoke of Austria. The Austrian general in Lombardy at once assembled his forces and advanced against Murat ; the cowardly Neapolitans fled almost at the sight of an enemy, and Murat, finding himself unable to retain his kingdom, fled for refuge to France. But fresh mortifications awaited him there : Buonaparte, indignant at the desertion of his brother-in-law in 1814, refused to receive him in Paris. After remaining some time in obscurity at Toulon, Murat proceeded to Corsica, from thence he sailed to the Italian coast to make an effort for the recovery of his kingdom ; but his little band was defeated, he himself taken prisoner, and soon after shot, pursuant to the sentence of a military commission. He died as he had lived, with undaunted bravery, and Napoleon afterwards said more than once, that the fate of the world might have been changed had Murat headed the French cavalry at Waterloo.

6. The forces of the English and Prussians were in the meantime rapidly concentrating on the Belgic frontier ; the head-quarters of Blucher were at Namur, and those of the duke of Wellington at Brussels ; the Austrians were known to be advancing through the north of Italy, Spanish troops already occupied the passes of the Pyrennees, and the Russians were fast hastening to the scene of action. Napoleon saw that it would be injudicious to hazard another campaign in France, and hoped that by striking suddenly some great blow, he might break up the great European confederacy, and probably be enabled to dictate the conditions of peace. 7. On the 1st of June, a species of national assembly, called *Le champ de Mai*, was held, in which the new constitution of the French empire was ratified with great pomp, but with little sincerity ; ten days after, Napoleon quitted Paris to place himself at the head of his army ; saying, as he entered the carriage, "I go to measure myself against Wellington." 8. On the 15th of June, Napoleon drove in the Prussian outposts, and assaulted Charleroi ; Ziethen, the Prussian general, held out against the immense disparity of force until the alarm had been communicated to all the other divisions, and then coolly retired on

Ligny, where Blucher was concentrating his forces. 9. So totally unexpected was the rapid advance of Napoleon, that on the evening of the 15th most of the English officers were at a ball given by the duchess of Richmond at Brussels, when the distant roar of cannon interrupted their festivities. The drum beat, and the bugle sounded at midnight; long before the dawn, Sir Thomas Picton, who had only that night arrived from England, was advancing with his division on Quatre-bras.

10. On the 16th, at noon, the French emperor, with the main body of his forces, commenced a furious attack on Ligny, while Ney assaulted the English at Quatre-bras. The battle of Ligny was long and fierce; the intense animosity between the Prussians and French gave the combat the character more of personal than national hostility; quarter was neither asked nor given, each seemed more anxious to destroy his enemy than to save himself. At length Blucher became convinced of the necessity of retreating; one division of his army under Bulow was absent, and his troops were weakened by successive charges of the French, in one of which the veteran was himself dismounted, and rode over both by friends and enemies without being recognised.

11. At Quatre-bras, the English, after a fierce engagement, in which the gallant duke of Brunswick was slain, remained masters of the field; but the retreat of the Prussians rendered the victory unavailing, and Wellington, in order to preserve his communication with Blucher, retired on Waterloo.

12. The retreat occupied the greater part of the 17th; on the evening of that day, the English, amid torrents of rain, took up their station on a rising ground about a mile and a half in front of the little town of Waterloo. They were drawn up in a convex line, which dropped off at the extremity towards the forest in their rear; the chateau and gardens of Hougomont, and the farm-house of La Haye Sainte were strongly garrisoned, and formed the outworks of their line of defence.

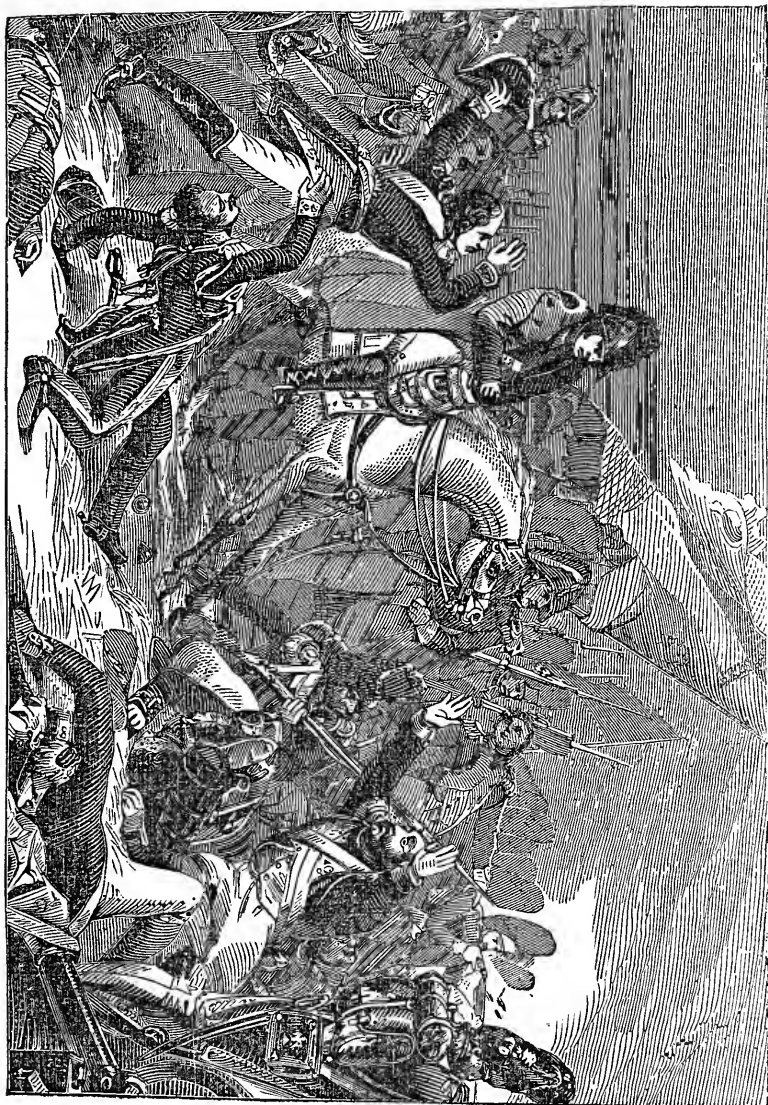
13. The morning of the 18th was rainy and tempestuous, when Buonaparte, having ascended the opposite hill of La Belle Alliance, for the first time saw before him the army of the only European general whose fame rivalled his own. Time was the most important object with both generals, for Wellington knew that victory was certain if he could only hold out until the Prussians came up. About noon the French commenced the battle by a tremendous cannonade, and under cover of the fire made a furious attack on Hougomont; their leader was unable to carry the chateau, and masking the post.

pushed forward against the British right. The English formed in squares, and resisted all their efforts; after a protracted struggle, the French were forced to retire, and the little garrison of Hougomont was relieved and strengthened.

14. The second attack was made on the British centre by a numerous body of cuirassiers, and four columns of infantry. The French cavalry were met in mid career by the English heavy horse, and soon forced to retire behind their artillery; the English having followed too far, were charged in their turn by fresh troops, and driven back with considerable loss; among others, the gallant Sir T. Picton was slain. 15. The French infantry had in the mean time taken La Haye Sainte, and forced in some Belgian regiments, but being attacked in front by general Pack's brigade of foot, and on the flank by a body of heavy cavalry, they were routed with great loss, and compelled to fly, leaving behind them 2,000 prisoners and two eagles. At the same time they were forced by a heavy shower of shot and shells to evacuate La Haye Sainte.

16. The third assault was made on the British right, where the infantry, drawn up in chequered squares, like those of a chess-board, and protected by a battery of thirty pieces of cannon, awaited the onset of the French cuirassiers. The artillerymen were driven from their guns, and the cavalry rode furiously on the British squares; these steadily waited until the enemy were within ten yards of them, and then poured in a volley so close and deadly that the cuirassiers were forced to give back. These devoted men renewed their onset several times with fearful desperation; they rode between the squares, forced their horses up to the very points of the bayonet, but the English line could not be broken, and the close cross-fire of the squares almost annihilated these fearless cavaliers.

17. The battle had now lasted seven hours, three desperate charges had failed to break the British ranks, their wings had also gradually advanced, forming now a concave line; the heads of the Prussian columns began to be seen through the wood, and Napoleon saw that on one great effort depended the fate of his empire. He formed his favourite soldiers, the imperial guard, into two columns, and entrusted these, who had not yet shared in the battle, to the guidance of Ney, telling them that if *they* charged boldly success was certain. 18. Previous to this a fierce cannonade had been kept up on the British line, but the soldiers, by Wellington's directions, lay upon their faces, and thus its deadly effect was much diminished. As the charging columns advanced, the English rose,



Battle of Waterloo.





and forming into a line four deep, poured on their front and flank a deadly shower of musketry, which never ceased for a moment. Under this heavy fire the French columns vainly attempted to deploy into line; they halted for the purpose, wavered, and fell at once into remediless confusion. 19. Wellington seized the decisive moment to charge; some unbroken battalions of the French guard for a moment seemed to oppose a formidable obstacle, but they waited not the attack of the British bayonet; with indescribable agony Napoleon saw these his last hope, reel, break, and mingle with the mass of fugitives which lately was an army.

20. The Prussians had now come up, and continued the pursuit of the broken army with terrible effect; the English halted almost on the bloody field, quite spent with the fatigues of this arduous and long-contested fight. They had indeed won a brilliant victory, but it was dearly purchased by the loss of 600 officers, and 15,000 men killed and wounded.

21. Napoleon returned to Paris, and soon found that the army were his only friends in France; in vain he appealed to the chambers, he was a second time forced to sign his abdication, and a provisional government was at once appointed. Had Napoleon at once attempted his escape to the United States of America, he would probably have succeeded; but he lingered, hoping that some chance might yet appear in his favour. When at length he arrived at Rochfort, he found the coast blockaded by the British cruisers, and found it impossible to carry out his design of escaping beyond the Atlantic.

22. On the 15th of July, he surrendered himself to Captain Maitland of the *Bellerophon*, and on the 24th he arrived in Torbay. After some delay he was informed that the allied sovereigns had resolved to send him as a prisoner to St. Helena. Thither he was sent, and there he died on the 5th of May 1821. We are too near the time and the scene of this great man's career, to form an impartial estimate of his character and conduct; but no stronger proof could be given of the reverence in which his memory is held by his former subjects, than the fact, that after a lapse of nearly twenty years they sent an expedition, commanded by a son of the reigning monarch, to bring back the emperor's remains in order that they might be interred in the capital of France.

23. The battle of Waterloo put an end to the war; a military convention was concluded, according to which the allies took possession of Paris, and the French army retired behind the Loire. Louis XVIII. was once more restored to

the throne of his ancestors; but unfortunately, he adopted harsher measures against the adherents of Napoleon than were prudent, or perhaps justifiable, and thus increased the discontent and dissatisfaction of the nation. The allies did not treat France with the forbearance which they had exhibited in the preceding year; they exacted a contribution to defray the expenses of the war; they compelled the restoration of those works of literature and art which the French had wrested from conquered countries; they took possession of several fortresses on the frontiers, and stationed an army of occupation in the country to prevent any insurrection of the people.

---

*Questions.*

1. What circumstances contributed to bring about a renewal of war?
2. With what forces did Napoleon invade France?
3. How was this attempt viewed by the European sovereigns?
4. In what way did the French prepare to meet the allied sovereigns?
5. What became of Murat?
6. In what directions were the allied armies preparing to invade France?
7. When did Buonaparte leave his capital?
8. How did the campaign commence?
9. Did the English expect this rapid advance?
10. How did the battle of Ligny terminate?
11. Which side was successful at Quatre-Bras?
12. What manœuvres occupied the 17th of June?
13. How did the battle of Waterloo commence?
14. What success had the cavalry in the second charge?
15. How were the infantry met and repelled?
16. What was the success of the French in their third effort?
17. In what situation was the British army after having repelled the cuirassiers?
18. How did the imperial guard advance to the charge?
19. Was any advantage taken of their confusion?
20. By whom was the pursuit continued?
21. How was the war terminated?
22. What became of Buonaparte?
23. How did the allies behave to the conquered French?



Louis XVIII.

## CHAPTER XLIII.

## THE RESTORATION, AND REVOLUTION OF 1830.

“France gave a crown and half a heart.” M. C.

1. FRANCE was in a very unhappy condition, after the restoration of Louis XVIII. ; the great body of the nation might have been contented with the king, but he was surrounded by persons whose counsels were justly suspected of a tendency to despotism. The royalists seemed resolved to make an extreme use of the victory which the allies had won for them, and to destroy every vestige of constitutional freedom. The appointments to the magistracy, and to the National guard, were taken from the people ; so that the force which ought to have been constitutional, became the mere instrument of a party. The partisans of ultra-royalty were closely allied with the more violent portion of the French clergy, and under their influence several outrages were committed against the protestants in various parts of France ; and even when government was forced to interfere, the murderers were allowed to

escape unpunished. The nobility possessed almost a monopoly of the executive power, and they employed it to deprive the people of the franchises and privileges ceded by the charter. In addition to this, the accusations for treason and sedition brought against all who opposed the government, the violence of the clerical missionaries, who profaned religion to advance political purposes, and the intrigues at the elections for deputies, diffused feelings of general dissatisfaction through the nation.

2. The accession of France to the "Holy Alliance," at the congress of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1818, engaged the government in a system of policy, designed to secure the power of monarchs throughout Europe; but a considerable body of the French deputies resisted the extension of the royal prerogative, and Decazes, the prime minister, supported by the moderate royalists, endeavoured to frame a system which would strengthen the monarchy, without injuring the constitution. He was, however, fiercely opposed by the *ultras* or violent royalists, and an unfortunate event gave them a temporary triumph. The duke of Berry was assassinated by a political fanatic named Louvel, Feb. 13th, 1820, and the *ultras*, or "the extreme right," as they were called, from the part of the chamber which they usually occupied, denounced Decazes for encouraging doctrines subversive of the monarchy. These accusations produced a sensible effect on the court, if not on the chambers, and Decazes resigned. He was succeeded by the Duc de Richelieu, and a ministry was formed of the warmest adherents of monarchical power.

3. Laws were passed, giving the minister the power of arresting suspected persons, imposing consorship on the press, and raising the qualifications for the elective franchise; but even these violations of the charter did not satisfy "the extreme right," and they joined "the left," or liberal party, in strenuous efforts to eject the Richelieu ministry. The debates in the chambers were fierce and stormy, often indeed quite unbecoming the dignity of a deliberative assembly. Richelieu resigned his office, Dec. 17th, 1821, and was succeeded by a ministry still more violently royal: the dissatisfaction of the nation was shown by countless plots, conspiracies, riots, and incendiary fires, which were made the pretext for fresh laws of restriction. 4. Villele, the head of the new ministry, resolved to send a French army into Spain, for the purpose of restoring the king to the power of which he had been deprived by the Cortes; but he was opposed by a party, which more

han compensated for its weakness in numbers, by talents, experience, and influence with the people. The royalist majority, however, showed itself so very unscrupulous, by rejecting a member for revolutionary doctrines without allowing him to make any defence, that "the left side" quitted the house in a body, and the funds for the Spanish war were voted without opposition.

5. The French army crossed the Pyrennees and met with little opposition from the Spaniards, who had little money in their exchequer, less valour in their soldiers, and no wisdom in their counsels. Cadiz alone made an attempt at resistance, but was finally compelled to capitulate, and king Ferdinand was restored to absolute power. The monarchical principle was thus established in the person of a Bourbon, and the government at the same time acquired some popularity with the army; but it is doubtful whether the services rendered to legitimacy were not dearly purchased by the heavy expenses of the campaign.

6. Scarcely had the Spanish campaign thus favourably terminated, when the nation was alarmed by the increasing illness of the monarch, who, though not very generally revered, was still far more popular than his brother, the heir to the crown. He lingered for several months, enduring his disease with great firmness and resignation; at length he expired, Sept. 16, 1824. Louis XVIII. possessed much natural sagacity and a highly cultivated mind; but during his long exile he had become enfeebled by age and disease: he did not understand the change which had been wrought in the character of the people of France during his banishment; and he wanted firmness of character to resist the *ultras*, of whom it was said, with equal severity and justice, that during their exile "they had forgotten nothing and learned nothing."

7. Charles X., formerly count of Artois, succeeded his brother, and won at first much favour by consenting to abolish the censorship of the press; but he continued to retain Villele at the head of the administration; and, at his coronation, he revived many of the old superstitious usages which Louis had wisely abandoned. Under the new reign Villele brought forward two very unpopular measures; one granting an indemnification to the families of those emigrants whose estates had been forfeited during the revolution, and another reducing the rate of interest on the public debt. The laws were carried, but not without great opposition. Some concession, however, was made to public opinion by acknowledging the independ



Charles X.

ence of Hayti, and opening commercial intercourse with the South American republics. At the same time commercial treaties were concluded with Great Britain and the empire of Brazil.

8. In 1826 Villele strengthened his ministry by creating thirty-one new peers. He endeavoured to establish the aristocracy on a permanent basis, by reviving the laws of primogeniture and entail; but the former was so odious to the great body of the French nation, that it was rejected by the chamber of peers. Public attention was chiefly engaged by the trial of Ouvrard, who had furnished the supplies for the French army when it invaded Spain. The terms of his contract were exorbitant, and he succeeded in effecting it by extensive bribery; he had also joined in drawing double rations and double pay for the soldiers employed in the campaign. When Villele first heard of the transaction, he caused Ouvrard to be arrested and brought to trial; but in the course of the investigation it appeared that many persons of great rank and influence were implicated in the transaction, and the minister induced the peers to bring the matter to a speedy conclusion. The abuses, however, which had been detected, were already made public, and the attempt to screen the guilty, combined with the illegal protection given to the Jesuits, exposed the

minister to public and not unmerited reproaches. The dissolution of the national guard, the revived censorship of the press, and several harsh measures used in dispersing popular assemblies, completed the alienation of the French from the minister. Villele felt that he was losing ground, and he therefore dissolved the chamber, though three years of its time were unexpired. At the same time he created no less than seventy-six new peers, an act utterly inconsistent with the spirit if not the letter of the constitution.

9. The result of the elections disappointed Villele ; a liberal majority was returned, and the king himself seemed to abandon the principles of "the holy alliance," by congratulating the chambers on the victory of Navarino, and expressing himself favourable to the liberties of Greece. Soon afterwards he accepted M. Villele's resignation, and appointed a more liberal ministry, of which M. Portalis was the most distinguished member.

10. The new ministry had no elements of strength ; it was violently opposed by "the extreme right," by the clergy, whom the law of sacrilege had filled with hopes of recovering their former supremacy, and secretly by many of its own professed adherents. After a struggle of a year and a half, M. Portalis, hated by "the right," and suspected by "the left," found his embarrassments increasing so fast, that he was compelled to resign, but not until he had procured for himself the presidency of the court of cassation, the highest judicial office in France.

11. On the 9th of August, 1829, the ministry, which finally proved fatal to the reigning branch of the house of Bourbon, was formed. Its principal members were prince Polignac, who in his youth had been implicated in Pichegru's conspiracy, and owed his life to the clemency of Napoleon. Since 1823, he had been ambassador to the court of London, and he always professed a predilection for England, though he did not conceal his dislike of the democratic part of its constitution. Next to him was count Bourmont, who deserted Napoleon on the field of Waterloo, and found his treachery profitable after the restoration. Baron Montbel, a zealous supporter of the clergy, was named minister of the interior ; and M. D'Haussey, remarkable only for his ignorance and his conceit, received the charge of the navy. From the very outset, this unfortunate cabinet was assailed with unrelenting hatred by the leading liberals of France, both privately and publicly. The ministers were accused of having formed fixed plans for the subversion of liberty and the re-establishment of despotism, and

the nation was summoned to guard the franchises which it had gained by the long struggles of the revolution. Polignac and his associates were not daunted; they hoped that the declaration of war against Algiers would divert the attention of the nation from the constitutional struggle at home; and without waiting to calculate the elements of their own strength, they opened the parliamentary session with a declaration, which rendered a violent contest between the royal and constitutional parties inevitable.

12. The king's speech to the chambers, March 2d, 1830, contained the following significant threat: "If guilty intrigues should throw any obstacles in the way of my government, which I cannot and will not anticipate, I should find force to overcome them, in my resolution to preserve the public peace, in the just confidence I have in the French nation, and in the love which they have always evinced for their kings." There was a considerable majority in the chamber of deputies against the ministers; the address, in answer to the royal speech, frankly declared that a concurrence did not exist between the views of the government and the wishes of the nation, and with equal firmness and prudence warned the king: "Sire, France does not wish for anarchy any more than you do for despotism." The king, on the other hand, declared his determination to support his ministers, and, to prevent further discussion, prorogued the chambers to the 1st of the following September.

13. In the mean time, the French expedition against Algiers sailed, and soon reached Africa. Algiers was captured with little loss, the treasures of the Dey became the reward of the conquerors, and since that period the city and its dependent territory has remained in the possession of the French.

14. In May the king dissolved the chambers, and addressed a justificatory proclamation to the electors, which was one of the most reprehensible public documents yet issued by the ministry. It insulted the nation, it libelled the majority of the late chamber, and it stated the claims of royalty with an absurd extravagance, which would have disgraced school-boys. The only effect this document produced, was to destroy whatever little popularity the ministers had gained by the conquest of Algiers; in consequence, the elections went against the crown, and a majority of opposition members again appeared ready for the field.

15. Bigotry is equally violent and blind, and nothing but bigotry was the characteristic of the king, his ministers, and



of the whole court party. Polignac was resolved to subvert the constitution, but he wanted talent to act the despot: the wickedness of his proceedings is in some degree hid by their clumsiness and stupidity. On the 26th of July three ordinances appeared; the first annulled the late elections, the second suspended the liberty of the press, and the third, on the royal authority, established a new electoral system. So infatuated were the men who perpetrated such outrages against all constitutional government, that they seem not to have anticipated any resistance, and made no preparations even for quelling ordinary tumults. It was late in the day when the ordinances became known, but the consequences became apparent in rapid succession: the bank refused discounts, the chief manufacturers closed their works and discharged their workmen; the editors and conductors of journals met, and published their resolutions not to obey the laws; Polignac's windows were broken, but the mob soon dispersed.

16. On the morning of the 27th, the agents of police seized the types and broke the presses of the refractory journalists; and as the latter did not in every instance quietly give way, crowds ready for tumult were collected around the offices. The signs of commotion were hourly increasing in violence, but they escaped the notice of the king and his ministers. Charles went to enjoy a hunting excursion with the dauphin; and Polignac gave a splendid dinner to his colleagues. As evening approached, the efforts of the police to maintain order became more and more ineffectual; recourse was had to the military, which had been placed under the command of Marshal Marmont, and some smart skirmishes took place, in which the citizens were defeated.

17. When the soldiers returned to their barracks, Polignac was congratulated on his victory! He went tranquilly to rest, as did the rest of the royalists, in full confidence that the whole business was arranged. The citizens spent the night far differently; arms were procured, barricades erected, the national guard revived and formed into companies, and all the insignia of royal authority removed from shops and offices. The ministers had limited their operations to issuing a new ordinance declaring Paris in a state of siege.

18. On the morning of the 28th, the citizens commenced the struggle by raising the tri-coloured flag in every direction; they carried with little loss the detached guard-houses, the arsenal, the powder magazine, and began to menace the *Palais Royal*. It was twelve o'clock before Marmont, who

waited in hopes of some conciliatory offers from the court which would have soothed the insurgents, reluctantly led his soldiers to the fight. He ordered the troops to clear circuits of streets, dividing them into four columns; and every step taken by each of these divisions was fiercely and steadily disputed by the people. After a day of hard fighting the soldiers returned to their barracks, where no provision had been made for their refreshment; while the combatants, on the other side, where cheered with every luxury that the citizens of Paris could command. During the day Marmont wrote to the king, that the disturbances were assuming a dangerous and revolutionary aspect, but he received no answer until night, and was then directed to persevere; some of the leading liberals also sought an interview with Prince Polignac but were refused admittance.

19. On the morning of the 29th, hostilities were renewed with great fury, but with no decisive result until noon, when the fifth regiment of the line entered into a treaty of neutrality with the populace, and abandoned its position. The citizens seized the advantageous post, and the guards made an effort



Revolution of 1830.

to recover it; during the struggle two regiments of the line openly joined the populace, and Marmont was thus forced to consent to a sort of armistice. Before, however, it could be arranged, the citizens stormed the Louvre and Tuilleries, from the windows of which they opened a murderous fire on the Swiss and the royal guards. These brave men, weakened by hunger, disgusted by neglect, fatigued by extraordinary exertions, outnumbered and disadvantageously posted, could make no long resistance; they effected their retreat with some difficulty, and at three o'clock in the afternoon the revolution at Paris was completed, and the city left quietly in the possession of its armed and triumphant citizens.

The deputies who had come to Paris were fortunately sufficiently numerous to organize a provisional government. 20. They decreed, that the national guard should be organized and placed under the command of the marquis La Fayette; and on the 30th of July they took the decisive step of inviting the duke of Orleans to place himself at the head of the government, under the title of lieutenant-general of the kingdom. Charles now recalled his ordinances, but it was too late; he resigned his crown, as did the dauphin his rights, in favour of the duke de Bordeaux, son of the late duke of Berri; but no notice was taken of his proceedings, farther than to intimate that his personal safety would be endangered by a longer residence in France. He set out on his second exile, accompanied by his family, and on the 17th of August landed in England. He took up his abode for a short time in Holyrood palace, near Edinburgh, after which he removed to Germany, where he soon sunk into neglect and oblivion.

21. In the meantime the French chambers assembled, and, after some debate, the crown was conferred on the duke of Orleans, under the style of "Louis Philippe I., king of the French."

---

### Questions.

1. In what condition was France after the Restoration?
2. From what events did the ruin of the Decazes ministry arise?
3. What ministerial changes led to the appointment of Villele?
4. How were the funds for the Spanish war carried?
5. What was the result of the Spanish campaign?
6. Describe the character of Louis XVIII.
7. How did Charles X. excite suspicion at his accession?
8. What were the leading events of Villele's ministry?

9. Why did Villele resign?
10. How did the Portalis administration terminate?
11. Who were the leading members of the Polignac administration?
12. By what event was a contest between the royalists and liberals forced on?
13. How did the French succeed in Algiers?
14. Did the conquest of Algiers influence the French elections?
15. What were the ordinances issued by the Polignac ministry?
16. How did the Revolution of July commence in Paris?
17. Was there any want of foresight on the part of the royalists?
18. Describe the events of the 28th of July?
19. What events on the 29th turned the balance in favour of the people?
20. How was a provisional government organized?
21. To whom was the French crown given?



Vauban.



Louis Philippe.

## CHAPTER XLIV.

## LOUIS PHILIPPE I.—REVOLUTION OF 1848.

Then came a deeper, dreaded sound,  
Crash echoed crash so loud and fast,  
We deemed a whirlwind swept the ground,  
Crushing the forests as it passed;  
And quaked the earth; and luridly  
Coursed the swift lightning through the sky.

FIRST.

1. UNFORTUNATELY for France, too many of her sons had thrown themselves into a revolution without knowing or caring for principles. The middle class, or bourgeoisie, had called loudly upon the lower ranks of the people to support the charter against the tyrannical *ordonnances* of Charles X.; but when the monarchy was overthrown, when their aid was no longer essential, they were expected to relapse into their former state. At the same time, the bourgeoisie looked with

hatred and jealousy upon the peerage, and sought to concentrate all the political power of the state in themselves. There were some among them, however, of more liberal ideas. MM. Dupont de l'Eure, Laffitte, and others, were thorough republicans, and Louis Philippe himself professed the most liberal sentiments, saying publicly on one occasion, "I am but a bridge to arrive at a republic." But his real feelings were with MM. de Broglie and Guizot, who opposed concessions of freedom to the people, desired to fortify the royal prerogative, and considered the revolution as having been effected only for the re-establishment of the charter. Some of the most zealous of the republicans, undeceived by the professions of the new sovereign, and deeming themselves betrayed by his election, felt disposed to unite with another class of the people, composed chiefly of unoccupied and discontented young men, who declaimed against what they termed the treachery of Louis Philippe, and longed to engage all Europe in a war of opinion. The separation of the church from the state tended to alienate the affections of the clergy from the new throne, and the partisans of the Buonapartes and of the exiled royal family were severally engaged in intrigues for the promotion of their favourite objects. Amid all these elements the throne of the king of the French stood for a long time tottering, supported by a doubtful union between royalists and bourgeoisie, maintaining its ascendancy by hollow concessions, and only developing itself by artifice.

2. The capture of the ministers of the late king gave the severest trial of the strength of the new government. The king made no effort to seize these delinquents, and would have gladly suffered them to leave the country; but four of them were detected at a distance from Paris as they were endeavouring to escape under false passports, and hurried by zealous patriots to the capital. The government was forced to send them for trial to the chamber of peers, where they were condemned to perpetual imprisonment and civil death, and speedily removed to a distant prison. But the excitement produced by their arrest was made the means of inciting the most formidable riots in the capital, which all the firmness of the national guard could not succeed in quieting until the third day after the trial.

3. The republicans of the capital were too violent in their measures, the feelings of many of them amounting to fanaticism. Frequent attempts to assassinate the king, made by half insane persons, who, when brought to trial, openly derided

and constituted authority, and who were identified by its enemies with the republican party, brought discredit upon it, and caused it to remain silent. The Carlists, or partisans of the exiled family, also injured their cause by an insurrection in the south of France. It was immediately suppressed by the government. The duchess de Berri, whose son, the duke of Bordeaux, was the legitimate heir to the crown, landed in La Vendee for the purpose of heading the royalists in that province. Such preparations had been made, however, that on landing she found her partisans disheartened, and their movements so closely watched, that it was impossible for them to assemble in any force. She resolved, nevertheless, to persevere, but her enterprise resolved itself into a series of insignificant attacks. The duchess was betrayed by one of her followers into the hands of the government, five months after her landing, and thrown into prison. Here it was discovered that she was pregnant, having been secretly married some time before her arrest. This circumstance threw an air of ridicule over her enterprise, and her partisans became quiet.

4. While these events were occurring in the south of France, the funeral of General Lamarque afforded an opportunity for an outbreak in Paris, which lasted five hours, and was attended with great loss of life.

5. The energy with which the government interfered in the affairs of Belgium, compelling the Dutch garrison in the citadel of Antwerp to capitulate, thus transferring the fortress immediately to the Belgians, gained for it a degree of popularity at home greater than it had hitherto enjoyed.

6. On the 20th of September, 1833, Ferdinand, king of Spain, died, leaving his crown to his daughter, who was proclaimed at Madrid. A rebellion in favour of Don Carlos, the late king's brother, immediately broke out, and insurrections agitated the country for several years. France joined with England, Spain, and Portugal, in what was called the Quadruple Alliance, for supporting the rights of the infant queen. On the 22d of April, 1834, France agreed to guard the frontiers, to prevent the Carlists from receiving aid by land; England blockaded the coasts, and Portugal was to assist the queen with troops, if necessary. But Louis Philippe secretly suffered Don Carlos to travel from London through France to Spain without informing his minister, Marshal Soult, who regarded this treatment as an indignity. He therefore retired from the ministry, and was succeeded by Marshal Gerard, who pursued the same policy as his predecessor. The frequent insurrections

had filled the prisons of the country, and Marshal Gerard attempted to have a general amnesty granted for all political offences, which, being disapproved by the king, he retired from the cabinet, October 1834. This step led to the formation of an entirely new ministry, of which Guizot and Thiers were the leading members. This ministry did not possess the confidence of the chambers, and it was dissolved in the following February. The opposition to this ministry was chiefly manifested by the refusal of the chambers to provide for the payment to the United States of twenty-five millions of francs, indemnity for spoliations committed on American commerce during the reign of Napoleon, according to the provisions of a treaty made in 1831. The hostile attitude assumed by President Jackson speedily brought the refractory deputies to terms, and the new ministry succeeded in carrying an act providing for the payment of the amount required.

7. On the 28th of July, in the year 1835, the king proceeded in the company of a most splendid retinue to review the troops of the line, and the national guard, under arms in Paris. Suddenly a terrific explosion took place from a machine in the window of a house adjoining the street the royal cortege was traversing, which killed or wounded upwards of forty persons, among the foremost of whom was Marshal Mortier. The king himself, with three of his sons, who were with him at the time, escaped almost miraculously. He behaved with the utmost bravery, riding calmly along to the end of the line, and then returning over the scene of the catastrophe to complete the review. The contriver of this "infernal machine" was a Corsican named Fieschi, who was immediately seized. He assigned no other motive for his act than hatred of the king, and no evidence could be found implicating any party or sect in his guilt. The ministry, however, attempted to make capital out of the occurrence, and succeeded at the next session of the chambers in passing three laws; one directed against the press; another allowing jurors to vote by ballot, and providing that a mere majority should in future be sufficient to convict, instead of two-thirds, as had hitherto been customary; and a third providing for the constitution of courts of assize, and the treatment of contumacious prisoners. By these measures the liberties of the people were more restricted than they had been since the abdication of Napoleon.

8. In the commencement of the year 1836, the minister of finance reported a continued deficit in the revenue, and suggested the propriety of meeting it, either by increasing the



tax, or by reducing the interest on the public debt from five to three per cent. Out of consideration for the capitalists, who held the greater part of the debt, and supported him and his measures, the king preferred the increase of taxation; the chambers, however, were unwilling to impose new burdens upon the people, and a change in the ministry was the consequence.

9. On the 25th of June, 1836, a third attempt was made upon the life of the king, as he was leaving the Tuilleries in his carriage, by an enthusiastic republican named Alibaud, who was guillotined on the 11th of July. He narrowly escaped death in December of the same year at the hands of an assassin named Meunier, who was sentenced to death, but afterwards banished.

10. The cabinet of Marshal Soult had been succeeded by one under Thiers, February 1836, who boldly supported the republic of Cracow, the dey of Tunis, and the queen-regent of Spain. But the re-establishment in Spain of the constitution of 1812 caused the king to refuse his consent to the plans of his minister, and Thiers was succeeded in his ministry in September, by Count Molé, who endeavoured to promote peace with foreign powers, and internal tranquillity. Many of those imprisoned for political offences were pardoned; among them the ex-ministers of Charles X. This course probably led to an attempt by Louis Napoleon Buonaparte, a nephew of the emperor, to excite an insurrection at Strasburg, October 29th. It was immediately suppressed and the young prince sent to America. He returned to Europe, however, and took up his abode in Switzerland, whence the French government attempted to expel him. To avoid involving that country in a war on his account, he voluntarily quitted it. On the 6th of August, 1840, he again landed in France, at Boulogne. Assuming uniforms and provided with weapons, he led his friends into the town, carrying his hat on the point of his sword, while his followers shouted *vive l'empereur!* in the hope of inducing the troops stationed in the town to join them. Some of these, being told that a revolution had taken place, and that Louis Philippe was dethroned, were about to put themselves under the command of the prince; when their captain awaking, rushed out of his quarters, and restored order among his men by his shouts of *vive le roi!* The prince fired a pistol at him and wounded a private soldier; but by this time the people began to take notice of the confusion, and to side with the garrison; several of the prince's party were soon in

prison, and the rest, with their leader, attempted to escape by swimming to the steamboat which had brought them. Boats were put out after them, and the prince, with many of the fugitives, were captured and securely lodged in the castle of Boulogne. He was sentenced to imprisonment for life in the fortress of Ham; whence, however, he escaped in the year 1847, and has since given in his adhesion to the French republic.

Simultaneously with this last attempt, another event occurred of great interest to the French people.

11. From the moment of the overthrow of Charles X., the ardent desire of the French to bring back the remains of Napoleon from their exile at St. Helena, began to be manifested. Numerous petitions were presented to the government, praying that the necessary steps should be taken to have the warrior's ashes restored to the nation, but for ten years no notice was taken of these requests; fears being entertained that the popular enthusiasm, which the presence of the relics of the emperor could not fail to excite, would inspire the people with the design of reviving the dynasty, and placing one of the Buonaparte family on the throne of France. On the accession of Thiers to the prime ministry, however, the subject was brought before the cabinet, and it was resolved to accede to the popular desire. Accordingly, in May 1840, the British government was requested to permit the exhumation of the imperial remains, and their transportation to France. The request was granted without hesitation, and orders given to the British authorities at St. Helena to render every assistance to the agents of the French government. The frigate *Belle Poule* and the corvette *Favourite* composed the expedition, which sailed from Toulon, July 7th, 1840, under the command of the prince de Joinville; Generals Bertrand and Gourgaud, and MM. Saint Denis and Noverraz, two of Napoleon's valets de chambre, accompanied the prince. On the 7th of October the ships arrived at St. Helena, and on the 8th were moored in the harbour. A few days having been occupied in the necessary preparations, on the 15th of October the exhumation took place, under the direction of the British authorities. Having been covered with an additional leaden coffin, and the whole placed in an ebony sarcophagus, sent for the purpose by the French government, the remains were embarked on board the *Belle Poule*, and on the 18th the expedition commenced its return voyage. On the 30th of November the squadron anchored in the port of Cherbourg, and pro

ceeded thence to Havre, which was fixed as the port of debarkation. Here the coffin and sarcophagus were transferred to the national steamer *La Normandie*, on which they were conveyed up the Seine as far as Val de la Haye, where the steamer *Dorade* took the place of the *Normandie*, and transported the remains to Courbevoie, near Paris. The progress of the Imperial corpse up the Seine drew together thousands of the people, whose enthusiasm knew no bounds. The national guards were every where under arms, and the most impressive solemnities were observed as the *cortege* passed. The 15th of December was fixed for the entry into Paris. On that day the capital was thronged by thousands upon thousands, among whom were not a few of the soldiers of Napoleon. The coffin was conveyed from the suburbs to the Invalides, between lines of national guards several miles in length. The prince de Joinville presented the remains to the king, who received them in the name of France. They were then deposited in state in the church of the Invalides, where they were visited by immense numbers of people, who regarded them with an affection and reverence almost amounting to adoration. A monument in the church of the Invalides now marks the resting-place of all that was mortal of Napoleon.

12. A fifth attempt upon the life of the king was made on the 15th of October, by a man named Darmes, who was guillotined.

13. The year 1842 was marked by two disasters. One was a shocking accident on the railroad between Paris and Versailles, which cost the lives of two hundred persons; the other was the death of the duke of Orleans, the heir-apparent to the throne, who was brought to the grave by being thrown out of the carriage in which he was riding.

14. During the whole reign of Louis Philippe, France was engaged, at an immense expenditure of men and money, in supporting her colonists in Algiers against the indefatigable chieftain, Abd-el-Kader. This redoubtable warrior, although repeatedly defeated, driven from his territories, and stripped of his authority, continued to annoy the colony by his daring incursions and restless enterprise. To secure the peace of the settlers, the government was compelled to keep under arms in Africa a force of scarcely less than a hundred thousand men. The opposition of this famous chief ended only with his capture, at the close of the year 1847. He was carried to France, and ordered to be carefully guarded as a prisoner. In the

year 1838, the refusal of the government of Mexico to indemnify France for losses sustained during the troubles of that republic, by French citizens, led to an attack by rear-admiral Baudin upon the city and castle of Vera Cruz, which were greatly injured by the bombardment, and taken possession of, November 28th, 1838. War was declared against France, but by the intervention of the British minister, Mr. Pakenham, an amicable arrangement of the difficulties was effected.

15. In the year 1840, a treaty was made in London between Great Britain, Austria, Russia and Prussia, settling the question of the possession of Syria by the pacha of Egypt, without reference to the acquiescence of France in their decision. This led to violent expressions of feeling on the part of the French people, who believed their nation insulted; the ministry breathed the same spirit, and the king consented to the augmentation of the army to 639,000 men. The plan for the fortification of Paris, as it was called, which had been before rejected by the chambers, was resumed by Thiers among his other preparations for war, and this would seem to have been the only object aimed at by the king in apparently coinciding with the war feeling; for he refused to allow his minister to denounce the treaty of July formally to the chambers, and ask for further warlike preparations. Thiers therefore gave up his portfolio, and a new ministry was appointed, of which the master spirit was Guizot. That statesman continued the fortification of Paris, and coincided fully with the wish of Louis Philippe to preserve the peace of Europe. He remained at the head of the government from 1840 until the revolution of 1848. By every means in his power he preserved France from European hostilities, brought about an exchange of visits between the sovereigns of England and France, and promoted on all occasions the intrigues of the king for the aggrandizement of the royal family, and its establishment by intermarriages in other courts of Europe. At the same time, his internal government was characterized by pride, tyranny, blindness, and a constant succession of encroachments upon the liberty of the people. During the whole term of his administration the work of fortifying Paris was continued, until the whole city was surrounded by a girdle of fortifications of impregnable strength, the guns of which were expected to serve equally well in repelling a foreign foe and in crushing any revolt in Paris. Secure in the pride of power, Louis Philippe boasted that he held France in his hand, and Guizot ruled on, well contented in the seeming success of his policy, and con-

vinced of the truth of his own saying, that an unpopular government is the most successful.

16. On the opening of the French chambers in 1848, a paragraph of the address announced the intention of the ministry to oppose the holding of a reform banquet in one of the arrondissements of Paris. The people had been accustomed to these gatherings, which had always been conducted in a quiet and orderly manner, and all Paris resolved to participate in the one thus opposed, as a demonstration of their determination in the matter. On the eve of the day on which it was to be held the government grew alarmed, and issued a proclamation that it would prevent it *vi et armis*. This was made known to a meeting of the deputies and electors who were to take part in the festival, and they repaired to the chamber to interrogate the ministry upon the subject, where, in an angry debate, they learned the resolution that had been taken. The opposition deputies, anxious to preserve peace, announced their determination to take no part in the celebration, and the government strengthened itself to enforce its decree. The number of the troops was increased to one hundred thousand men, and armed bodies were concentrated about the chamber of deputies. Great bodies of people were in motion early upon the day fixed for the banquet, February 22d, blocking up the avenues to the chambers, and making offensive demonstrations before the house of the minister. The troops manifested great reluctance to make war upon them, and the day passed over with few occurrences of note, except the impeachment of the minister by Odillon Barrot in the chamber, on behalf of fifty-three opposition deputies.

17. During the night the troops demolished the barricades thrown up by the people during the day, and the morning of the 23d was spent in the erecting and destroying of these works. Shortly after noon a large detachment of the national guard came to present a petition to the chamber in favour of reform, but they were met by the commander of the tenth legion, in the Place de la Concorde, who told them they would not be permitted to pass. As M. Guizot entered the chamber of deputies on this day, the tenth legion on guard there saluted him with cries of, *A bas Guizot! Vive Louis Philippe!*

18. At half-past three a conflict commenced between the people and the municipal guard; but almost everywhere the national guard fraternized with the people. A lull was produced by the announcement of the resignation of the ministry, and the appointment of Count Molé to the presidency of the

council ; but the wanton discharge of musketry upon the people, by the guard assembled before M. Guizot's hotel, by which fifty-two persons were killed or wounded, again aroused the people, and everywhere the cry was heard to arms. The dead bodies were carried about Paris in a vehicle, preceded by an immense crowd, chanting in a mournful murmur the songs of death. Suddenly there arose a cry for vengeance, and the issue of the revolution was decided. At every corner barricades were erected. Gentlemen, shopkeepers, clerks, workmen, all laboured equally and effectively. The dawn of the 24th saw the whole city in possession of the people. The Chateau d'Eau, a massive stone building in front of the Palais Royal, was garrisoned by 180 municipal guards, who attacked the people about the palace, and a desperate conflict ensued, in which the populace suffered severely, but demolished the chateau, chiefly by means of fire.

19. The victors then rushed to the Tuilleries, which was surrounded with thousands of troops, who would not fire upon their brethren. Louis Philippe found that his sceptre had departed, and he attempted by abdication to transfer his crown to the count of Paris, his grandson. The mother of the count repaired with him to the chamber of deputies, where a voice from the public gallery settled the question at once :—"It is too late." The members of the royal family retired, followed by all the royalists in the chamber. Dupont de l'Eure, whose sturdy republicanism in 1830 was not forgotten, was carried to the chair, and a provisional government was proclaimed, amid loud shouts of *Vive la Republique!*

20. Louis Philippe had been escorted by a detachment of guards to Neuilly, whence he made his escape in disguise to England. Apprehensions were entertained that his life would be sacrificed to popular fury ; but the only cry that arose from the multitude was one of indifferent derision, "Let him go!"

21. The furniture of the Tuilleries was thrown out of the windows and burned, the wines in the cellar distributed among the multitude, the throne carried in procession through the streets, and finally burned on the famous place de la Bastille, and the royal carriages were burned at the Chateau d'Eau. All this passed directly beneath the notice of long lines of motionless infantry and cavalry. The respect paid to private property was not less remarkable than it was honourable. Several malefactors, caught by the people in stealing, were shot on the spot, and the word "voleur" (thief) fastened upon their bodies.

Burning of the Royal Carriages at the Chateau d'Éau.







22. The provisional government was installed at the *Hotel de Ville*, and at once proclaimed a republic. The chamber of peers was immediately abolished, and steps taken to relieve the people of the burden which the overthrow of existing relations was likely to place upon them. Lamartine, Arago, Ledru Rollin, Lamoricière, Garnier Pages, Cavaignac, Decourtrias, with the venerable president, Dupont del'Eure, composed the provisional government. The first act of the government showed Lamartine to be the master spirit. Every citizen was made an elector, and the qualifications for office were citizenship and the age of twenty-five years. The penalty of death for political offences was immediately abolished. An act for the emancipation of every slave on territory subject to France was ordered to be immediately prepared. On the 4th of March the victims of the revolution were solemnly interred, in the presence of nearly half a million of people, at the foot of the monument erected to liberty, and the memory of victims of the three days of July 1830.

23. The earliest occasion was selected by the American minister at Paris, Mr. Rush, for recognising the republic. On the 28th of February he waited upon the provisional government, and formally acknowledged the republic, in an eloquent speech; hoping that the friendship of the two republics would be co-extensive with their duration. A deputation of American citizens waited upon the provisional government on the 8th of March, tendering them congratulations, and presenting them a flag-staff, with the colours of the two republics united and flowing together. The colour was received by M. Arago, in a handsome address on the part of the government, and placed in the *Hotel de Ville*.

24. The people throughout France are united in favour of a republican form of government, and the voice of the church in favour of the change was heard in every cathedral in France, almost before it was known that the king had quitted its territory. France with one voice has declared in favour of liberty, and not till she relapses into barbarism will tyranny find a foothold upon her soil.

---

### Questions.

1. What feelings were entertained by leading men concerning government?
2. What effect was produced by the capture of the late king's ministers?

3. How did the parties regard each other?
4. What gave rise to an outbreak in Paris?
5. What is said of the government's interference with Belgium?
6. What is said of the relations with Spain and the United States?
7. What occurred July 28, 1835?
8. What caused a change of ministry?
9. What other attempts were made on the king's life?
10. What is said of Prince Louis Buonaparte?
11. Describe the ceremonies attending the removal of Napoleon's remains.
12. Who made a fifth attempt on the king's life?
13. What disasters occurred in 1842?
14. Describe the war with Abd-el-Kader and Mexico.
15. Describe the Guizot ministry.
16. What effect was produced by the refusal of the ministry to sanction the holding of the reform banquet?
17. What occurred on the 23d of February, 1848?
18. Describe the outbreak.
19. What form of government was substituted?
20. What is said of Louis Philippe?
21. What took place at the Tuilleries?
22. Describe the organization of the Provisional government?
23. What was done by the American minister?
24. How was the movement regarded by the people?



Duke of Orleans.

# GENEALOGY

## OF THE

### KINGS OF FRANCE.

---

#### MEROVINGIAN LINE.

**CLOVIS**, married to Clotilda, daughter of the king of Burgundy; by her he had three sons and one daughter:

*Clodomir*, king of Orleans;

*Childebert*, king of Paris;

*Clotaire*, king of Soissons;

*Clotilda*, married to the king of the Spanish Visigoths.

He had also a natural son,

*Thierry* or *Theodoric*, king of Metz or Austrasia.

These separate kingdoms were again united under,

**CLOTAIRE I.**; by his first wife, Ingonda, he had three sons;

*Charibert*, king of Paris;

*Gontran*, king of Orleans;

*Sigebert*, king of Austrasia;

And by his second wife, Haregonda, one son,

*Chilperic*, king of Soissons.

*Gontran* was the survivor of his brothers.—*Sigebert*, by his wife *Fredegonde*, had *Childebert II.*, king of Austrasia.—*Chilperic*, by his wife *Brunehaut*, had *Clotaire II.*, king of Nuestria.—After the death of *Gontran* the entire kingdom of the Franks was shared between these two princes, but it was again united under *Clotaire II.*

**CLOTAIRE II.** left two sons:

*Dagobert*, king of Nuestria, Austria, and Burgundy;

*Charibert*, king of part of Aquitaine.

But, by the death of the latter, *Dagobert* became sole monarch of France. His descendants were called *Les Rois Faineans*, or the Sluggard Kings, and were entirely under the control of the *Mayors* of the palace.

**DAGOBERT** left his kingdom between his two sons:

*Sigebert*, king of Austrasia;

*Clovis II.*, king of Nuestria.

After the death of *Sigebert*, *Clovis* became sole monarch of France.

**CLOVIS** had three sons:

*Clotaire III.*, king of Nuestria and Burgundy;

*Childeric*, king of Austrasia;

*Thierry*, who succeeded *Clotaire*;

The latter was deposed, and thus the kingdom was again united under *Childeric*.

**CHILDERIC** was murdered in an insurrection, and the kingdom of France was again divided between *Thierry*, who had been deposed, and *Dagobert II.* the son of *Sigebert*, but the latter was soon slain in a civil war.

**THIERRY** left two sons:

*Clovis III.*, king of France

*Childebert*, his successor.

**CHILDEBERT** was succeeded by his son, *Dagobert II.* After his death, we find

*Chilperic II.* king of Nuestria;

*Clotaire*, king of Austrasia;

But it is not easy to trace their descent. *Clotaire* died after a short reign, and *Chilperic* inherited his dominions.

After the death of *Chilperic*, *Charles Martel* acted as king of France; but, finding the people averse to his usurpation, he gave the shadow of royalty to *Thierry II.*, son of *Dagobert II.* After his death a similar interregnum was caused by the ambition of Martel's sons, *Pepin* and *Carloman*. At length they raised to the throne *Childeric III.*, the brother of *Thierry*; but *Pepin* having gained the consent of the Pope, soon deposed *Childeric*, and assumed the crown himself; thus terminated the Merovingian dynasty, so named from *Merovée*, a supposed ancestor of *Clovis*. It was succeeded by the Carolingian dynasty, which was so called from *Charles Martel*, the great founder of the family.

### CARLOVINGIAN DYNASTY.

**PEPIN**, at his death, left two sons:

*Carloman*, who died early, and

*Charlemagne*, the first emperor of the west.

*Charlemagne* was succeeded by

**LOUIS I.**, who divided his dominions between his children;

*Lothaire*, king of Italy;

*Louis*, the Germanic king of Bavaria;

*Charles the Bald*, king of France.

*Lothaire* died without children.

**LOUIS** shared his dominions between his three sons:

*Carloman,*  
*Louis,*  
*Charles,* } joint kings of Bavaria.

**CHARLES** the **BALD** had four sons:

*Louis* succeeded his father;  
*Charles,*  
*Lothaire,* } joint kings of Bavaria;  
*Carloman,* died in exile.

**LOUIS II.** had three sons:

*Louis III.*, king of Nuestria;  
*Carloman*, king of Aquitaine;  
*Charles*, born after his father's death.

The two former died young, and, the latter being yet in his infancy, the kingdom of France was given to *Charles*, the only surviving son of *Louis the German*; after an inglorious reign, he was succeeded by

*Charles IV.*, the posthumous son of *Louis II.*

*Charles IV.* was deposed, but, after some delay, the crown was given to his son.

**LOUIS IV.** had two sons:

*Lothaire*, king of France;  
*Charles*, duke of Lorraine.

*Lothaire* was succeeded by his son, *Louis V.*, the last of the Carlo-vingian race: after his death, *Hugh Capet* was elected king of France.

## CAPETIAN DYNASTY.

**HUGH CAPET** married Adelaide, daughter of the duke of Aquitaine; by her he had one son and three daughters:

*Robert*, who succeeded his father;  
*Avoya*, married to the count of Hainault;  
*Adelaide*, married to the count of Nevers;  
*Gisella*, married to the count of Ponthieu.

**ROBERT I.** was married three times; he had no children by his first two wives; but, by the last, Constance of Provence, he had

*Hugh*, who died before his father;  
*Henry I.*, who succeeded to the crown;  
*Eudes*, bishop of Auxerre;  
*Robert*, duke of Burgundy;  
*Alice*, married to the count of Flanders.

**HENRY I.** had no children by his first wife; by his second, Anne of Russia, he had three sons:

*Philip*, his successor;

*Robert*, who died young ;  
*Hugh*, count of Vermandois.

**PHILIP I.**; by his first wife, Bertha, had  
*Louis*, his successor.

*Constance*, married to the prince of Antioch.

By his second wife, Bertrade, he had

*Philip*, count of Mantes ;

*Fleury* ;

*Cecilia*, married first to the prince of Antioch, afterwards to the count of Tripoly.

**LOUIS VI.** had no children by his first wife ; from his second, *Adelaide* of Savoy, were born

*Philip*, who died young ;

*Louis*, his father's successor ;

*Robert*, count of Dreux ;

*Hugh*, of whom we only know the name ;

*Henry*, bishop of Beauvais ;

*Peter*, married to the heiress of the Courtenays ;

*Philip*, archdeacon of Paris ;

*Constance*, married, first to the count of Boulogne, and then to the count of Toulouse.

**LOUIS VII.**; by his first wife, Eleanor of Guienne, had

*Mary*, married to the count of Champagne ;

*Alice*, married to the count of Blois.

By his second wife, Constance of Castile,

*Margaret*, married, first to the English prince Henry ; afterwards to the king of Hungary.

By his third wife, Alice of Champagne,

*Philip*, his successor ;

*Agnes*, married to the Grecian prince, Alexis ;

*Alice*, betrothed to Richard I. of England, married to the count of Ponthieu.

**PHILIP II.**; by his first wife, Isabella of Hainault, had

*Louis*, his successor.

By his second, Mary of Dalmatia,

*Philip*, count of Boulogne ;

*Maria*, married to the duke of Brabant.

**LOUIS VIII.** was married to Blanche of Castile ; their children were

*Louis*, his father's successor ;

*Robert*, count of Artois ;

*Charles*, count of Anjou ;

*Alphonso*, count of Poitou ;

*John*, died young ;

*Isabella*, a nun.

**LOUIS IX.**; by his wife, Margaret of Provence, had  
*Philip*, his successor;  
*John Tristan*, count of Nevers;  
*Peter*, count of Alençon;  
*Robert*, count of Clermont, the ancestor of the Bourbon branch of  
the royal family;  
*Isabella*, married to the king of Navarre;  
*Blanche*, married to the infant of Castile;  
*Margaret*, married to the duke of Brabant;  
*Agnes*, married to the duke of Burgundy.

**PHILIP III.**; by his first wife, Isabella of Arragon, had  
*Louis*, who died young;  
*Philip*, who succeeded his father;  
*Charles*, count of Valois.

By his second wife, Maria of Brabant, he had  
*Louis*, count of Evreux;  
*Margaret*, married to Edward I. of England;  
*Blanche*, married to the duke of Austria.

**PHILIP IV.** married Jane, queen of Navarre, by whom he had  
*Louis X.* } successively kings of France, but died without  
*Philip V.* } heirs male.  
*Charles IV.* }  
*Margaret*, married to Ferdinand of Castile;  
*Isabella*, married to Edward II. of England.

### HOUSE OF VALOIS.

**PHILIP VI.**, son of *Charles*, count of Valois, in obedience to the Salic law, obtained the crown, which to him proved a crown of thorns, in preference to the representatives in the female line of the former kings. He married Jane of Burgundy, by whom he had

*John*, who succeeded his father;  
*Philip*, duke of Orleans;  
*Mary*, duchess of Brabant.

By a second wife he had  
*Jane*, a posthumous child, married to the king of Navarre.

**JOHN**, by his first wife, Bona of Bohemia, had

*Charles*, his successor;  
*Louis*, duke of Anjou;  
*John*, duke of Berri;  
*Maria*, duchess of Barr;  
*Jane*, married to *Charles*, king of Navarre;  
*Isabella*, married to the first duke of Milan;  
*Margaret*, a nun;  
*Philip*, duke of Burgundy; from whom descended *Charles* of Burgundy, and *Charles V.*, emperor of Germany.

**CHARLES V.**; by his wife, Jane of Bourbon, left two sons:

*Charles*, his successor;  
*Louis*, duke of Orleans.

**CHARLES VI.** married Isabella of Bavaria, by her he had

*Louis,* } died before their father;  
*John,* }  
*Charles,* who succeeded to the throne;  
*Isabella,* married to Richard II. of England;  
*Jane,* married to the duke of Brittany;  
*Michella,* married to the duke of Burgundy;  
*Catherine,* married to Henry V. of England;  
*Mary,* a nun.

**CHARLES VII.** married Mary of Anjou, by her he had

*Louis,* his successor;  
*Charles,* duke of Berri;  
*Yoland,* married to the duke of Savoy;  
*Catherine,* married to the count de Charolois;  
*Magdelane,* married to the count de Foix.

**LOUIS XI.** had issue only by his second wife, Charlotte of Savoy, viz.

*Charles,* his successor;  
*Anne,* married to the lord of Beaujou;  
*Joan,* married to the duke of Orleans.

The children of the next monarch,

**CHARLES VIII.** died in their infancy; he was succeeded by his cousin, *Louis XII.*, grandson of *Louis*, duke of Orleans.

**LOUIS XII.**; by his first wife, Anne of Brittany, had

*Claude,* married to the count d'Angouleme;  
*Renée,* married to the duke of Ferrara;

By his second wife, Mary of England, he had no children.

**FRANCIS I.**, count de Angouleme, descended from a second son of *Louis*, duke of Orleans, received the crown as next male heir; he was first married to Claude of France; their children were

*Philip*, who died before his father;  
*Henry*, who succeeded to the throne;  
*Charles*, duke of Orleans;  
*Magdelane*, married to the king of Scotland;  
*Margaret*, married to the duke of Savoy.

He had no children by his second wife.

**HENRY II.** married Catherine de Medicis; by whom he had

*Francis II.* } who reigned successively, but died without male  
*Charles IX.* } heirs;  
*Henry III.* }

*Elizabeth*, married to the king of Spain;  
*Claude*, married to the duke of Lorraine;  
*Margaret*, married to Henry Bourbon, king of Navarre, descended from *Robert*, the fourth son of *Louis IX.*

#### HOUSE OF BOURBON.

On the death of *Henry III.*, the direct line was extinct, and the succession devolved on a remote collateral branch, of which *Henry Bourbon*, king of Navarre, was the representative.



**HENRY IV.**, after the death of his first wife, Margaret, married Mary de Medicis, by whom he had

*Louis*, his successor;  
*Gaston*, duke of Orleans;  
*Elizabeth*, married to the king of Spain;  
*Christiana*, married to the prince of Piedmont;  
*Henrietta Maria*, married to *Charles I.* of England.

**LOUIS XIII.** married Anne of Austria; by whom he had

*Louis*, his successor;  
*Philip*, duke of Anjou, and afterwards duke of Orleans.

**LOUIS XIV.** married Maria Theresa of Austria; by her he had

*Louis*, the *Dauphin*, who died before his father, leaving by his wife, Maria Anna Christina Victoria, princess of Bavaria, the following children:

*Louis*, duke of Burgundy;  
*Philip*, king of Spain;  
*Charles*, duke of Berry.

*Louis*, duke of Burgundy, married Adelaide of Savoy, and had one son, *Louis*, who succeeded his great-grandfather.

**LOUIS XV.** married Maria Leczinska, daughter of Stanislaus, ex-king of Poland; by her he had

*Louis*, the *Dauphin*, who died before his father;  
*Maria Louisa Elizabeth*, married to the infant of Spain;  
*Anne Henrietta*;  
*Maria Adelaide*;  
*Victoria*;  
*Sophia*;  
*Louisa Maria*, a nun.

**LOUIS**, the **DAUPHIN**, had no children by his first wife; the offspring of his second marriage with Maria Josepha, princess of Savoy, were:

*Louis*, duke of Burgundy, } died young;  
*Xavier*, duke of Aquitaine, }  
*Louis Augustus*, succeeded his grandfather;  
*Louis Stanislaus Xavier*, after long exile, king of France;  
*Charles Philip*, the late king of France;  
*Adelaide Clotilda*, married the prince of Piedmont;  
*Elizabeth Philippina*, murdered during the revolution;  
*Maria Zepharina*, died young.

**LOUIS XVI.** was married to Marie Antoinette, archduchess of Austria: by her he had

*Louis Joseph*, who died in infancy;  
*Louis Charles*, called *Louis XVII.*, died in the Temple;  
*Maria Theresa*, married to the duke of Angouleme;  
*Sophia Helena*, died in infancy.

**LOUIS XVIII.** died without issue.

**CHARLES X.** was married to Theresa of Savoy; she died in 1805 and left two sons:

*Louis Antoine*, duke of Angouleme, late Dauphin;

*Charles Ferdinand*, duke of Berry, assassinated at the Theatre, February 20, 1820.

By his wife, Maria Caroline of Naples, the duke of Berry had a posthumous son,

*Charles Ferdinand*, duke of Bourdeaux, regarded by the Carlists as rightful heir to the throne of France.

**LOUIS PHILIPPE**, the last king of France, is descended from the Orleans branch of the Bourbons, and has several children. For reasons, sufficiently obvious, their names and titles have been omitted.

## CHRONOLOGICAL INDEX.

A. D.	PAGE
486 Clovis defeats the Romans near Soissons, and thus lays the foundation of the French monarchy.....	15
507 Alaric, king of the Visigoths, subdued near Poitiers, by Clovis .....	20
511 Death of Clovis, and division of the monarchy.....	21
613 Re-union of the French dominions under a single sovereign .....	ib.
750 Pepin dethrones the Merovingian race of kings .....	26
771 Accession of Charlemagne .....	28
800 Charlemagne crowned emperor by pope Leo III. ....	32
814 Death of Charlemagne—weakness of his successor.....	33
820 The Normans first appear on the coast of France.....	39
830 The emperor Louis dethroned by his unnatural sons and rebellious clergy.....	38
841 Civil war between the sons of Louis .....	39
845 The Normans advance to the gates of Paris .....	40
862 The divorce of Lothaire affords pope Nicholas an opportunity of asserting the supremacy of the Roman pontiffs..	40
877 Death of Charles the Bald—feudal system established ..	42
886 Siege of Paris by the Normans .....	44
912 The province of Neustria ceded to the Normans .....	46
987 The throne of France passes from the Carlovingian to the Capetian race .....	52
998 Robert I. excommunicated by the pope.....	58
1029 The Normans settle in Italy .....	70
1040 <i>TRUCE OF GOD</i> published by the bishops.....	54
1058 The Normans wrest Sicily from the Saracens.....	70
1066 William the Conqueror invades England.....	69
1095 The first Crusade preached by Urban II.....	61

A. D.	PAGE
1124 First war between the Anglo-Normans and French ....	77
1146 Second Crusade preached by St. Bernard.....	81
1189 Third Crusade, in which Richard Cœur-de-Lion and Philip Augustus join.....	87
1204 Normandy wrested from the English.....	91
1208 Crusade against the Albigenses.....	95
1223 Death of Philip Augustus.....	99
1249 Crusade of St. Louis—he is taken prisoner in Egypt ....	105
1266 Charles of Anjou obtains the kingdom of the two Sicilies, having defeated and put to death Conradin, the rightful heir .....	109
1270 Death of St. Louis in Africa—end of the Crusades.....	ib.
1282 Sicilian Vespers—all the French in Sicily massacred ...	114
1294 Pope Boniface VIII. quarrels with Philip the Fair.....	116
1302 States-General assembled in France, to which the Commons are summoned for the first time .....	117
1307 The Order of the Templars abolished .....	119
1308 The independence of Switzerland established .....	120
1328 Philip of Valois ascends the throne of France.....	127
1336 Edward III. lays claim to the throne of France.....	130
1346 Battle of Crécy .....	133
1347 Siege of Calais .....	138
1356 Battle of Poitiers—king John taken prisoner.....	144
1358 The <i>Jacquerie</i> or insurrection of the peasantry .....	150
1368 The war in Castile between Peter the Cruel and Henry de Transtamara, proves of great service to France....	155
1377 Death of the Black Prince—the English lose all their conquests in France .....	158
1380 Joanna, queen of Naples, is dethroned by her cousin Durrazzo, and transfers her right to Charles of Anjou .....	162
1415 Henry V. of England invades France .....	172
1417 The council of Constance puts an end to the SCHISM OF THE WEST, but disgraces itself by sentencing John Huss and Jerome of Prague to the stake.....	178
1429 Joan of Arc compels the English to raise the siege of Orleans.....	182
1453 The English are driven out of France .....	187
1461 Accession of Louis XI. ....	190
1477 Death of Charles, duke of Burgundy.....	196
1492 Brittany loses its independence.....	201
1494 Charles VIII. invades Italy .....	203
1495 Battle of Fornova; the French obtain unexpected victory	205
1499 Louis XII. invades Italy; succeeds at first, but eventually loses all his conquests.....	209
1508 The league of Cambray formed against the Venetians ..	211
1515 The <i>Battle of the Spurs</i> .....	212
1517 Martin Luther commences the Reformation .....	217
1525 Battle of Pavia—Francis I. taken prisoner .....	221

A. D.	PAGE
1527 Rome taken and plundered by the army of the constable of Bourbon .....	226
1529 The followers of Luther take the title of <i>Protestants</i> ....	227
1552 Prince Maurice of Saxony forces Charles V. to concede toleration.....	233
1558 Calais taken from the English by the duke of Guise ....	236
1560 Conspiracy of Amboise against the Guises—beginning of the religious troubles in France.....	237
1572 Treacherous Massacre of the Protestants on St. Bartholomew's Day (August 24th) .....	246
1576 The Alliance called <i>The Holy League</i> formed .....	253
1587 The duke of Guise assassinated by order of Henry III....	258
1589 Henry III., the last of the house of Valois, assassinated by James Clement, a fanatical monk; the succession devolves to Henry IV., the first monarch of the house of Bourbon .....	261
1590 Henry IV. compelled to raise the siege of Paris.....	267
1593 ——— abjures Protestantism .....	268
1598 ——— grants Religious Toleration by the edict of Nantes	270
1610 ——— is assassinated by Ravaillac .....	274
1621 A new Religious War breaks out in France .....	279
1628 Rochelle, the strong-hold of the Protestants, surrenders to Richelieu .....	284
1631 Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, is killed at the battle of Lutzen .....	286
1642 Death of cardinal Richelieu.....	287
1648 Revolt of Massaniello at Naples.....	292
The Eighty Years' war terminated by the treaty of Westphalia.....	293
1649 The wars of the Fronde commence .....	294
1659 The treaty of the Pyrennees concluded between France and Spain .....	296
1661 Death of cardinal Mazarin.....	ib.
1667 Peace of Breda between England and Holland .....	302
1672 Louis XIV. invades Holland—the Dutch reduced to the brink of ruin.....	304
1678 Peace of Nimeguen.....	306
1685 Revocation of the Edict of Nantes—the Protestants cruelly persecuted .....	308
1686 The League of Augsburg, formed to check the ambition of Louis XIV. The parties to the alliance were the Emperor of Germany, the kings of Spain and Sweden, the elector Palatine and of Bavaria, and the republic of the United Provinces.....	ib
1688 THE REVOLUTION in England .....	309
1697 The peace of Ryswick.....	ib
Philip V., grandson of Louis XIV., ascends the throne of Spain, which has since remained in the possession of the Bourbon family.....	312

A. D.	PAGE
1701 Commencement of the war of the Spanish succession . . . .	314
1702 Death of William III., king of Great Britain and stadtholder of Holland . . . . .	ib.
1704 Battle of Blenheim . . . . .	315
1706 The siege of Turin raised by prince Eugene . . . . .	316
1710 Fruitless negotiations for peace at Gertruydenberg . . . . .	217
1712 Peace of Utrecht . . . . .	318
1715 Death of Louis XIV. . . . .	319
1717 France, England, and Holland unite against Spain . . . . .	322
1733 France, Spain, and Sardinia unite to place Stanislaus Leczinski on the throne of Poland . . . . .	324
1738 Peace concluded between France and the empire . . . . .	ib.
1740 Death of the emperor Charles VI.—the <i>pragmatic</i> sanction violated . . . . .	325
1741 Maria Theresa appeals to her Hungarian subjects, and is enabled to triumph over her enemies . . . . .	326
1743 Battle of Dettingen . . . . .	327
1748 Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle . . . . .	328
1755 Commencement of the seven years' war . . . . .	330
1757 Battle of Rosbach gained by the king of Prussia . . . . .	331
1761 Spain, in consequence of the family compact, joins with France against England . . . . .	332
1763 Peace concluded at Paris . . . . .	ib.
1768 The French acquire Corsica . . . . .	333
1773 The order of the Jesuits suppressed . . . . .	ib.
1776 The British Colonies in America revolt—are aided by France in 1778 . . . . .	339
1783 The war terminated by the treaty of Paris . . . . .	340
1789 Assembly of the States-General at Versailles . . . . .	341
They assume the title of the <i>National Assembly</i> . . . . .	342
Insurrection at Paris—capture of the Bastille . . . . .	343
1791 The king of France, attempting to escape, is arrested at Varennes . . . . .	350
1792 France declares war against Austria . . . . .	ib.
1793 Louis XVI. tried and condemned by the national convention . . . . .	352
First appearance of Napoleon Buonaparte in public life—war in La Vendée . . . . .	358
1795 Holland subdued by Pichegru . . . . .	361
1796 Napoleon commands in Italy—Battle of Lodi . . . . .	362
1797 Peace of Campo Formio between Austria and France . . . . .	365
1798 The French invade Egypt—Battle of the Nile . . . . .	ib.
1799 Napoleon returns to France and overthrows the Directory . . . . .	367
1800 Buonaparte leads his army over the Alps . . . . .	ib.
Battle of Marengo . . . . .	368
1801 Peace of Amiens . . . . .	369
Revolt of the Negroes in St. Domingo . . . . .	ib.
1803 Renewal of the war . . . . .	370
1804 Murder of the duke d'Enghien . . . . .	371

A. D.	PAGE
1804	Napoleon Buonaparte proclaimed emperor of France... 371
1805	Coalition of Russia, Sweden, England, Austria, and Prussia against France..... 374
	Battle of Austerlitz..... 375
1806	Prussia engages in a ruinous war with France..... 377
	Battles of Jena (1807), Eylau, and Friedland..... ib.
1807	The British take possession of the Danish fleet..... 378
1808	Charles IV., king of Spain, and his son Ferdinand seduced to Bayonne by Napoleon, and forced to abdicate in favour of Joseph Buonaparte..... 380
1808	The English, under Sir Arthur Wellesley, defeat the French at Vimiera, and drive them from Portugal..... 381
1809	Battle of Corunna—death of Sir John Moore..... ib.
	Austria renews the war against France—totally overthrown at Wagram..... 384
	Battle of Talavera..... ib.
	Gustavus IV., king of Sweden, deposed..... 385
	The Pope sent as a prisoner to France..... ib.
1810	Marriage of Napoleon with the arch-duchess Maria Louisa..... ib.
	Charles John Bernadotte elected crown prince of Sweden 386
1812	Napoleon resolves to invade Russia..... 387
	Battle of Borodino or Moskwa..... 389
	Burning of Moscow..... ib.
	Disastrous retreat of the French from Russia..... 390
1813	Prussia declares war against France..... 395
	Austria joins the Allies..... ib.
	Battle of Vittoria..... ib.
	Battle of Leipsic..... 396
1814	The Allies enter France..... 397
	Napoleon abdicates the crown and retires to Elba..... 398
1815	The return from Elba—Napoleon lands at Cannes, and becomes, without resistance, master of all France..... 401
	Battle of Ligny..... 403
	Battle of WATERLOO..... ib.
	Restoration of the Bourbons..... 390
1824	Death of Louis XVIII..... 411
1830	Dethronement of Charles X..... 400
1833	Difficulties with the United States settled..... 422
1840	Attempted revolution of Louis Buonaparte..... 423
	Napoleon's remains removed to France..... 424
1842	Death of the Duc d'Orleans..... 425
	War with Algiers..... ib.
1848	Revolution in Paris..... 428
	Abdication and flight of Louis Philippe..... ib.
	Organization of the Provisional Government..... 431

# CHARLES DESILVER,

## PUBLISHER AND BOOKSELLER,

No. 714 Chestnut Street, opposite Masonic Hall,

PHILADELPHIA, PENNA.

FINNOCK'S ENGLAND, half roan.....	\$0 84
PINNOCK'S ROME, half roan.....	84
PINNOCK'S GREECE, half roan.....	84
PINNOCK'S FRANCE, half roan.....	84
LORD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, 12mo., half roan.....	1 00
LORD'S MODERN HISTORY, 8vo., half roan.....	1 50
FROST'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, 18mo., half roan.....	50
FROST'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, 12mo., half roan.....	90

## INTERLINEAR VIRGIL.

THE WORKS OF

P. VIRGILIUS MARO,

With the Original Text reduced to the natural order of construction; and an

INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION,

As nearly literal as the idiomatic differences of the Latin and English languages will allow. Adapted to the system of classical instruction; combining the methods of Ascham, Milton, and Locke. By Levi Hart and V. B. Osborn, 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey. Price \$1 50.

CÆSAR, INTERLINEAR. By Hamilton and Clark, 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey....	\$1 50
HORACE, INTERLINEAR. By Hamilton and Clark, 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey...	1 50
CICERO, INTERLINEAR. By Hamilton and Clark, 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey....	1 50
SALLUST, INTERLINEAR. By Hamilton and Clark, 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey...	1 50
CLARK'S PRACTICAL AND PROGRESSIVE LATIN GRAMMAR, 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey morocco.....	1 00

*In Press:*

OVID, INTERLINEAR.  
HOMER'S ILIAD, INTERLINEAR.  
XENOPHON'S ANABASIS, INTERLINEAR.

Wisconsin and Lake Superior, with Maps and Illustrations, 12 mo., new edition.....	\$1 25
Virginia Military Institute Mathematical Series, by Col. Francis H. Smith, Superintendent of the Virginia Military Institute.	
Ewell's Medical Companion, or Family Physician, by James Ewell, Physician in Washington, formerly of Savannah, 1 vol., 8vo., sheep.....	3 75
The American Farmers' New and Universal Hand-Book, 1 vol., 8vo., embossed ilt...	2 00
Mitchell's Universal Atlas, half morocco.....	12 00
Mitchell's Large Map of the World, on rollers.....	10 00
Mitchell's New Traveller's Guide through the United States and Canadas, cloth gilt...	1 00
Johnston's Philosophy, 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey.....	1 00
Johnston's Turner's Chemistry, (new edition), 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey.....	1 50
Johnston's Turner's Elements of Chemistry, 1 vol., half roan.....	75
Sargent's Standard Speaker, 1 vol., demi 8vo., half roan.....	1 50
Sargent's Intermediate Standard Speaker, 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey.....	1 00
Sargent's Primary Standard Speaker, half roan.....	34
Flowers of Elocution, a Class Book, by Mrs. Caroline Lee Hentz, half morocco.....	1 00
Guy's Astronomy and Keith on the Globes, 1 vol., half roan.....	75
Manesca's French Grammar, 1 vol., 12mo., half arabesque.....	1 13
Manesca's French Reader, with a Table of French Verbs, 1 vol., 12mo., half arabesque, 1 00	
Clarke's Commentary on the New Testament, 1 vol., 8vo., super royal sheep.....	2 50
Barnes' Family Prayers, by Rev. Albert Barnes, 1 vol., 12mo., cloth.....	1 00
Ker's System of Arithmetic, on an Original Plan, 1 vol., 18mo., half roan.....	30
Smith's Algebra, revised edition, 1 vol., 12mo., half Turkey.....	1 00

Descriptive Catalogues furnished on application, and any Books sent by mail, postage paid, on receipt of advertised price.

# HAMILTON AND LOCKE AND CLARK'S SYSTEM OF CLASSICAL INSTRUCTION.

PUBLISHED BY CHARLES DESILVER,

714 CHESNUT ST., PHILADELPHIA.

---

We do amiss to spend seven or eight years merely scraping together so much miserable Latin and Greek as might be learned otherwise easily and delightfully in one year. — MILTON.

---

- VIRGIL:** interlinear translation by Hart and Osborne — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- CÆSAR:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark — 1 volume, royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- HORACE:** interlinear translation by Stirling, Nuttall, and Clark — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- CICERO:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark — 1 volume, royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- SALLUST:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- CLARK'S PRACTICAL AND PROGRESSIVE LATIN GRAMMAR:** adapted to the Interlinear Series of Classics, and to all other systems — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.00

The plan of this Grammar is altogether of a practical nature; for, while the scholar is learning the declensions and conjugations, he has them exemplified in lessons extracted from the Classics. Where this method has been properly applied, a more rapid and thorough knowledge of the elements of Latin has always been the result.

## IN PREPARATION:

- OVID:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark.
- XENOPHON'S ANABASIS:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark.
- HOMER'S ILIAD:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark.

*To be followed by School Editions of the other Classic Writers, on the same plan.*

The plan of these works is not new. It is merely the adaptation of the experience of many of the best and most inquiring minds in educational pursuits — methodizing what was vague and loose. When the Latin tongue was the only language of diplomacy and scientific international communication, to acquire a knowledge of it was considered of more importance than now. This method was then recommended by Cardinal Wolsey, John Ascham, Latin Secretary to Queen Elizabeth, and by the best *Latin scholar and writer* of his time, John Milton; and in testimony of it John Locke says: — “When, by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little further. *Nor let the objection that he will then know it only by rote, fright any one.* This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly *for*, this way of learning a language. The languages are only to be learned by rote; and he that speaks them well has no other rule but that.” In teaching classes by *oral dictation*, these works present advantages that no others do.



C. DESILVER, PUBLISHER, PHILADELPHIA.

## ABSTRACTS

*From Reviews, Notices, and Recommendations of the Interlinear Series of Latin Classics, published by CHAS. DESILVER, No. 714 Chestnut St., Philadelphia.*

---

*From the New York Daily Times.*

The use of interlinear translations of the Classics has the sanction of common sense, and has been warmly recommended by such men as Cardinal Wolsey, Erasmus, Roger Ascham, John Milton, John Locke, and Sidney Smith.

We believe, with Sidney Smith, that this system, "the time being given, will make better scholars; and, the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed."

Charles Desilver, the Philadelphia publisher, has commenced issuing a series of Greek and Latin Classics, with interlinear translations, greatly superior to any we have yet seen.

---

*From Eliza D. Willard, New York, Correspondent of the Boston Atlas.*

Permit me to propose to all amateur students of the Greek and Latin Classics, from Maine to California, a vote of thanks to Mr. Charles Desilver, of Philadelphia, for the interlinear translations, which he is now issuing.

Having myself spent five weary years at Greek and Latin, I think I may pretend to venture an opinion in favour of the new system, that is, to the general class of students, but with teachers, quite old enough.

---

*From the Daily Delta, New Orleans.*

CÆSAR. — A more admirable literal translation of every word in Cæsar's great work, it would be impossible to meet with.

It must serve as the best possible work for the Latin student.

HORACE. — A new edition, carefully revised and collated by Thomas Clark. Too much praise cannot be given for the conscientious manner in which the task has been performed.

---

*From the Bulletin, New Orleans.*

VIRGIL AND HORACE, INTERLINEAR. — These two books should be in the hands of every scholar. They are gotten up in superior style, and would adorn any library.

SARGENT'S STANDARD SPEAKER.

---

JUST PUBLISHED,

*In one demi-octavo volume of 558 pages.*

# THE STANDARD SPEAKER,

CONTAINING

*Exercises in Prose and Poetry,*

FOR DECLAMATION IN SCHOOLS, ACADEMIES, LYCEUMS, COLLEGES.

Newly translated or compiled from celebrated Orators, Authors, and popular Debaters, ancient and modern.

A TREATISE ON ORATORY AND ELOCUTION,

WITH NOTES EXPLANATORY AND BIOGRAPHICAL.

BY EPES SARGENT.

---

This work has been compiled with great care, and contains a majority of new pieces. It is far more comprehensive than any similar work, and is adapted for use not only as a Speaker, but to the general reader, as a collection containing many new, rare, and elegant extracts.

From among a great number of commendatory notices received from essayists, the press, and teachers of elocution, a few are subjoined.

---

*From E. P. WHIPPLE, Esq., the well-known Essayist and Critic.*

We have no hesitation in saying that this is the best compilation of the kind, in the variety and in the comprehensiveness of its selections, which has been made on either side of the Atlantic. The various pieces are selected with great judgment from a long array of celebrated orators and writers. A good portion of the work is devoted to extracts from late speeches in France, England, and America, which have never before appeared in a collection of the kind; and the works of the great masters of eloquence, Chatham, Burke, Pitt, Fox, Grattan, Emmett, Shiel, and Webster, have been carefully studied for new specimens. The original translations from the French are admirably executed, and add a novel feature to the work. The amount of editorial labor expended on the whole compilation must have been very great — greater, we think, than that of any other Speaker.

The introductory treatise on Oratory and Elocution is a model of condensation, full of matter, clear, sensible, and available in every part. Not only is the volume admirably adapted to serve its primal purpose as a Speaker, but to the general reader it will be found to be a most stimulating and attractive book, better than any work of "elegant extracts" we have seen.

## SARGENT'S STANDARD SPEAKER.

---

*From the Knickerbocker (N. Y.) Magazine.*

While he (the compiler) has retained all the indispensable masterpieces, and restored many that have been omitted from the collections the last twenty years, he has given an amount of fresh, new, and appropriate matter, that will astonish and delight the youthful prize-seeking orators of our academics and schools. He has translated from Mirabeau and Victor Hugo a number of speeches of appropriate length, that will become as familiar as the "Give me liberty or give me death" speech of Patrick Henry.

---

*From E. S. DIXWELL, Esq., late Principal of the Public Latin School, Boston.*

The volume seems to me to be a very valuable one, and to contain more available matter than any book of the kind I ever saw. Beside the old standard pieces, you have given us a great many new ones, and, to my surprise, have put a new vigor into some of the old translations, which makes them quite new and redolent of their originals.

---

*From the Lowell Courier.*

The whole range of ancient and modern oratory, pulpit, forensic, or occasional, as well as of poetry, dramatic, lyrical, or epic, has been explored, and the choicest gems from each brought together into this literary casket. The volume should be on the table of every friend of elegant letters, as a collection of rare and beautiful extracts, to be read and read again.

---

*From the Boston Daily Advertiser.*

The volume deserves to be, what its title claims, a "STANDARD SPEAKER."

---

*From the New York Express.*

The Standard Speaker is one of the most superbly executed works that ever emanated from the American press, and is the best book for the purposes for which it was designed, ever issued in the language. It must become a standard school-book, wherever reading and elocution are taught.

---

*From the New York Home Journal.*

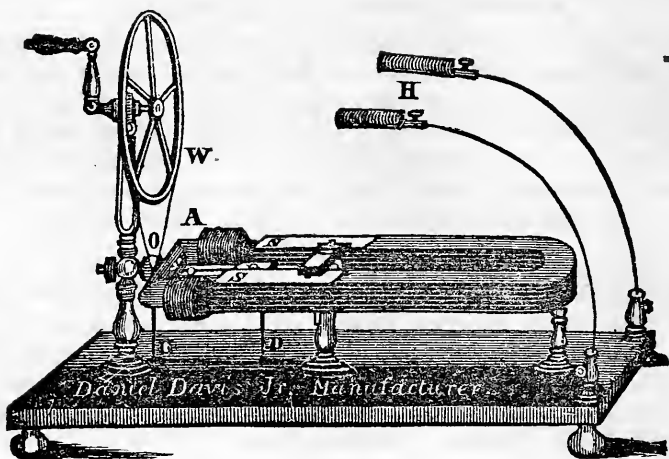
The chimerical "systems," through which a short cut to the attainment of good elocution is promised, are set down at their true value. All the available information on the subject is here summed up. The principal department is the Senatorial; and this is much more full and satisfactory than anything of the kind that has yet appeared in any elocutionary collection.

---

It is adapted to the wants of the whole Union, and not of a section.—*New Orleans Picayune.*

WORKS ON THE NATURAL SCIENCES.

---



PARTICULAR ATTENTION  
IS INVITED TO

Charles Desilver's  
**SCHOOL PUBLICATIONS  
UPON THE NATURAL SCIENCES.**

AMONG THEM ARE

**JOHNSTON'S SERIES.**

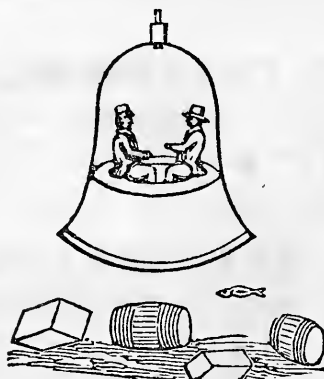
~~~~~  
**JOHNSTON'S TURNER'S CHEMISTRY.**  
**A MANUAL OF CHEMISTRY,**

**ON THE BASIS OF DR. TURNER'S ELEMENTS OF CHEMISTRY, CONTAINING, IN A  
CONDENSED FORM, ALL THE MOST IMPORTANT FACTS AND PRINCIPLES  
OF THE SCIENCE. DESIGNED AS A TEXT-BOOK IN COLLEGES  
AND OTHER SEMINARIES OF LEARNING.**

**A NEW EDITION.**

**BY JOHN JOHNSTON, A. M.,**  
Professor of Natural Science in Wesleyan University.

~~~~~  
**JOHNSTON'S TURNER'S ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY**  
**FOR THE USE OF COMMON SCHOOLS. One Vol. 18mo.**



## JOHNSTON'S NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

**REVISED EDITION.**

ENLARGED AND IMPROVED.

*A Manual of Natural Philosophy,*

COMPILED FROM VARIOUS SOURCES, AND DESIGNED AS A TEXT-BOOK IN HIGH SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

BY JOHN JOHNSTON, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF NATURAL SCIENCE IN THE WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY.

---

The above valuable series of books were prepared by JOHN JOHNSTON, A.M., Professor of Natural Science in the Wesleyan University, Middletown, Ct. The Chemistry is the standard text-book of many of the leading Colleges and prominent Medical Institutions of the country. The Elementary Chemistry, very recently published, has been adopted in many High Schools and Academies, in all parts of the country.

The present edition of Johnston's Natural Philosophy will be found much enlarged and improved. Exact in its definitions, original in its illustrations, full and familiar in explanation, the publishers are assured it will require only to be examined to be approved. It has been recently recommended by the Board of Education of the State of New Hampshire for the use of the Common Schools of the State; it has also been adopted in the High School of Cambridge, Massachusetts, and in many Academies and Schools in various sections of the country.

A few notices of the series, from among many which have been received, are appended:

**MANESCA'S FRENCH GRAMMAR;**  
Or, the Serial and Oral Method of Teaching Languages :—Adapted to the French

BY L. MANESCA.

---

**SERIAL AND ORAL METHOD.**

**MANESCA'S FRENCH READER.**

Prepared for the use of Students who have gone through the Course of Lessons contained in the method; to which is added,

**A TABLE OF THE FRENCH VERBS,**

Arranged and classified on a *new plan*, calculated to facilitate greatly their acquisition. BY L. MANESCA.

---

**EXTRACTS OF NOTICES OF MANESCA'S FRENCH GRAMMAR.**

*From the New York Daily Tribune.*

This is no doubt one of the most rational and effective manuals for the teaching of languages that has ever been prepared; any person, with an ordinary degree of attention, may, with its aid, be certain of obtaining a sound, practical knowledge of the French in a short time. The Serial and Oral method was discovered by JOHN MANESCA, who devoted a life of profound philosophical investigation to the subject of teaching languages. The result of his labours was the creation of the system in question. Various imitations have been made of his matchless method, and it has become more widely and popularly known under other names than his own. The most successful imitation is that made by OLLENDORFF, of Paris, a German teacher, into whose hands the system fell by accident, a few years since, and who appropriated it as an invention of his own.

---

*From the New York Evening Post.*

This appears to us a very able work, arranged with great order and method, and admirably adapted to the end it has in view. "I call the method, the Serial," says the author in the preface, "because the elements of our language are distributed and classified in a series, that is, in a naturally progressive and connected order, conformable to the nature of language and to the laws of acquisition of the understanding." The elements are arranged, each in its proper place, forming one great chain of connected and dependent links. With the aid of this Serial arrangement the student is led on by easy steps, from the simpler to the more complex part of the language, and acquires it without the vexatious labour, growing out of the artificial difficulties which false systems create. The term Oral indicates that the method communicates a knowledge of the spoken language.

The oral exercises have been prepared, and are introduced for the purpose of communicating this knowledge. The serial and oral method is the same *in principle* as that which nature employs in teaching the child its mother tongue, but being adapted to maturer age, the series of which the language is composed, is condensed and greatly abridged, so that ~~an~~ amount of language can, in a few months, be acquired by the student which the child requires years to learn.

HISTORICAL SERIES.

---



HISTORICAL SCHOOL PUBLICATIONS

OF

CHARLES DESILVER.

---

LORD'S HISTORY.

*A Modern History,*

FROM THE TIME OF LUTHER TO THE FALL OF NAPOLEON.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY JOHN LORD, A.M.,

LECTURER ON HISTORY.

---

Of the fitness of Mr. Lord to prepare such a history, some opinion may be formed from a perusal of the English and American testimonials of his Historical Lectures, a few of which are appended.

HISTORICAL SERIES.

---



PINNOCK'S HISTORICAL SERIES.

---

PINNOCK'S ENGLAND.

REVISED EDITION.

PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

FROM THE INVASION OF JULIUS CÆSAR

**TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE THE II.**

WITH A CONTINUATION TO THE YEAR 1845:

WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION;

BESIDES A VARIETY OF VALUABLE INFORMATION ADDED THROUGHOUT THE WORK,

Consisting of Tables of Contemporary Sovereigns and eminent Persons, copious Explanatory Notes, Remarks on the Politics, Manners and Literature of the Age, and an Outline of the Constitution.

ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS

ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTH AMERICAN, CORRECTED AND REVISED FROM THE THIRTY-FIFTH ENGLISH EDITION.

By W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D., OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN,  
Author of a Manual of Ancient and Modern History, &c. &c.

(9)



**HISTORICAL SERIES.**

---

**PINNOCK'S FRANCE,**

**HISTORY OF FRANCE AND NORMANDY, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO  
THE REVOLUTION OF 1848,!**

**WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION**

**By W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D., OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN,**

**Author of a Manual of Ancient and Modern History, &c. &c., and Editor of Pinnock's  
Improved editions of Goldsmith's Greece, Rome, and England.**

**ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS.**

**TWENTY-FIFTH AMERICAN FROM THE THIRD ENGLISH EDITION.**

---

**PINNOCK'S ROME,**

**REVISED EDITION,**

**PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY OF ROME,**

**TO WHICH IS PREFIXED**

**AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF ROMAN HISTORY,**

**AND A GREAT VARIETY OF INFORMATION THROUGHOUT THE WORK,**

**ON THE MANNERS, INSTITUTIONS, AND ANTIQUITIES OF THE ROMANS;**

**WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION.**

**SIXTY-FIFTH AMERICAN, FROM THE NINETEENTH LONDON EDITION, IMPROVED**

**BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D.,**

**WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS BY ATHERTON AND OTHERS.**

---

**PINNOCK'S GREECE,**

**REVISED EDITION,**

**PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY OF GREECE,**

**REVISED, CORRECTED, AND VERY CONSIDERABLY ENLARGED,**

**BY THE ADDITION OF SEVERAL NEW CHAPTERS, AND NUMEROUS  
USEFUL NOTES.**

**WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION.**

**FORTY-FIFTH AMERICAN, FROM THE NINETEENTH LONDON EDITION, IMPROVED**

**BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D.,**

**WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS, BY ATHERTON AND OTHERS.**

HISTORICAL SERIES.

LORD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

A New History of the United States of America,

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY JOHN LORD, A.M.,

AUTHOR OF A MODERN HISTORY FROM THE TIME OF LUTHER TO THE  
FALL OF NAPOLEON.

This work is written in the attractive style for which the author is so noted, and is admirably calculated to produce in the minds of pupils who shall use it a love for the study.

It is beautifully illustrated with numerous fine Engravings, and contains an excellent coloured Map of the United States, and several additional maps showing the position of various battle-fields and noted places in our history.

NOTICES.

*From the Philadelphia American Courier.*

This may very safely be pronounced a much needed and at the same time a most admirably executed volume for the schools of the country, and for which we unhesitatingly predict great popularity and an immense demand. The great leading facts in our national history are presented in plain, well expressed terms, without verboseness or ambiguity, by one who has proved himself to be an able scholar, a just historian, and a patriot of enlarged, liberal views. It is just the work to give the youthful mind right and lasting impressions of the history of the country.

*From the New York Evening Mirror.*

It is not only an excellent School History, but an excellent general history, that may be perused with profit by readers of all ages and acquirements.

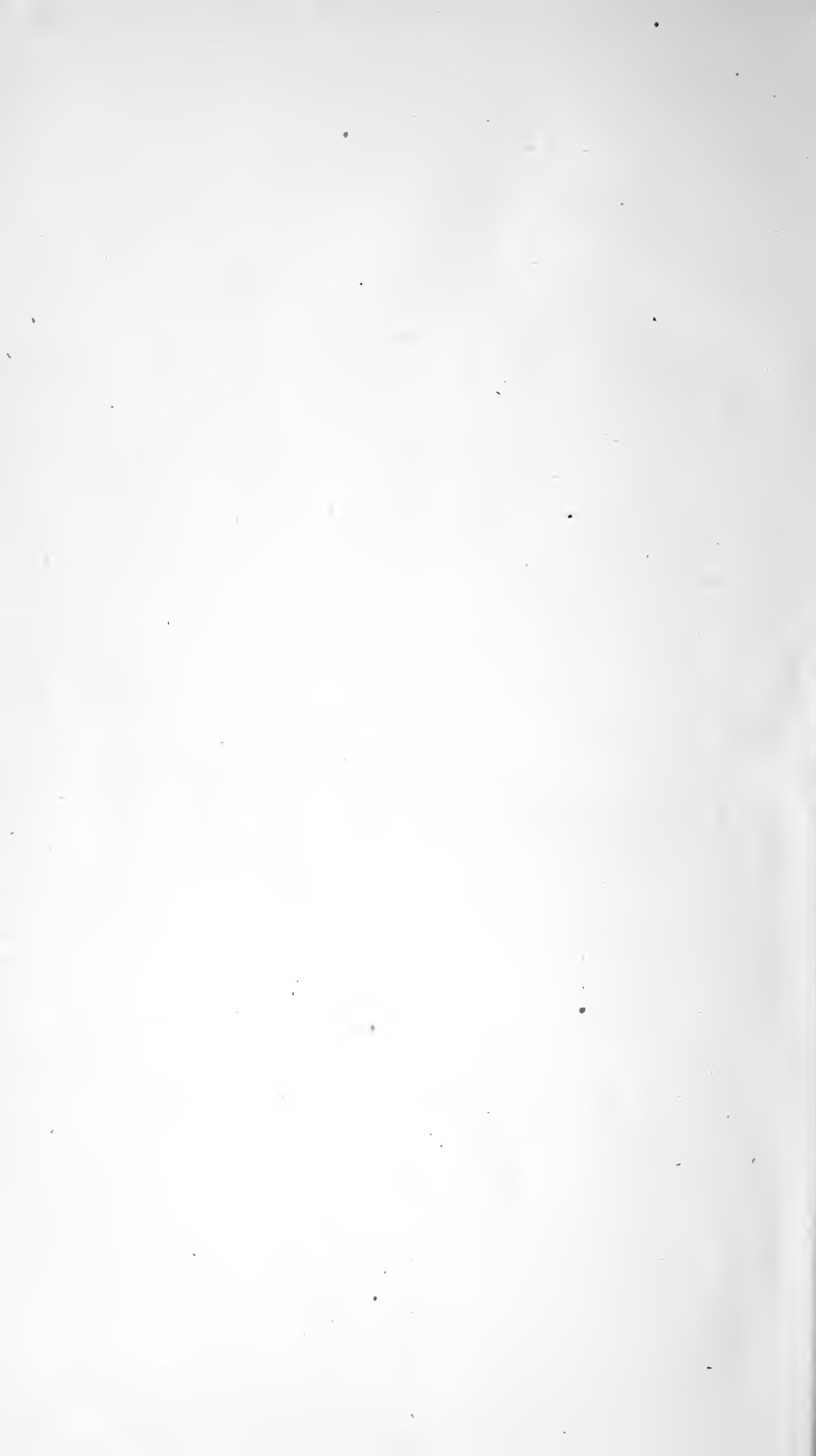
*From the Philadelphia City Item.*

This book will supply a deficiency long acknowledged in school literature. We doubt if any other man in the country is so well calculated to write this history. Mr. Lord is a great favourite of ours. His style is eminently lucid, vigorous, and comprehensive. We think we can, without fear of contradiction, pronounce him a master of the English tongue. With a wealth of language known to but few, he is singularly simple in his choice of words. His sentences are direct and to the point, and his matter is always the gist of the story. These are rare qualifications, and almost indispensable in a historian. We shall be mistaken if this work is not at once hailed with acclamation as by far the best school history in the United States yet published. It should at once be introduced into our Public Schools.











LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 030 241 566 3